



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

THE  
MALTE-BRUN  
SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY,  
ILLUSTRATED BY  
NUMEROUS ORIGINAL ENGRAVINGS,  
AND AN  
ATLAS.  
OF TWENTY-ONE MAPS, CHARTS AND TABLES.

---

BY E. GRISWOLD GOODRICH.

---

HARTFORD:  
PUBLISHED BY F. J. HUNTINGTON.

---

1836.

Edinet 248.36.488

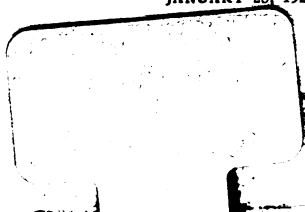
**HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY**



**THE ESSEX INSTITUTE  
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION**

**GIFT OF  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
OF NEW YORK**

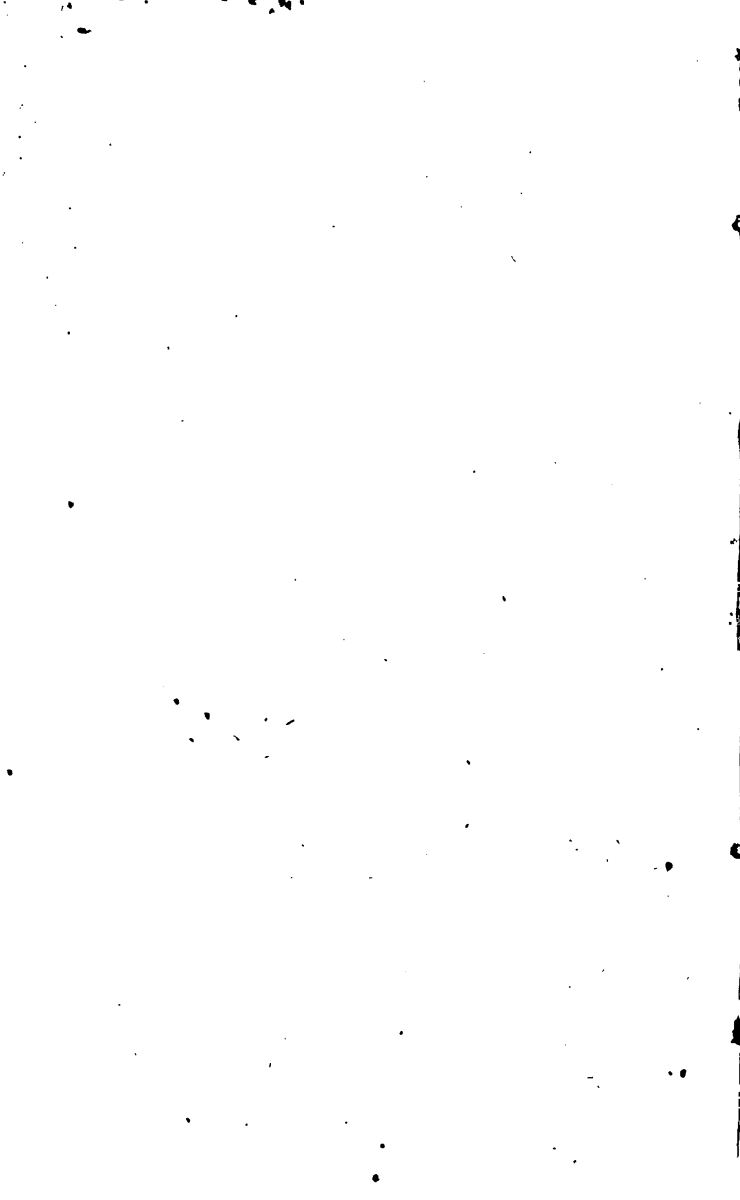
**JANUARY 25, 1924**

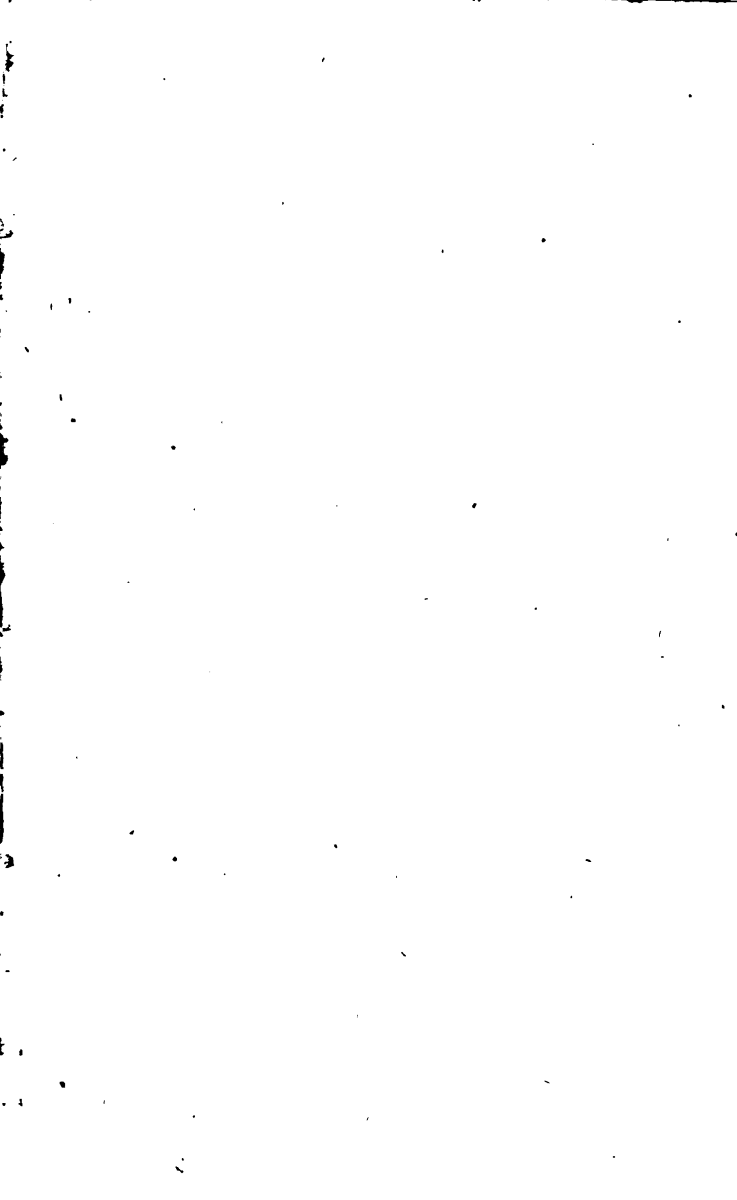


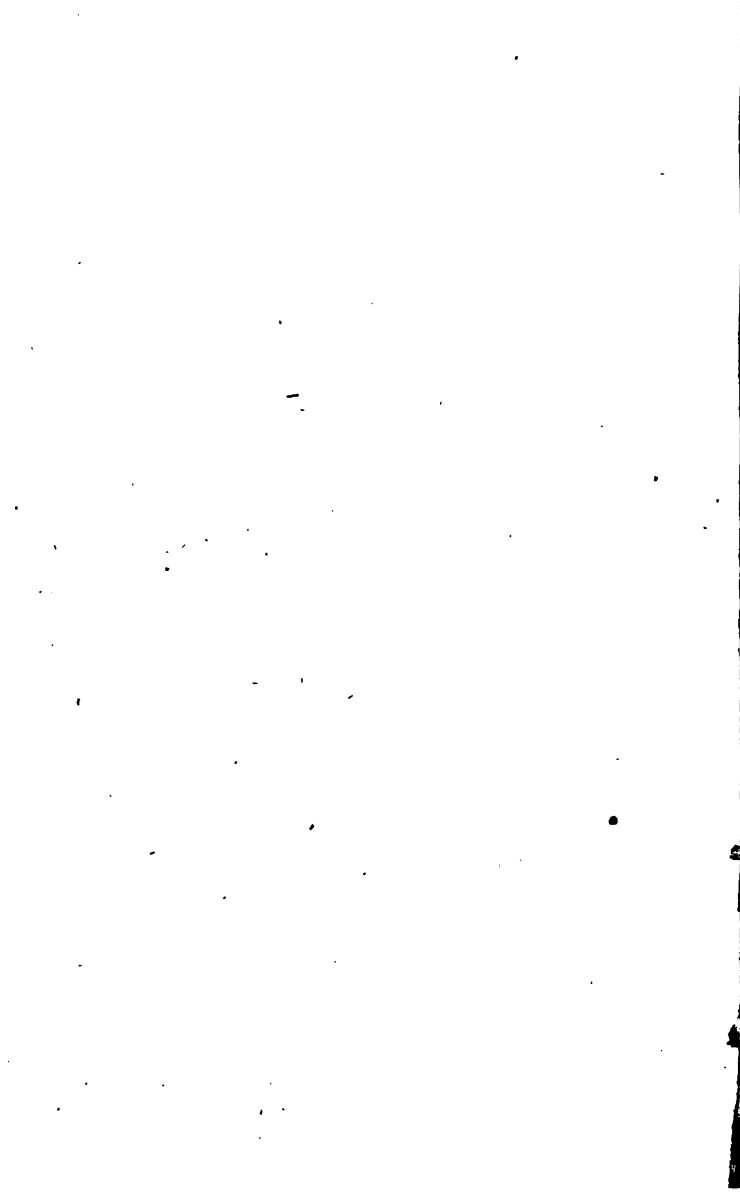


3 2044 097 021 877







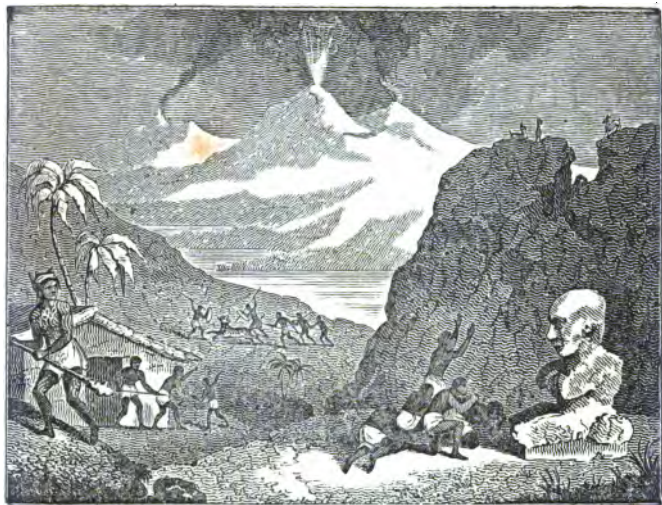


---

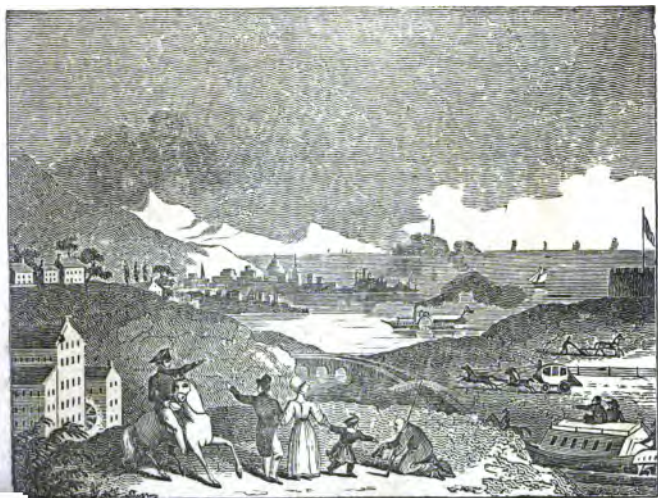
**THE**  
**MALTE-BRUN SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY**

---

**SAVAGE LIFE.**



**CIVILIZED LIFE.**



**A SYSTEM  
OF  
SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY,  
CHIEFLY DERIVED FROM  
MALTE-BRUN,  
AND ARRANGED ACCORDING TO THE INDUCTIVE PLAN  
OF  
INSTRUCTION.**

---

**BY S. GRISWOLD GOODRICH.**

---

**ELEVENTH EDITION.**



**HARTFORD:  
PUBLISHED BY F. J. HUNTINGTON.**

**COLLINS AND HANNAY, NEW-YORK; CARTER, HENDEE AND CO. BOSTON; DE SILVER JUN. AND THOMAS, AND MARSHALL CLARK AND CO., PHILADELPHIA; J. N. LEWIS, BALTIMORE; J. J. CUTLER AND CO., BELLOWS FALLS; IDE AND GODDARD, WINDSOR; MARSHALL AND DEANE, ROCHESTER; J. AND J. W. PRENTISS, KEENE; COLMAN, HOLDEN AND CO., PORTLAND; GLAZIER AND CO. HALLOWELL; A. S. BECKWITH, PROVIDENCE; J. N. WHITING, COLUMBUS; HUBBARD AND EDMONDS, CINCINNATI; SMITH AND MORTON, LOUISVILLE; S. BABCOCK AND CO., CHARLESTON; PURSE AND STILES, SAVANNAH; TURNER AND HUGHES, RALEIGH; J. R. AND W. CUNNINGHAM, COLUMBIA.**

Edw T 248.36.438

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

GIFT OF

✓  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON

JANUARY 25, 1924

DISTRICT OF CONNECTICUT, ss.

**L. S.** *Be it remembered, That on the eighth day of October in the fifty-fifth year of the Independence of the United States of America, M. & F. J. Huntington of the said District, have deposited in this office the title of a Book, the right whereof they claim as Proprietors in the words following, to wit: "A system of School Geography, chiefly derived from Malte-Brun, and arranged according to the inductive plan of instruction. By S. Griswold Goodrich." In conformity to the act of Congress of the United States, entitled "An act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts and Books to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned." And also to the act entitled, "An act supplementary to an act, entitled 'An act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and Proprietors of such copies during the times therein mentioned,' and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving, and etching historical and other prints.*

**CHA'S A. INGERSOLL,**

*Clerk of the District of Connecticut.*

**A true copy of record, examined and sealed by me,**

**CHA'S A. INGERSOLL,**

*Clerk of the District of Connecticut.*

---

## PUBLISHERS' NOTICE.

In bringing a second edition of the Malte-Brun School Geography before the public, it may not be improper to state a few particulars concerning it. The expenses arising from the designs, the engravings, the steel maps and stereotype tables, rendered it by far the most costly publication of the kind, that has ever been attempted in America. The publishers acknowledge, however, that the liberal patronage bestowed upon the work is likely to afford compensation for the investments they have made in it. In the space of eighteen months from the first publication, fifteen thousand copies have been sold, and orders for ten thousand more are in hand.

Encouraged by this success, the publishers have added two costly maps to the Atlas, one of the Southern and one of the Western States. The work has also been revised, and many improvements have been made.

It may be proper to remark, that the publishers have noticed in other School Geographies, several copies and imitations of maps, tables, engravings and figures, which were original in this work, and which should have been protected by the copy-right; they therefore deem it necessary to add, that every further violation of their rights, will receive the notice due to such frauds.

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

IN the first edition of this work, the author stated the views which governed him in its compilation, at some length. But as the book is now in general circulation, it can only be necessary to repeat the substance of what was then said.

The common method of teaching geography requires the feeble intellect of childhood, with a small stock of ideas, and a very limited vocabulary of words, immediately to comprehend the solar system; a task which demands the energy of a mature mind. It then proceeds in the attempt to make the pupil, before he knows the world in detail, embrace its vast circumference, with its continents, oceans, rivers, seas, kingdoms, empires and states, in one grand view. A single glance is sufficient to satisfy us that in this way we require of the pupil what he is unable to perform.

In the present work the course is reversed. The pupil is made to begin with the spot where he lives; he is called upon to describe first the place and the objects which have been familiar to him from infancy. He is then led to the adjacent towns, and in the next place, is made acquainted with his native state and his native country. Thus initiated he is taught the use of maps and is made to trace upon them the various physical and political divisions of the globe.

Being familiarized with maps, acquainted with the shape of the globe, and possessing a few elementary ideas, he takes a more particular survey of the individual states which compose the Union, and of the United States as a nation. He is made minutely acquainted with the face of the country, soil, climate, productions and animals, and the political and religious institutions of his native land. He is now supposed to be qualified to enter upon the survey of foreign countries. Accordingly he proceeds to the different parts of the American continent, and afterwards to Europe, Africa, Asia, and the islands of the Pacific.

Such is a brief sketch of the leading peculiarity of this work. It is proper to remark, that although the author designates his plan as *inductive*, yet he has endeavored not to be the slave of system. He has written with the pupil constantly present to his imagination, and has therefore, in some instances, sacrificed theoretical consistency, to what was deemed greater practical utility.

The author has not confined his attempts at improvement, to arrangement only. He believes that most of the school geographies in use, are so compendious as necessarily to fail of their object. The few brief words they bestow upon the description of a country, seem to be insufficient to convey any distinct picture of it. The terms used are necessarily very general, and while they render the study uninteresting, they actually furnish the pupil with very few clear ideas. The author has attempted to remedy this defect by more copious details, by a freer, and in some cases a more familiar style, and by presenting subjects calculated to excite the interest and fix the attention of youth.

In the atlas, beside the ordinary maps, several new ones will be found. The map of the Atlantic ocean, its islands and shores, and the map of the Pacific ocean, its islands and coasts, are of such obvious importance, that we can hardly fail to wonder that they have never been used before. The polar projection of the northern and southern hemispheres, the comparative chart of countries, islands, oceans, seas, and lakes, and the engraved picture of the world, are all peculiar to this work, and it is thought will be found useful auxiliaries.

Boston, 1832.



## SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

THE author would recommend that the teacher should ask the pupil many questions respecting the town and country in which he lives; the rivers, mountains, lands and places he has seen; the distances of places and objects with which he is acquainted, from each other, &c. This being done, two points will be gained; the pupil will have distinct ideas of the elements of Geographical knowledge, and the machinery of the mind, being once set in motion, will continue to operate with vigor and effect.

The ingenuity and industry of the pupil may be exercised by a constant study of the maps, by drawing maps, and by making out comparative tables, of countries, rivers, cities, &c.

The pictures in this work are not introduced for ornament. They are designed to convey information by visible images, the most forcible of all language. The pupil should be required to give a minute description of each picture. He may be instructed to divide the picture into three parts, the fore ground, middle ground, and back ground. Let the teacher first ask him what is in the fore ground, then what is in the middle ground, and lastly what is in the back ground. If the author is not mistaken this will be an agreeable exercise for the pupil: it will give distinctness to his ideas, permanency to his knowledge, and will at the same time cultivate his taste. It might be a useful exercise for the pupil to write descriptions of the pictures; and if rewards or preferments are given in the school, to let them be given to those who excel in these descriptions.

One of the greatest difficulties encountered by the young student of Geography, is that of forming an idea of the figure of the earth, and a relative situation of places. With the aid of the picture of the world in the Atlas, the teacher will find it easy to make the pupil comprehend this subject.

It will be observed that in the first part of this book the author has endeavored to lead the pupil forward by easy gradations. The questions are at first very simple, and throughout the preliminary lessons he is only required to recite with the Atlas before him. Beginning at home, he is led by a series of interrogations over the whole world, and is thus presented with the shapes of continents, countries, islands, oceans, seas, lakes, and rivers, and with the relative positions of all these various objects which occupy the surface of the earth. Having thus made himself familiar with maps, and the ground work of Geography, he is led on to the descriptions of countries. As he proceeds, the questions he is required to answer, become more comprehensive, and towards the latter part of the volume, both the memory and understanding are called to a more severe exercise.

The author has thus briefly suggested his views, and leaves it to such teachers as make use of the book, to judge how far they may be worthy of observance.

# CONTENTS.

	Page	Sections	Page
PRELIMINARY LESSONS.	9	74, 75 United States. General View.	74
I. Towns, Villages and Cities.	9	76, 77 Lower Canada.	81
II. Mountains, Hills, Valleys, Plains, Soil, and Products.	9	78, 79 Upper Canada.	83
III. Rivers, Ponds, Lakes.	9	80, 81 New Brunswick.	83
IV. County.	9	82, 83 Nova Scotia.	84
V. State.	9	84, 85 Newfoundland.	85
VI. Maps.	10	86, 87 New Britain.	86
VII. Land.	10	88, 89 British Possessions. General View.	88
VIII. Water.	10	90, 91 Russian Possessions.	89
IX. General Questions.	10	92, 93 Greenland.	90
X. Shape of the Earth.	11	94, 95 Iceland.	91
XI. Latitude and Longitude	12	96, 97 Mexico.	92
XII. Zones and Climates.	12	98, 99 Guatemala.	95
Sections		100, 101 North America. General View.	96
1, 2 State of Maine.	13	102, 103 West Indies.	101
3, 4 New Hampshire.	15	104, 105 Colombia.	102
5, 6 Vermont.	17	106, 107 Guiana.	105
7, 8 Massachusetts.	19	108, 109 Peru.	106
9, 10 Rhode Island.	22	110, 111 Brazil.	108
11, 12 Connecticut.	24	112, 113 Bolivia.	110
14, 15 New England.	27	114, 115 United Provinces.	112
16, 17 New York.	32	116, 117 Chili.	114
18, 19 New Jersey.	35	118, 119 Patagonia.	116
20, 21 Pennsylvania.	36	120, 121 Islands.	117
22, 23 Delaware.	40	122, 123 South America. General View.	118
24, 25 The Four Middle States.	41	124, 125 Continent of America. General View.	120
26, 27 Maryland.	43	126, 127 Atlantic Ocean.	125
28, 29 District of Columbia.	45	128, 129 England.	128
30, 31 Virginia.	46	130, 131 Wales.	132
32, 33 North Carolina.	48	132, 133 Scotland.	133
34, 35 South Carolina.	50	134, 135 Ireland.	135
36, 37 Georgia.	51	136, 137 British Empire. General View.	137
38, 39 Alabama.	53	138, 139 France.	139
40, 41 Mississippi.	54	140, 141 Spain.	142
42, 43 Louisiana.	55	142, 143 Portugal.	144
44, 45 The Southern States.	57	144, 145 Italy. Separate countries.	146
46, 47 Tennessee.	59	146 Italy. General View.	147
48, 49 Kentucky.	60	147, 148 Turkey in Europe.	150
50, 51 Ohio.	61	149, 150 Greece.	152
52, 53 Indiana.	63	151, 152 Ionian Republic.	153
54, 55 Illinois.	64	153, 154 Switzerland.	154
56, 57 Missouri.	65	155, 156 Austria.	157
58, 59 The Western States.	66	157, 158 Germany.	159
60, 61 Michigan Territory.	68	159 Germany. General View.	161
62, 63 North-West Territory.	68	160, 161 Prussia.	162
64, 65 Arkansas Territory.	69	162, 163 Poland.	164
66, 67 Missouri Territory.	70	164, 165 Russia in Europe.	165
68, 69 Oregon Territory.	71	166, 167 Lapland.	167
70, 71 Florida.	72	168, 169 Norway.	
72, 73 The six Territories.	73	170, 171 Sweden.	

Sections	Page	Sections	Page
172, 173 Denmark.	170	GENERAL VIEW OF THE WORLD.	280
174, 175 Netherlands and Belgium.	172	284 Divisions of Land and Water.	280
176, 180 Europe. General View.	173	285 Continents. Five Grand Divi-	
181, 182 Algiers, &c.	181	sions.	280
183 Barbary States. General View.	183	286 Islands.	280
184, 185 Great Desert.	185	287 Peninsulas.	280
186, 187 Countries of Central Africa.	188	288 Isthmuses.	280
188, 189 Senegambia	192	289 Capes.	280
190, 191 Sierra Leone.	193	270 Oceana.	280
192, 193 Liberia.	195	271 Seas.	280
194, 195 Guinea.	195	272 Lakes.	280
196, 197 Loango, Congo, &c.	197	273 Bays.	280
198, 199 Cimbebas.	199	274 Gulfs.	280
200, 201 Country of the Hottentots.	199	275 Straits.	280
202, 203 Colony of the Cape.	201	276 Sounds.	281
204, 205 Caffraria.	202	277 Mountains.	281
206, 207 Countries between Caffraria and		278 Volcanoes and Earthquakes.	281
Abyssinia.	204	279 Valleys.	281
208, 209 Abyssinia.	205	280 Plains.	281
210, 211 Nubia.	207	281 Deserts.	281
212, 213 Egypt.	208	282 Caverns.	281
214, 215 African Islands.	211	283 Geology.	282
216, 218 Africa. General View.	214	284 Springs.	282
219, 220 Arabia.	219	285 Glaciers.	282
221, 222 Turkey in Asia.	224	286 Streams, Rivers, Torrents.	282
223, 224 Caucasian Countries.	228	287 Cataracts and Cascades.	283
225, 226 Russia in Asia.	229	288 The Sea.	283
227, 228 Independent Tartary.	232	289 Tides.	283
229, 230 Persia.	233	290 Currents in the Ocean.	284
231, 232 Afghanistan.	236	291 Winds.	284
233, 234 Beloochistan.	236	292 Climate and Seasons.	284
235, 236 Hindostan. Ceylon.	239	293 Vegetables.	284
237, 238 Chin India.	246	294 Animals.	284
239, 240 Malacca.	249	295 Man.	284
241, 242 China Proper.	250	296 Language.	285
243, 244 Thibet.	255	297 Religion.	285
245, 246 Chinese Tartary.	257	298 Christian Missions.	286
247, 248 Corea.	259	299 Political Divisions.	286
249, 250 Chinese Empire. General View.	261	300 Population of the Globe.	286
251, 252 Japan.	261	301 Habitations.	286
253, 255 Asia. General View.	264	302 Food—Drink.	286
256, 257 North Western Oceanica.	268	303 Dress.	287
258, 259 Central Oceanica.	271	304 Classes of Nations.	287
260, 261 Eastern Oceanica.	274	305 The Earth considered as a Ce-	
262, 263 Oceanica. General View.	276	lestial Body.	287

## PRELIMINARY LESSONS FOR BEGINNERS.

### I. TOWNS, VILLAGES AND CITIES.

A Town consists of lands, houses, public buildings, roads, and inhabitants. The lands belong to different people, and are used for building houses upon, for raising grain, grass, and vegetables, and for feeding horses, cattle and sheep. The inhabitants occupy the houses. Some of them are merchants, and are engaged in buying and selling goods—some are farmers, and till the land—some are mechanics, such as carpenters, shoemakers, &c.; some employ themselves in one occupation, and some in another.

Public buildings consist of meeting-houses and churches, school-houses, &c. The meeting-houses and churches are used for people to worship God in. Different people choose different modes of worship.

A City is a large town, usually situated on a river, or near the sea. Vessels of various kinds are to be seen on the water near most cities.

A village consists of a small collection of houses.

**Questions.** Do you live in a Town, City, or Village? What is the name of the place you live in? How many houses do you imagine there are in the town you live in? How many people, do you think? How many merchants in the place you live in? How are the people where you live principally occupied? How many churches and meeting-houses in the place where you live? What names are given to the several meeting-houses and churches?

*The teacher will here add such questions relative to the place that the pupil is in, as may direct his attention to the principal objects, such as Colleges, Court-houses, Academies, &c.*

### II. MOUNTAINS, HILLS, VALLEYS, PLAINS, SOIL, PRODUCTS.

In some places the land is level; in others it is uneven. Very high elevations of land are called mountains. Mountains are usually covered with woods or forests. Small elevations of land are called hills. Low places between hills or mountains are called valleys; extensive level places are called plains. In some towns, the land is fertile and produces fine crops; in others, the land is barren and produces very little.

Is the face of the country alike in all places? What are mountains? Did you ever see a mountain? Where was it? What was it called? What was it covered with? What other mountains have you seen? What is a hill? Tell where there is a hill. What is a valley? Tell where there is a valley. What is a plain? Tell where there is a plain. Is the soil fertile in the town where you live? What kinds of grain are raised by the farmers where you reside? Do they raise many

cattle and horses? What do the farmers chiefly raise? What kinds of fruit are common where you live?

*The teacher will of course vary these questions, to suit the particular circumstances of the pupil.*

### III. RIVERS, PONDS, LAKES.

In some towns there are rivers, which consist of water flowing between two banks. Some rivers are large enough for ships to sail upon them. In some places, there are lakes and ponds, which are collections of water surrounded by the land. A lake is a large collection of water; a pond is a smaller collection. The Sea is a collection of salt water, upon which ships sail.

What do rivers consist of? Did you ever see a river? Where was it? What was it called? Which way did it flow? Was it a large or a small river? Do vessels sail upon it? Do you know where it rises or begins? Do you know where it goes to? Does it empty into the sea, or some other river? Do you know how long it is? What is a lake? Did you ever see a lake? Where was it? What was it called? How far across it? How far around it? What is a pond? Did you ever see a pond? Its name? Where is it? How large is it? What is the sea? Did you ever see the sea? What sea was it?

### IV. COUNTY.

A county generally consists of several towns. One of these towns is called the Shire Town or County Town; this is usually the largest town in the county, and has a jail, or prison, and a court-house.

What does a county consist of? What is one town in each county called? Is a shire town usually the largest town in the county? What buildings has a shire town? What county do you live in? How many towns compose the county? What are the names of these towns? What is the shire town? In which direction is the shire town from you? Point your finger toward it. Which road leads to it? How many miles to it? If a man were to steal a horse in the town where you live, where would he be imprisoned? What rivers in the county where you live? What mountains?

### V. STATE.

A State consists of several counties, and contains many towns. One of these towns is called the capital, because it is the seat of government. The government of a State consists of a Governor, Senate, and House of Representatives; they assemble at the capital, once or twice a year, to attend to the business of the State. When assembled, they are called the Legislature, and make laws for the State. The Governor, and members of the Senate

House of Representatives are chosen by the people.

What does a State consist of? What does a State contain? Why is one town in each State called the Capital? What is a capital? What does the government of a State consist of? How often do members of the government assemble at the Capital? For what purpose do they assemble? What are they called when they assemble? What do the Legislature do? By whom are the Governor and members of the Legislature chosen? What is the name of the State you live in? What is the Capital? Is it a town or city? In which direction is it from you? How far off is it? Who is governor of the State you live in? How often does the Legislature of your State meet? Who are the members of the Legislature for the town you live in? What is election day? Were you ever at the Capital of your State? Can you describe the State House? Describe the town.

#### VI. MAPS.

Let the pupil place before him the Map which contains the State he lives in.—Let him be seated with his face towards the North, and be shown the figure of his own State on the Map.

You have before you a Map. On this Map, is a picture of the State you live in. It shows the shape of the State, the principal rivers and mountains in it; it shows the counties, with the shire town of each. The Map also shows, what States lie around the State you live in. Remember that the top of a Map is always North, the right hand East, the bottom part South, the left hand West.—Now answer the following questions, with the Map before you.

What have you before you? What is on this Map? What does this Map show? What rivers are there in the State you live in? What mountains? How many Counties? Tell the Counties, with the Shire Town of each. What is the Capital of the State you live in? Point your finger toward the North. Toward the East. Toward the South. Toward the West. Which point of the compass does the top of the Map represent? The right hand? Bottom part? Left hand? What County lies next North of the one you live in? What next East? South? West? How is the State you live in bounded on the North? East? South? West?

*Let the teacher here go through the Maps in the Atlas, asking questions of all the States and Countries, the pupil giving his answers with the Maps before him.*

#### VII. LAND.

A Continent is a great extent of land, containing many countries. America is a Continent. A country is a portion of the land, distinguished from the rest of the Continent by a particular name. Mexico

is a country; the United States, Colombia, and Peru, are countries.

An Island is a portion of the land quite surrounded by water. Terra del Fuego is an Island.

A Peninsula is a portion of land which is almost surrounded by water. South America is a Peninsula.

A Cape is a point of land which runs out into the sea, as Cape Cod in Massachusetts.

An Isthmus is a narrow strip of land between two seas, and unites a Peninsula with the main land. The strip of land which connects North and South America is an Isthmus.

A shore or coast is a part of the land which is washed by the sea.

What is a Continent? What Continent on the Map of the Western Hemisphere? On the Eastern? What is an Island? What Islands on the map of Europe, &c.?

*Let the teacher add other necessary questions.*

#### VIII. WATER.

An Ocean is a vast extent of salt water, including several seas and islands, as the Atlantic Ocean.

A Sea is a collection of salt water, nearly enclosed by land, but connected with the ocean, as the Caribbean Sea.

A Gulf is a portion of water which is almost surrounded by land, as the Gulf of Mexico.

A Bay is a portion of water extending up into the land, as Hudson's Bay.

A Sound is a small sea, so shallow that its depth may be sounded or measured by a line.

A Strait is a narrow channel connecting two bodies of water.

*Let the teacher add questions here like the following: What is an Ocean? Where is the Atlantic Ocean? The Pacific? The Indian? &c. What is a Sea? Where is the Caribbean Sea, &c.*

#### IX. GENERAL QUESTIONS.

*Let the pupil answer the following questions with the Map of New-England before him.*

How is Maine bounded? How many counties in Maine? Tell the names of these Counties, with the Shire Town of each. What is the Capital? Tell the direction of each of the Shire Towns from the Capital. What lakes in Maine? What mountains? What rivers?

*Let the pupil answer the same questions for each of the N. England States. Let him also answer the same questions for each of the Middle States, with the Map of the Middle States before him.*

*Let the pupil answer the following questions, with the Map of the United States before him. Let him do the same as to the maps of the Southern and Western States.*

How is Maine bounded? Direction from you? Principal rivers in Maine?

*Let the pupil answer the same questions for each of the United States. Let him then answer the following questions.*

How many are there of the United States? How many Territories in the United States? Tell their names.

*Let the pupil answer the following questions, with the Map of North America before him.*

How are the United States bounded? British America? Russian possessions? Mexico? Guatemala? Tell the capital of each of these countries, with its direction from you. What are the five largest rivers of North America? The principal ranges of mountains? Principal lakes?

*Let the pupil place before him the Map of the Western Hemisphere.*

Here is a representation of America. It is a vast extent of land, of an irregular shape, placed between two oceans, and contains many mountains, valleys, rivers, lakes, countries, towns, cities, villages, and many millions of inhabitants. It is divided into North and South America—they are nearly separated, and are only connected by a narrow strip of land.

What is America? What does America contain? What two Oceans does America lie between? What Ocean is East? What Ocean West? How is America divided? How is it nearly separated? By what are North and South America united? Point your finger towards South America.

*Let the pupil place before him the Map of S. America, and answer the following questions.*

How is Colombia bounded? What is the Capital? How is Peru bounded? Capital? Boundaries of Bolivia? Capital? Boundaries of Chili? Capital? Boundaries of Patagonia? Boundaries of United Provinces? Capital? Boundaries of Brazil? Capital? Boundaries of Guiana? Three principal towns? How is South America bounded? What three great rivers in S. America? Into what ocean do these three rivers flow? What great range of mountains in South America? In what direction does this range of mountains run? In which direction are the following places from Santa Fe de Bogota? Stabrock? Pernambuco? Rio Janeiro? Buenos Ayres? Terra del Fuego? Santiago? Potosi? Lima?

*Let the pupil answer the following questions, with the Map of the Atlantic Ocean before him.*

What Continent West of the Atlantic Ocean? What countries next east of the Atlantic Ocean? What ocean does a vessel cross in going to England? What is the general direction of a vessel's track in going to Europe? What is the distance across the Atlantic, between the United States and Europe? What is the distance between the continent of America and

Africa, at the nearest point? How is the Atlantic Ocean bounded? In what direction from St. Helena is Newfoundland? The Azores from the Bermudas? Iceland from the Cape de Verd Islands? What five great rivers empty into the Atlantic Ocean from the Western Continent? How long does it take a vessel to go across the Atlantic? Ans. About a month. Tell the direction of the following places from New York. Cape St. Roque; the Bermudas; Europe; Cape Farewell; Cuba; Cape of Good Hope; Cape Horn. Tell the direction of the following places from England. West Indies; Florida; Newfoundland; Iceland; Greenland; Cape Horn; St. Helena; Cape of Good Hope. Which is most southerly, New-York or England? Spain, or the West Indies? Gulf of Mexico, or the Mediterranean Sea?

*Let the pupil place the Map of the Eastern Hemisphere before him, and reply to the following questions.*

What continent lies on the eastern border of the Atlantic Ocean? How is the Eastern Continent bounded? Into what three great portions is it divided? What sea between Europe and Africa? What sea nearly separates Africa from Asia? What isthmus connects Africa and Asia? What vast island south-west of Asia? What ocean between Africa and New Holland? What island south-west of Africa? Where is the island of Borneo? Sumatra? Papua, or New Guinea? What sea between Borneo and China? What Island south of Hindoostan? What ocean south of the Indian Ocean? What ocean north of the Eastern Continent? Where are the Japan Isles? What ocean lies east of the Eastern Continent? What peninsula at the south-west corner of Europe? What great peninsula is united to the Eastern Continent by the isthmus of Suez? What straits between New Guinea and New Holland? What straits between Corea and the Japan Isles? What cape at the southern point of Africa? What cape at the southern point of Hindoostan? What Gulf between Arabia and Persia? Tell me the direction of each of the following places from England: Cape of Good Hope; Nova Zembla; Sumatra; New Holland; Madagascar; Greenland; Kamchatka; Borneo. Which way is Asia from Europe? Africa from Europe? New Holland from Africa? St. Helena from Sumatra? Nova Zembla from the Cape of Good Hope? How is Europe bounded? How is Africa bounded? How is Asia bounded?

#### X. SHAPE OF THE EARTH.

The earth is round, and men and ships have often been around it. This is certainly true, strange as it may seem. The continent of America lies on one side of the earth, and the eastern continent on the other side. The Pacific Ocean and the At-

lantic Ocean lie on opposite sides of the earth. When you are at sea, the water appears level but in reality it bends in a regular curve. At the distance of twenty miles the lower part of a vessel is hid by the bending of the water, and the top only is visible.

*The following lessons may be deferred till the pupil has been once through the book.*

## XI. LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE.

*Place before you the Maps of the Eastern and Western Hemispheres.*

You observe various lines upon the maps. Those running from the north to the south pole, are called meridians, and point out the longitude of the various parts of the earth's surface. Longitude is reckoned east and west from Greenwich in England. The numbers, marking the degrees of longitude, are on the Equator. Places east of Greenwich, are said to be in east longitude; those west of Greenwich are said to be in west longitude.

The Equator is an imaginary line, running around the earth from east to west, and west to east, dividing it into two equal parts, called the northern and southern hemispheres.

The lines running parallel to the equator show the latitude of various places. Latitude is reckoned from the equator, north and south. The numbers in the margins of the maps show the degrees of latitude. Places south of the equator are said to be in south latitude; places north of it are said to be in north latitude.

Longitude extends to 180 degrees both east and west; latitude extends to 90 degrees from the equator to the pole. Each degree of latitude is divided into 60 minutes; each minute into 60 seconds. Each minute is equal to somewhat more than a mile. A degree of latitude is about 69 1-2 miles.

Longitude is divided in the same manner as latitude, into degrees, minutes and seconds.

A degree of longitude on the equator is about 69 1-2 miles; and in the whole circumference of the globe there are 360 degrees. The earth is therefore a little more than 25,000 miles around it.

The degrees of longitude grow narrower toward the poles, as can be seen by the maps.

What lines on the map are called meridians? What do meridians point out? How is latitude reckoned? Where are the degrees of longitude marked? When is a place said to be in east longitude? When is a place said to be in west longitude? What is the equator? What is the northern hemisphere? The southern? What do the lines parallel to the equator, and north and south of it, show? How

is latitude reckoned? When is a place said to be in south latitude? When is a place said to be in north latitude? To how many degrees does longitude extend? To how many degrees does latitude extend? How is latitude divided? How is longitude divided? What is the length of a degree of latitude? A minute of latitude? What is the extent of a degree of longitude on the equator? How many degrees of latitude or longitude in the whole circumference of the earth? How many miles around the earth? How do the degrees of longitude vary as you proceed from the equator toward the poles?

*Place the maps of the Eastern and Western, Northern and Southern Hemispheres before you.*

What great divisions of the earth, are partly in the southern hemisphere? What large island in the southern hemisphere? What grand divisions of the earth are in the northern hemisphere? Between what degrees of longitude is Africa? New Holland? North America? South America? Europe? Asia? New Zealand? Between what degrees of latitude is Africa? New Holland? South America? North America? Europe? Asia? Madagascar? How many degrees of longitude in the Indian Ocean? How many of latitude? How many of longitude in Africa? Asia? Europe? The Atlantic ocean? North America? South America? New Holland? How many degrees of latitude in Africa? Asia? Europe? North America? South America? The Atlantic ocean?

*Here let the teacher ask such questions as he deems necessary, relative to the latitude and longitude of the various places on all the maps.*

## XII. ZONES AND CLIMATES.

*Look on the Maps of the Eastern and Western Hemispheres.*

Beside the lines of latitude and longitude and the equator, you see other lines; the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn, the Arctic and Antarctic Circles.

These imaginary lines divide the map of the earth into five portions, called Zones. From the Arctic circle to the north pole, and from the Antarctic circle to the south pole, the most intense cold prevails. No one has been able to reach either of the poles, on account of the excessive cold. These portions of the earth are called the Frigid or Frozen Zones.

The climate between the frigid zones and the tropical lines, is neither intensely hot, nor intensely cold. These regions are called the Temperate Zones. Between the Tropical lines of Cancer and Capricorn, the sun pours down a burning heat through the year. This Zone is called the Torrid or Burning Zone.

# THE MALTE BRUN SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY.

---

## 1. STATE OF MAINE.

☐ *Answers to the following questions will be found on the map of the United States.*

How is the state of Maine bounded?

What ocean washes its southern border?

What is the general direction of its coast?

Which state forms the northeastern point of the United States?

Which way is Maine from you?

☐ *Answer the following questions from the map of New England.*

How many counties in Maine?

Tell their names, with the shire town of each.

What counties lie along the seashore? What are the eastern counties? The northern?

Western? What the middle counties?

What river partly divides Maine from New Brunswick?

What of Saco river?

☐ *In describing a river, tell first where it rises, then the general direction of its course, through what districts it flows, and where it empties. The reply, therefore, to the preceding question will be as follows:—'The Saco rises in Coos county, in New Hampshire, flows through the county of Oxford, touches the southwestern border of Cumberland county, passes through the county of York, and empties into the Atlantic below Biddeford.'*

What of the Androscoggin river? The Kennebeck? The Penobscot? Passamaquoddy, or St. Croix?

What is the capital of Maine? Where is Augusta?

Where is Bangor? Portland? Hallowell? Eastport? Machias? Brunswick? Castine? York?

☐ *In telling where a town is, the pupil should say in what part of the state, or country it is situated; on what river, or bay, or other water it is, and its direction from the capital.*

Where is Passamaquoddy bay? Casco? Penobscot? Frenchman's?

Where is Moosehead lake? Umbagog lake?

☐ *In telling where a lake is, say in what part of the state it lies, and its direction from the capital.*

Where is Long island? Deer island? Mount Desert? Fox islands?

☐ *In telling where an island is, say in what water it lies, near what coast it is, and its direction from the capital of the state or country near it.*

## 2. MAINE, CONTINUED.

This state belonged to Massachusetts until the year 1820; at that time, it became separate and independent. It was more recently settled than the other states on the Atlantic, and still bears the marks of a new country. The surface is hilly, and in parts mountainous. The winters are long, the cold is very severe, and great quantities of snow fall. The summers are warm, but short.

---

2. When did Maine become a separate state? To what state did it belong before 1820? What does Maine still bear the marks of? Describe the face of the country. Describe the seasons in Maine.



The sea breezes render the air moist along the coast. The soil is generally fertile. The climate is favorable to the growth of grass.

The northern portions are yet covered with forests; the southern parts, toward the sea shore, present many flourishing towns and villages. The state abounds in lakes and streams, but they are not well suited to navigation. It has an extensive sea coast, and many fine harbors, favorable to commercial pursuits. The people have therefore, generally, neglected agriculture and manufactures, and devoted themselves to commerce.

Many of the inhabitants of Maine are engaged in cutting down the forest trees, and converting them into lumber, which is shipped to the West Indies, and various parts of the United States, and exchanged for flour, sugar, cash, and other articles which the people have need of. This business, which is called the lumber trade, constitutes one of the leading occupations of the inhabitants. The following cut represents men cutting down the trees in the background; in the foreground is a saw-mill, sawing the logs into boards; also a vessel, loading with lumber to carry it away.



The people of Maine occasionally ship cargoes of ice to New Orleans and the West Indies. During the winter, the extreme cold in this state creates large masses of ice in the rivers; a ship is easily supplied with a cargo of it, and in the sultry climate of the West Indies, nothing can be more grateful.

The ice is exchanged for sugar, molasses, spirits, and other pro-

What renders the air moist along the coast? What of the soil? What is the climate favorable to?

What is the situation of the northern portions of the state? What do the southern portions present? In what does Maine abound? Describe its sea coast and harbors. What have the people neglected? To what have they devoted themselves principally? What are many of them engaged in? What constitutes one of the leading occupations of the inhabitants of Maine? What does the picture represent?

What has the enterprise of the people led them occasionally to do? What can you tell me of their sending cargoes of ice to the West Indies? What is commerce?

ductions of those islands, which are brought back in ships. This exchange of the productions of one country for those of another, called commerce, contributes very much to the comfort and happiness of society; for the people of one climate, by means of it, may enjoy the luxuries of all others. Here is a cut representing the negroes, taking a cargo of ice ashore in the West Indies.



Portland, formerly the capital of Maine, is largely engaged in commerce, and has 12,600 inhabitants. It is pleasantly situated on Casco bay, and has a fine harbor. Bath is a considerable town, and is situated on the Kennebeck river, 13 miles from its mouth. It is a flourishing place, extensively engaged in commerce. Population, 3,800. Augusta has a fine state-house of granite. Pop. 4,000.

Eastport is a commercial town. Machias is a place of considerable trade, with 1,000 inhabitants. Brunswick is the seat of Brunswick College, a flourishing literary institution. Bangor is one of the most prosperous towns in the state. At Bangor there is a Literary and Theological Seminary, under the direction of the Congregationalists; at Waterville is a college supported by the Baptists. Hallowell and Thomaston are flourishing places.

### 3. STATE OF NEW HAMPSHIRE.

*Map of the United States.* How is New Hampshire bounded? Which way is it from where you are?

*Map of New England.* How many counties in New Hampshire? Their names, with the shire town of each. What is the northern county? The eastern counties? The western?

What effect has commerce on the comfort and happiness of society? Describe the picture of a cargo of ice in the West Indies. What is the capital town in Maine? What are the people of Portland largely engaged in? How many people in Portland? How is Portland situated? What sort of harbor has it?

What town is next in size to Portland? Where is Bath situated? What else can you say of Bath? What can you say of Eastport? Machias? Brunswick? Castine? Bangor? Waterville? What institution at Bangor? At Waterville? Which is the largest town in Maine, or which has the greatest number of inhabitants?

The southern? The middle county? What river forms the western boundary of the state? Describe the Connecticut; Merrimack; Piscataqua; Androscoggin; Saco; Upper and lower Ammonoosuck; Sugar river; Ashuelot; Contoocook; Margalloway; Nashua.

Where is lake Winnipiseogee? Connecticut lake? Squam lake? What mountains in New Hampshire? Where are the White mountains? What is the capital of New Hampshire? In which direction is Concord from Portland? Where is Portsmouth? Dover? Walpole? Hanover? What county in New Hampshire touches on the Atlantic ocean?

#### 4. NEW HAMPSHIRE, CONTINUED.

The land in New Hampshire is generally hilly, and in parts mountainous; the climate is cold, but healthful. Among the mountains the winter is severe, and great quantities of snow fall. The greater part of the inhabitants are occupied in agriculture; that is, in tilling the land, and raising from it various kinds of grain, as wheat, rye, oats, &c., and in rearing sheep, horses, swine, and cattle. Many are occupied in manufactures; that is, in making cloth of wool, cotton, flax and various other articles.

There is but one seaport, or place on the sea coast, for shipping, in New Hampshire, viz. Portsmouth; consequently the people of this state are not extensively engaged in commerce.



The White mountains are more than 6000 feet high. When the seaman approaches the country, their peaks, appearing like clouds along the horizon, are the first objects that attract his view, and assure him that the land is near. The preceding picture shows the White mountains in the background. The man ploughing in the foreground intimates that agriculture is the chief pursuit in this state.

3. Describe the face of the country, in New Hampshire; the climate. What of the winters in New Hampshire? What are the greater part of the people engaged in doing? What is meant by agriculture? What are many others of the inhabitants occupied in doing? What is meant by manufactures? What is the only seaport in New Hampshire? What is a seaport? Are the people of New Hampshire extensively engaged in commerce? What is the height of the White mountains? Describe these mountains. Describe the picture.

The scenery among the White mountains is wild and picturesque, in the highest degree; nothing can be more delightful than a ramble among them during the summer season. At a place called the Notch, the whole mountain is divided to the very base into two parts, forming a space for a road, and a passage for the river Saco. The aspect of nature here surpasses every thing else in this portion of the United States in grandeur and sublimity. A terrible event took place here a few years since. A large part of the mountain slid down into the valley, by night, and buried a whole family beneath the ruins.

Dartmouth College, at Hanover, is an ancient and respectable literary institution. There are many academies in the state, of which Phillips' Academy, at Exeter, is one of the most considerable.

Portsmouth, the only seaport, is a very handsome town, and its inhabitants are, to a considerable extent, engaged in commerce. Population, 8,000. Concord, the seat of government, is pleasantly situated on the Merrimack, and has a state-house of stone. Population, 3,700. Dover, on Cocheco river, possesses very extensive manufactories of wool and cotton. Pop. 5,400. Walpole is a beautiful town, situated near Connecticut river, and from its elevated position, commands a delightful view of the valley through which that stream flows. Pop. 2,000. Keene stands on an elevated plain, from which a fine prospect of hills and mountains is afforded on all sides. The town is one of the handsomest in New England. Pop. 2,400. Claremont, Hanover, and Londonderry, are considerable towns.

## 5. STATE OF VERMONT.

*Map of the United States.* How is Vermont bounded? Which way is Vermont from the place you are in? Which way is it from Maine?

*Map of New England.* How many counties in Vermont? Tell their names, with the county town of each. Which are the Northern counties? The Eastern? Southern? Western? the middle county? What river forms the eastern boundary of Vermont? Describe Lamoille river; Onion; Otter creek; Missisque; Deerfield; White; Black. What lake lies along the western border of the state? What range of mountains in Vermont? In what direction does this range lie? What is the capital of Vermont? Where is Montpelier? In what direction is it from Concord? From Portland? Where is Brattleboro? Burlington? Windsor? Middlebury? Bennington? Westminster? Royalton? Randolph?

## 6. VERMONT, CONTINUED.

Vermont is a mountainous state. The Green mountains run north and south, nearly the whole length of it. A considerable portion of the state is yet covered with forests; many parts are, however, cultivated and fruitful. The chief pursuit of the inhab-

---

Describe the Notch. What took place here some years since? What is Dartmouth College? Where is it? What is Phillips' Academy? What can you say of Portsmouth? Concord? Dover? Walpole? Keene? Claremont? Hanover? Londonderry? Which is the largest, or most populous town in New Hampshire.

4. What of the surface of the country in Vermont? How does the Green mountain range run? What covers a considerable part of the state? What of many other parts of the state? What is the chief pursuit of the inhabitants?

stant is agriculture; and the raising of horses, which are sold at Boston, Hartford, New York, and other places, is a leading object with the farmers. During the winter, the snow falls to a considerable depth; and not being melted by sea breezes, it furnishes almost every year about three months of excellent sleighing. The summers are cool and agreeable.

In the war of the revolution, the soldiers of Vermont acquired great distinction for bravery; and the designation of Green mountain Boys, which they bore, has ever been regarded as a title of renown. The following picture represents a company of these celebrated troops.



This state is interesting for the variety and beauty of its scenery. On its eastern border flows the Connecticut, one of the finest streams in the world; its valley affords every variety of sweet and picturesque landscape. The western border of the state is washed by lake Champlain, which, with its wooded shores, and pleasant islands, yields not less agreeable prospects.

In ascending from either of these waters toward the centre of the state, a traveller will pass over a succession of hills and mountains, and occasionally meet a cluster of neat houses, bearing the name of a town. When among the mountains, he will observe the marks of cultivation, blending in the same view with scenes of great wildness.

What is a leading object with the farmers?

What of the winter in Vermont? The summer?

How were the soldiers in Vermont distinguished in the war of the revolution? Describe the picture. What can you say of the Connecticut river? What does the valley of this river present to the eye? What does lake Champlain present?

As a traveller ascends from Connecticut river, or lake Champlain, toward the elevated regions in the middle of the state, what will he pass over? What will he occasionally meet? What will he observe when among the mountains?

Those persons who are in search of the wonderful, may find a cave at Plymouth, about 18 miles from Windsor, having five large apartments, the largest 30 feet in length. At Bellows Falls, there is a rapid in the Connecticut river, which cannot but astonish and delight every person who sees it. The waters are compressed between the rocks, and, leaping, foaming and bursting, as they pass on their way, present a scene of great wildness and beauty.

Montpelier, the seat of government, is a handsome and flourishing town. Pop. 3,000. Burlington, the most commercial town in the state, is remarkable for its delightful situation. Pop. 3,500. Windsor, and Brattleboro, both situated on Connecticut river, are places of considerable business. The latter is remarkable for its romantic and beautiful scenery. Bennington is one of the oldest towns in the state, and is celebrated for a battle fought there during the war of the revolution. Pop. 3,400. Middlebury has considerable manufactures, and a quarry of excellent marble. Pop. 3,468. At Burlington, there is a literary institution, styled the Vermont University. At Middlebury, there is a respectable college.

## 7. STATE OF MASSACHUSETTS.

*Map of the United States.* How is Massachusetts bounded? Which way is the state of Massachusetts from where you are? From Maine? Vermont? New Hampshire? What cape forms part of Massachusetts?

*Map of New England.* How many counties in Massachusetts? Tell their names, with the shire town of each. What are the Eastern counties? Western? Southern? Northern? Describe the Connecticut river; Merrimack; Concord; Charles; Mystic; Nashua; Taunton; Chickapee; Deerfield; Westfield; Miller's; Housatonic. Where is Massachusetts Bay? Barnstable? Buzzard's? What peninsula in Massachusetts? What islands? What range of mountains passes through the western part of the state? What is the capital of Massachusetts? Where is Boston? Its direction from Montpelier? Concord? Portsmouth? From you? Where is Springfield? Worcester? Newburyport? Greenfield? Cambridge? Salem? Pittsfield? New Bedford? Stockbridge?

Is not the shape of the state like a clumsy boot, Berkshire county forming the top, Essex the heel, Bristol the toe, and Barnstable and cape Cod curling around like the sole partly ripped off?

## 8. MASSACHUSETTS, CONTINUED.

The face of the country in Massachusetts is generally hilly, and in parts mountainous. A great part of the soil is fertile.

The portions along the sea shore are subject to cold, moist, easterly winds, which are disagreeable. In the interior, the inhabitants enjoy about six weeks' sleighing in winter. In the mountainous and elevated parts, the snow is deeper, and the cold severe. Commerce and manufactures are the two great objects of pursuit. Many

---

Where, in Vermont, is a remarkable cave? Describe this cave. What curiosity at Bellows Falls? Describe Montpelier; Burlington; Windsor; Brattleboro; Bennington; Middlebury. What institution at Middlebury? What at Burlington?

For what is Massachusetts remarkable? For what are Worcester, Northampton, Springfield, and other towns on Connecticut river, distinguished?

5. Describe the face of the country in Massachusetts. What of the soil? What can you say of the climate? What are the two great objects of pursuit?



of the people are concerned in various fisheries. Agriculture receives great attention, and is conducted with a superior degree of intelligence and skill.

The Green mountain range runs through the western part of this state, from north to south; the most remarkable single peaks are Saddle mountain, in Adams and Williamstown, Taghkannuc, near Sheffield Wachusett, in Princetown, and mount Tom, and mount Holyoke, near Northampton. From the top of mount Holyoke, a beautiful prospect is afforded; Connecticut river is seen winding through a rich valley, chequered by cultivation, and presenting a surface as brilliantly variegated as a carpet.

The lovers of the curious may find, between Boston and Lynn, a beach, extending for some miles, so smooth and hard that a horse scarcely makes a hoof-print in passing over it. Nahant is a small, rocky promontory, much resorted to in summer by the people of Boston and other places, during the hot season, on account of its refreshing sea breezes.

This state is remarkable for its beautiful towns and villages. Worcester, Northampton, Springfield, Greenfield, indeed all the towns on Connecticut river, Pittsfield, Stockbridge, and many others, in various parts of the state, are distinguished for the neatness of their dwellings, the elegance of their churches and meeting-houses, and the beauty of their rich and fertile landscapes. Several of these places might be selected as among the most delightful coun-



try residences in this or any other country. The picture represents one of these places.

What other pursuits are many of the people engaged in? What of agriculture?

What range of mountains in Massachusetts? Where is this range? Where is Saddle mountain? Taghkannuc? Wachusett? Mount Tom? Holyoke? What prospect is afforded from the top of Holyoke? Describe Lynn beach. What of Nahant? For what is it resorted to?

For what might many of the towns and villages be selected? Describe the picture.

The literary institutions of Massachusetts are numerous and flourishing. Harvard University, at Cambridge, is the oldest and richest establishment of the kind in the United States. It has 20 professors, and a library of 30,000 volumes, which is the largest in this country. Among the graduates of this college may be found the names of some of the most distinguished men our country has produced.

Williams' College is a very respectable seminary at Williams-town; at Amherst there is a thriving and interesting college, entitled the Collegiate Charity Institution.

At Andover, there is a celebrated and richly-endowed Theological Seminary; in the same town is Phillips' Academy, which is a wealthy and respectable institution. There are about 40 other academies in the state, beside many schools and seminaries of great excellence.

Boston, the capital of Massachusetts, occupies a peninsula at the head of Massachusetts bay, possesses an excellent harbor, and is surrounded by a beautiful and populous country. It contains many elegant edifices, among which are the state-house, the new market, Tremont-house, the Hospital, &c. Many of the private, as well as the public edifices, are built of granite, which may be esteemed the finest building material in the world. Boston contains nearly 50 churches, and various charitable, literary and scientific institutions. It is encircled by a line of irregular hills, at a distance of two or three miles, occupied by the beautiful towns of Dorchester, Roxbury, Cambridge, Charlestown, &c. The bridges and roads lead to these places in various directions, and a ride around the city, in the season of verdure, is very agreeable.

The capitalists, or rich men of Boston, are largely interested in the various manufactories in different parts of Massachusetts, as well as in those of New Hampshire and Rhode Island. Its merchants are ranked among the most intelligent men engaged in trade in this country. In literature, Boston has always occupied the foremost ranks; in the learned professions and politics, it has furnished many men of high distinction; and for national feeling, public spirit, and liberality of sentiment, its citizens have been renowned. Pop. 61,000.

Salem, 14 miles from Boston, is a handsome and pleasant town,

What can you say of the literary institutions of Massachusetts? What of the university at Cambridge? What of its library? What of its graduates? What of Williams' College? What of Amherst College? What of the Theological Seminary at Andover? Phillips' Academy? How many academies in Massachusetts? How is Boston situated? What does it contain?

What are some of its best buildings? Of what material are many of the public and private buildings constructed? How many churches in Boston? What institutions? By what is it encircled? What towns surround it? In what are the capitalists of Boston largely interested? What can you say of its merchants? What of Boston in respect to literature? What of its professional and political character? What of the citizens of Boston? Number of inhabitants? Describe Salem.



and is distinguished for its wealth and commerce; it is extensively concerned in the trade to China. Pop. 14,000.

Newburyport is beautifully situated on the Merrimack, and has considerable commerce. Marblehead, four miles southeast of Salem, is more largely engaged in the cod fisheries than any other town in the United States. Pop. 5,000. Beverly is largely concerned in the fisheries. Cambridge is famous for its university. Pop. 6,000. Charlestown, connected with Boston by three bridges, is a large town, having 9,000 inhabitants. Plymouth is the oldest town in the state. Pop. 4,751. Here the first settlers of New England landed, and established the first colony. Nantucket, situated on an island, is more extensively engaged in the whale fisheries than any other place in the United States. Pop. 7,200. New Bedford, situated on an arm of the Sea, which sets up from Buzzard's bay, has considerable trade, and is largely concerned in the whale fisheries. Pop. 7,600. Lowell is famous for its manufactures. Pop. 6,500.

## 9. STATE OF RHODE ISLAND.

*Map of the United States.* How is Rhode Island bounded? Which way is Rhode Island from Vermont? New Hampshire? Maine? From you?

*Map of New England.* How many counties in Rhode Island? Their names, with the shire town of each? Which are the northern counties? The southern? The middle? What is the capital of Rhode Island? Where is Providence? Direction from Boston? Concord? Montpelier? Where is Newport? South Kingston? Pawtucket? Bristol? Describe the Pawtucket river; Providence; Pawtuxet; Pawcatuck; Wood river. Where is Narraganset bay? What islands belong to this state? Where is the island called Rhode Island? Block Island?

## 10. RHODE ISLAND, CONTINUED.

Rhode Island is the smallest of the United States, but it is pleasantly situated, and is distinguished for wealth, flourishing manufactures, and extensive commerce. The northern and western parts of the state are hilly and sterile; along the borders of Narraganset bay, it is more level and fertile.

The falls of Pawtucket, in the village of that name, may be mentioned as an interesting curiosity. The whole body of the Pawtucket river here passes over a rock, and descends about 50 feet, presenting a very striking and beautiful waterfall. Brown University, at Providence, is a very respectable seminary, under the direction of the Baptists. At the same place, the Friends or Quakers have an extensive and celebrated school.

Providence, 40 miles from Boston, is the largest town in the state. Its commerce is very extensive, and its capitalists are largely

---

Describe Newburyport; Marblehead. What of Beverly? Cambridge? Charlestown? Plymouth? Nantucket? New Bedford? Lowell?

10. Which is the smallest of the twenty-four United States? How is Rhode Island situated? For what is it remarkable? Describe the soil, and face of the country. Describe the falls at Pawtucket. What university at Providence? What school? What is the largest town in Rhode Island? What of the commerce of Providence? How is it concerned in manufactures?

concerned in the various manufactories at Pawtucket and other places. The Blackstone canal, from Worcester to this place, has recently given a fresh impulse to business, and it is now rapidly advancing. The Arcade, lately erected, is one of the most elegant edifices in New England. Several of the churches are handsome, and many of the private dwellings bespeak the wealth and good taste of their proprietors. The population is 16,800. Providence is considered the capital of the state, though the legislature often meets at other places.

Newport is situated on the island of Rhode Island. This island, from its fertility and beauty, has been called the Eden of America. Lying between Narraganset bay and the ocean, it is constantly visited by the fresh sea breezes, which, during summer, bestow health and pleasure upon its inhabitants. Newport occupies the southwestern corner of this island. It is the resort of many persons in summer, who are attracted by its salubrious climate, and by the excellence and variety of the fish which abound in its waters. Its harbor is one of the best in the world. Pop. 8,000.



Bristol is a pleasant commercial town, and possesses great wealth; Warren has considerable commerce; Pawtucket is an interesting village, with extensive manufactories for cotton goods; Pawtucket is concerned, to a considerable extent, both in trade and manufactures. The preceding picture exhibits a manufacturing village, and is designed to represent the leading object of pursuit in this state.

---

Where is the Blackstone canal? What effect has this canal had upon Providence? What can you say of the Arcade in Providence? Of the churches? Of private dwellings? What is the population? What of the island of Rhode Island? How is Newport situated? Why is it resorted to by many persons in summer? What of its harbor? Population? What of Bristol? Warren? Pawtucket? Pawtucket? What does the picture represent?

## 11. STATE OF CONNECTICUT.

*Map of the United States.* How is Connecticut bounded? Which way is Connecticut from Vermont? Maine? New Hampshire?

*Map of New England.* How many counties in Connecticut? The name of each county, with its shire town?

What are the two capitals? Where is Hartford? In which direction from Boston? Concord? Providence? Montpelier? Where is New Haven? Middletown? Norwich? New London? Litchfield? Fairfield? Danbury? Windham? Tolland? Woodstock? Saybrook? Guilford? Stratford? Derby? Norwalk? Lyme? Stonington? Describe the Connecticut; Housatonic; Thames; Farmington; Naugatuck. What sound south of Connecticut? What is a sound?

## 12. CONNECTICUT, CONTINUED.

The face of the country in Connecticut is generally hilly, and in the northwestern parts mountainous. The soil is good, and the industrious inhabitants have not neglected its cultivation. The valley of Connecticut river, from Middletown to the northern boundary of the state, is a luxuriant meadow, chequered by patches of wheat, corn, and other grain. Some other parts of this state are well cultivated, and fruitful; some portions are beautiful, as well from the gifts of nature as the improvements of art.

A canal has recently been opened, which commences at Westfield, in Massachusetts, and passes through Farmington and Cheshire, and terminates at New Haven; from this, considerable benefits to places near it are anticipated. It is proposed to carry this canal through from Westfield to Northampton. A company has been chartered by the state, for improving the navigation of Connecticut river, and it is now engaged in carrying into effect the objects of its formation. Steam-boats are already able to navigate this river as far up as Vermont.

The manufactures of Connecticut are considerable. Besides several large establishments for the manufacture of cotton and woollen cloths, clocks, nails, glass, hats, buttons, fire-arms, and a great amount of tin-ware, are made in various parts of the state.

The public institutions in Connecticut are numerous and valuable. Yale College, at New Haven, is one of the most eminent literary establishments in the Union. Washington College, at Hartford, is a new, but flourishing seminary, the buildings of which are elegant, and finely situated.

The Asylum for the Deaf and Dumb at Hartford, by means of which an unfortunate class of persons are restored to society, and made capable of reading, writing and conversing, is one of the most interesting institutions in the country. It was the first of the kind established in America, and the principal, Mr. Gallaudett, with the aid of Mr. Clerc, a deaf and dumb professor, is entitled to the credit of having been chiefly instrumental in its foundation. The fol-

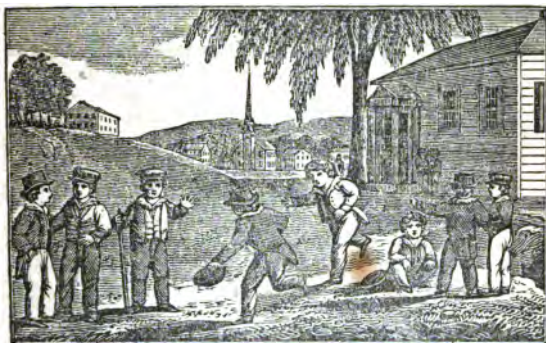
---

12. Describe the face of the country in Connecticut. What of the soil? Of the valley of Connecticut river? What of other parts of the state? What of Farmington canal? What of improvements in Connecticut river? What of manufactures? Public institutions? Yale College? Washington College? Asylum for the Deaf and Dumb?

lowing picture exhibits a view of the asylum in the background; in the foreground are some deaf and dumb pupils, with one of their teachers. He is addressing them by signs.



There is a seminary of great reputation, for young ladies, at Litchfield; and at Hartford a very efficient and useful school for a similar class of pupils. There is also a Law School at Litchfield, founded by the late Judge Reeve, which is in good repute. There is also a respectable law school at New Haven, nominally attached to the college. Beside these, there is a high school at New Haven for boys; a high school for boys at Hartford, and more than 30 other academies.



There is in this state a fund of nearly 2,000,000 of dollars, the

Describe the picture. What seminary at Litchfield? School at Hartford? Law School at Litchfield? At New Haven? What two high schools? What other seminaries? What school fund?

interest of which is consecrated to the support of common schools, in all the towns. Thus the means of education in reading, writing and arithmetic, are afforded to every individual. One of the most common objects presented to a traveller in this state is a school-house. On the preceding page is a picture of one.

New Haven and Hartford are the alternate places of meeting for the state legislature. New Haven, situated at the head of a small bay, that sets up about four miles from Long Island sound, is not excelled in beauty by any town in the United States. It is a place of considerable commerce, and possesses many handsome public and private buildings. Its churches, in particular, are beautiful; and the new state-house is a chaste and imposing specimen of architecture. Pop. 10,000. The engraving gives a view of a part of the town, embracing the college buildings.



Hartford, on the right bank of the Connecticut, is a fine town, and is surrounded by a rich and beautiful country. The Asylum for the Deaf and Dumb, the College, the Retreat, which is an institution for the insane, the state-house, and the several churches, furnish examples of handsome and appropriate architecture. The new Episcopal church, a specimen of the plain style of Gothic architecture, may be mentioned as one of the handsomest churches in the United States. The population of this city is about 9,800.

Middletown, on Connecticut river, is beautifully situated. Pop. 6,900. Norwich, Danbury, Litchfield, Fairfield, are all considerable places. Farmington is a beautiful town. Windsor, Wethersfield and Suffield, are also interesting places. New London is largely engaged in the whale fishery.

---

What are afforded to every individual? What is frequently met with by travellers in Connecticut? Describe the picture. What are the two seats of government? Describe New Haven.

What celebrated college here? Describe the picture. What of Hartford? Its public buildings? The Episcopal church? What of Middletown? What other considerable towns?

## 14. THE SIX EASTERN STATES, OR NEW ENGLAND.

*Map of New England.* Of what six states does New England consist? Which are the most eastern of the United States? See *Map of the United States*. How is New England bounded? What are the principal rivers of New England? Describe the Connecticut river. What river in New England next in size to the Connecticut? Describe the Merrimack. What next in size? Describe the Penobscot. Describe Narraganset bay; Cape Cod bay; Massachusetts bay; Casco bay; Penobscot bay.

Where is Cape Cod? Cape Ann? Cape Small-point? Where is Winnipiseogee lake? Umbagog? Moosehead? What range of mountains extends the whole length of New England? Describe the course of the Green mountain range.

In which direction is Hartford from Boston? From Portland? Concord? Providence? Montpelier? Boston from Providence? Montpelier? Portland? Concord? New Haven? Portland from Concord? Boston? Hartford? Montpelier? Providence? What are the capitals of the six Eastern States? Which is the greatest of the New England States in extent? Which is the second in size? Third? Fourth? Fifth? Which is the smallest? For answers to these questions see tabular views in the *Atlas*.

What is the distance of the following places from Boston:—Portland, Portsmouth, Concord, Montpelier, Hartford, Providence, Quebec, Montreal?

## 15. NEW ENGLAND, CONTINUED.

We have now examined in detail the six states which are embraced under the general name of New England. Let us turn back a moment, and take a view of the whole together.

The face of the country is greatly diversified. In the interior, it is mountainous, with valleys between. The land along the sea shore presents, in general, an irregular surface, consisting of hills and ridges, with flats of moderate extent between them. The inland portions, toward the mountains, present an almost constant succession of short hills and narrow vales. There are no extensive plains throughout the whole surface of New England.

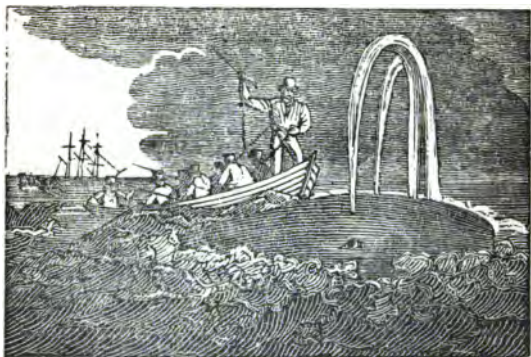
Much of the soil is good; yet in general it requires diligent cultivation, and compels the farmer to use great industry, to procure tolerable crops. Although it well repays the labor of the husbandman, it is, on the whole, less fruitful than many other countries. This might at first seem a disadvantage; but we shall see, that in those places which are the most fertile, and where industry is least necessary to subsistence, vice, poverty, and ignorance are most common.

The soil is best adapted to the production of grass. The raising of cattle, horses, sheep and hogs, is one of the leading pursuits of the farmer. Beef, pork, butter and cheese, of excellent quality, are abundant. Wheat, rye, oats, barley, flax and hemp are also raised in considerable quantities. There is not enough of wheat, however, produced, for the consumption of the inhabitants. Apples and cider are abundant, almost every farm being supplied with an orchard; pears and peaches are common in the southern parts, and many smaller fruits are produced in great plenty.

---

15. What of the face of the country in New England? What of the soil? What is the soil best adapted to? What is a leading pursuit of the farmer? What articles are abundant? What are raised in considerable quantities? Is there enough of wheat raised for the use of the inhabitants? What of apples and cider? What fruits are common?

The states of Massachusetts, Rhode Island and Connecticut are extensively engaged in manufactures. The principal articles are cotton and woollen goods; beside these, shoes, hats, tin-ware, clocks, and various other articles, are made in large quantities. New England is not less distinguished for its commerce, than its manufactures. There are numerous seaports, and many fine harbors along the coast. Boston is the centre of trade for the eastern portion. New York receives the produce of the western parts of Vermont, Massachusetts, and Connecticut. New England is also largely concerned in the whale fisheries, in the Pacific ocean, and in the northern seas; in the cod fisheries, on the banks of Newfoundland; and in the herring fisheries, on the coast of Maine. The engraving represents fishermen about to attack a whale.



The climate is cold in winter, and for a few days, generally, it is severe: in summer it is hot, and, for a short time in every season, it is extremely so. The spring is not as pleasant as in many countries, damp and disagreeable east winds being very common, particularly on the sea coast. The autumn is delightful, and the climate then is one of the most agreeable in the world. Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, and the western parts of Massachusetts, have an average of ten weeks' sleighing every winter. In the other parts of New England, particularly along the coast, the winter often passes without any sleighing, in consequence of the sea breezes, which melt the snow soon after it falls. In all parts of New England, the winter is so severe as to require great preparation for it; the dwellings, to be comfortable, must be tight. Thick woollen

---

What part of New England is extensively engaged in manufactures? What are the principal articles manufactured? For what is New England distinguished beside manufactures? What of seaports and harbors? What of Boston? New York? In what is New England also largely concerned? What of the climate in winter? Summer? Spring? Autumn? What of sleighing? What preparation for winter is necessary in New England?



clothing, and an ample stock of provisions for food, are necessary. To provide all these, the people are generally obliged to be industrious during the rest of the year, and also to be frugal, and to treasure up the earnings of the milder seasons, against the inclemency of winter.

The people are generally industrious, and careful of their earnings; and, having the habit of constantly looking forward to, and making preparation for, the future, they are generally well provided, comfortable and happy. Even the rigor of winter is thus divested of its terrors, and while the snow is driving over the hills and valleys, there is generally much cheerfulness and comfort by the blazing fire-side.

The people in this part of the United States have an interesting festival, which takes place in the autumn of every year, called Thanksgiving. In the morning of the appointed day, the inhabitants repair to the churches and meeting-houses, where they attend divine worship. They then return to their houses, where all branches of the family are usually assembled, a generous entertainment is provided, and the day and evening are spent in cheerfulness and mirth. The sons and daughters, who are settled at a distance, on this occasion, usually return and meet again around the parental hearth. Charity to the poor pervades the hearts of the rich, and none are so destitute as to lack the means of festivity on Thanksgiving day. The picture that follows represents a young man with his family, returning to the paternal roof, to celebrate this festival.



The inhabitants of New England spend very little time in amusements; with the exception of Thanksgiving, they have no national

---

What is required of the people, to enable them to provide for winter? What of the people of New England? What is the consequence of the industry and frugality of the people? What interesting festival in New England? Describe the manner of keeping Thanksgiving. Describe the picture. What of amusements in New England?



holyday, in the diversions of which both men and women participate. The fourth of July is a political anniversary; in its ceremonies men alone are engaged. The grave habits of the people, derived from their ancestors, their strict religious notions, the necessity of constant industry, are all opposed to scenes of thoughtlessness and gaiety.

From the first settlement of the country, the people of New England have been a religious people. The entire freedom of opinion enjoyed by the inhabitants has led to a diversity of religious denominations. In almost every town and village are several places of public worship belonging to different sects; among which are Methodists, Baptists, Episcopalians, Congregationalists, Quakers and Unitarians. It is disreputable for a man to have no religious creed, and there are few who do not give their support to some one mode of religious worship. The sabbath is very strictly observed, and the people generally attend public worship twice during the day.

The inhabitants are in general instructed in the common branches of school education. It is exceedingly rare that a person of mature age can be found, who cannot read, write, and perform the common operations of arithmetic. Almost every person, too, has a considerable stock of general knowledge, and is capable of forming correct opinions for himself on most subjects which it is important for men to understand. These circumstances arise from the universal provision, made from the first settlement of the country, for the education of all classes.

To these traits of character we may add, that the New Englanders have great facility in changing their occupations, and their places of abode,—possess a great desire for travelling,—are fond of traffic,—eager to get gain,—shrewd in driving a bargain,—wary and sagacious in new and difficult situations,—quick and penetrating in discerning character and discovering motives; and much more apt to pry into the secrets of others, than to reveal their own.

The disposition of the people of New England to seek their fortune at a distance from home, is remarkable. Several of the Western States have been almost exclusively settled by them. Among the busy and bustling traders of the large cities; among the orators who sway the nation; among the axe-men who are levelling the western forests; among the hunters and trappers, who are pursuing wild game at the foot of the Rocky mountains; among the missionaries, who are preaching to the Indians; among those who are car-

---

What of the fourth of July? What are opposed to scenes of gaiety and thoughtlessness? What has always been the character of the New England people? What consequence has followed the entire freedom of opinion? What exists in almost every town and village? To what sects do these churches and meeting-houses belong? What is disreputable? What of the sabbath?

What of education? What is rare? Of what has almost every person considerable? What is the cause of the general intelligence of the people in New England? What other traits of character belong to the people of New England? What is remarkable in the New Englanders? What parts of the country have been almost exclusively settled by them?

rying the gospel to foreign lands; among the mariners scattered over the ocean; among the whale-fishers of the Pacific, and the Greenland seas; among the cod-fishers, on the banks of Newfoundland; among the peddlars of the Southern States;—wherever there is an offer of reward, wherever there is a demand for the exertions of vigorous and skilful men,—there you find the practical, cautious, shrewd, and self-dependent sons of New England.

The engraving below points out some of the characteristics of New England. The vessel shows that the people are extensively engaged in commerce. The man ploughing intimates that agriculture is a considerable object of pursuit. The large building is a manufactory, and shows that the manufactures are extensive. The persons in the foreground represent emigrants, and illustrate the disposition of the people to emigrate to other parts of the country.



The number of inhabitants in New England is about 2,000,000. Scattered over the surface of the country are numerous cities, towns, and villages. A little more than two hundred years ago, the whole surface was covered with trees; from Maine to Connecticut, the view presented nothing but forests. These forests were only inhabited by savage men and wild beasts. In 1620, a small band of English people, called Puritans, landed at Plymouth. It was winter when they came, and they suffered much, but they were pious, and found consolation in religion. Soon others came from England; and in a few years, there were many thousands of English inhabitants, and many villages in various parts of New England. The Indians grew jealous of them, and burnt their houses, and killed some of them. Then there was war between

---

In what various situations may the natives of New England be found? Describe the picture. What is the present number of inhabitants in New England? What are scattered over the surface? What was the state of the country a little more than 200 years ago? What of the Puritans? What occurred in a few years after the arrival of the Puritans? What did the Indians do? What happened between the whites and Indians?

them; the white people conquered the Indians, the latter retired, and left the whites in possession of the country. It was divided into several colonies, subject to the king of England. The government at length became oppressive, and the people of New England united with the other states in throwing off the English dominion. The colonies thus became free and independent states. Maine continued to belong to Massachusetts till 1820, when the people formed a government for themselves, and were admitted by Congress as one of the United States.

## 16. STATE OF NEW YORK.

*Map of the United States.* How is New York bounded? Which way is it from you? From Maine? Rhode Island? New Hampshire? Which way is the city of New York from Boston? Portland? Middlebury? Hartford?

*Map of the Middle States.* How many counties in New York? What counties border on lake Ontario? What counties lie along the river St. Lawrence? What counties are on lake Erie? What counties are bounded by Pennsylvania on the south? What counties are on the eastern border of the state?

*The teacher can now take the Atlas, and ask from it the boundary and shire town of each county, if he thinks it best.*

Which is the largest river in New York? Describe the following rivers.—Hudson; Mohawk; St. Lawrence; Delaware; Susquehannah; Tioga; Alleghany; Genesee; Oswego; Niagara; Tonawanda; Black; Oswegatchie; St. Regis; Racket; Salmon; Saranac. What great lakes lie partly in New York? Where is lake George? Cayuga? Seneca? Oneida? Oswegatchie? Canandaigua? Chatauque? Skeneateles? Onondaga?

What large island at the southeast corner of the state? *For this island see map of New England.* Where is Staten island? What island is the city of New York upon? Ans. Manhattan Island. What island in Niagara river? What great canal in the state of New York? What is the capital? Where is Albany? Direction of Albany from the city of New York? Boston? Hartford? Providence? Portland? From you? Where is Utica? Buffalo? Rochester? Hudson? Plattsburg? Sacket's Harbor? Ogdensburg? Auburn? West Point? The city of New York? Brooklyn? Niagara Falls? Saratoga? Ballston? New Lebanon? Where are the Catskill mountains?

## 17. NEW YORK, CONTINUED.

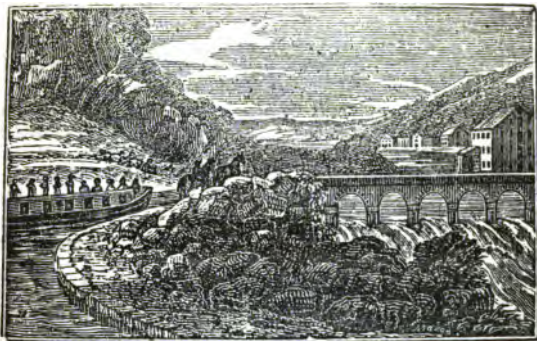
The state of New York ranks as first among the United States, for commerce, wealth and population. Its territory is extensive and fertile, and its situation unequalled for deriving benefit from inland navigation. The climate is healthy and agreeable; the face of the country is hilly, and in parts mountainous, in the eastern portions; the western part is level, or moderately uneven. The Erie canal is by far the greatest construction of the kind in America, and is longer than any canal in Europe. Its extent is about 365 miles. It furnishes an easy method of transporting to the Hudson river, and thence to the ocean, the products of the lands

---

How was New England divided? To whom were the people subject? When the government of England became oppressive, what did the people do? What did the colonies thus become? What of the state of Maine?

17. How does the state of New York compare with the other states for commerce, wealth and population? What can you say of the territory of New York? The climate? The face of the country? What is the length of the Erie canal? What is the use of this canal?

near it, as well as those on the borders of the great western lakes. The following picture exhibits a view on this canal.



The northern canal, 62 miles in length, extends from the southern point of lake Champlain to a place, a few miles from Albany, where the Erie canal terminates. The Delaware and Hudson canal extends from the Hudson river to the Delaware, and is 108 miles in length. There are several other canals in the state of New York, and a number of rail roads are either projected or begun. One of these is completed, from Albany to some distance west of Schenectady, and cars driven by steam carry passengers upon it.

The Catskill mountains are very elevated, and the scenery among them is highly picturesque and often sublime. At an elevation of about 2,000 feet, there is a small lake, from which issues a stream, that, in its descent, forms a cataract of about 300 feet fall. At a distance, this object resembles a white ribbon hung in the air.

There are several salt springs in this state; the most important are at Salina, where more than a million of bushels of salt are produced annually. The famous mineral springs of Ballston and Saratoga are the resort of the sick, gay and fashionable; during the latter portion of summer. There are warm springs at New Lebanon, which are visited for bathing.

The falls of Niagara, which are partly in this state, are the most stupendous cataract in the world. The waters accumulated from the great upper lakes, forming a river about three-fourths of a mile in width, plunge over the rocks in two columns, to the depth of

---

Describe the picture. What is the length of the northern canal? Where does it begin, and where end? What of the Delaware and Hudson canal? Other canals? Rail roads?

What of the Catskill range of mountains? What curiosity is there among these mountains? What salt springs in the state of New York? Where are the most important? How many bushels of salt are produced annually at Salina? What celebrated mineral springs in the state of New York? Who resort to these springs? What springs are resorted to for bathing?

What is the most stupendous cataract in the world? What is the width of the river at the falls?

about 150 feet. The shock makes the earth tremble for a considerable distance around, and a cloud of vapor rises over the spot, which is sometimes visible for 20 or 30 miles. This place is visited by many persons during the summer and autumn; the scene is calculated to excite the most profound emotions in the beholder.

Trenton falls, 14 miles from Utica, consisting of a succession of cascades, with beautiful scenes around, are very interesting. Cohoes falls, the falls of the Genessee at Rochester, Glenn's falls, Baker's falls, falls on the Black river, and some others, are all interesting objects.

The city of New York is the most populous city in America, and is one of the first commercial places in the world. It is admirably situated for trade, and many of the streets present scenes of bustle and activity nowhere else to be met with in this country. Its city hall is one of the most splendid edifices in the United States. The following cut represents a scene in one of the streets of this city. Population 213,000



Albany, a fine town on the Hudson river, near which the Erie canal unites with that stream, is the place of meeting for the legislature, and is the second town in the state, in point of population and commerce. It contains a very handsome stone state-house, and other public buildings. Pop. 24,200. Hudson, at the head of ship navigation on the Hudson river, has considerable trade, and some manufactures. Pop. 5,400. Poughkeepsie, Troy, Newburgh, Catskill, Lansingburg, are towns of considerable importance.

What is the height of the falls? What effect is produced by the shock? Describe the cloud that ascends from the falls. What emotions are excited by beholding this vast work of nature? What can you say of Trenton falls? Cohoes falls? Genessee falls? Glenn's falls? Baker's falls? Black river falls?

What is the most populous city in America? What can you say of New York as a commercial city? Its situation? The scenes exhibited in many of its streets? What of its city hall? Describe the picture. Population of city of New York?

Describe Albany. What of Hudson? Poughkeepsie? Newburgh? Catskill? Lansingburg?

Schenectady has a flourishing college. Utica is a thriving place, with an extensive inland trade. Pop. 8,300. Rochester has also considerable trade, and is rapidly increasing. Pop. 9,300. Canandaigua is a fine town. Auburn, Buffalo, Geneva, Lockport, and many others, are considerable places.

The University of New York, in the city of New York, embraces Columbia College and a flourishing medical institution. Union College has a respectable rank among the higher seminaries in the United States. Hamilton College, at Clinton, is a well endowed institution. At West Point, there is an excellent military academy under the direction of the government of the United States.

There is a theological seminary, supported by Episcopalians, in the city of New York; one at Auburn, belonging to the Presbyterians; and another at Hamilton, under the direction of the Baptists. Beside these, there are about 40 public academies in the state. There is a fund of 1,705,000 dollars, the revenue of which is devoted to the maintenance of common schools.

## 18. STATE OF NEW JERSEY.

*Map of the United States.* How is New Jersey bounded? In what direction is it from you? Which way is it from New Hampshire? Vermont? Rhode Island? Connecticut? Maine? Which way is Trenton from Boston? Hartford? Providence? Portland? From you?

*Map of the Middle States.* How many counties in New Jersey? Which are the two northern counties? The three southern? What counties touch the western boundary of the state? What the eastern boundary?

*Let the teacher, if he thinks best, take the Atlas, and ask the pupil the boundary and shire-town of each county.*

Describe the Hudson river; Raritan; Passaic; Hackinsack. What is the capital of New Jersey? Where is Trenton? Its direction from New York? Albany? Buffalo? Where is Newark? New Brunswick? Elizabethtown? Burlington? Patterson? What bay south of New Jersey?

## 19. NEW JERSEY, CONTINUED.

New Jersey is small in extent, but its manufactures are considerable. The face of the country is diversified; in the northern part it is mountainous; in the middle, hilly; the southern part is flat and sandy. The central portions of New Jersey are very fertile; the southern parts produce pears, peaches and apples, in great perfection. From the latter, the inhabitants make cider, which is esteemed the best in the United States. The Philadelphia market is supplied with some of its best kitchen vegetables from the southern counties.

---

Schenectady? Utica? Rochester? Canandaigua? Auburn? Buffalo? Geneva? Lockport?

What of the University of New York? Union College? Hamilton College? The Academy at West Point? What theological seminary in the city of New York? What at Auburn? At Hamilton? How many incorporated academies in this state? What support is given in this state to common schools?

19. What of the extent of New Jersey? What of its manufactures? Of the face of the country? Of the fertility of the central portions of the state? What do the southern parts produce? What do the people of New Jersey make that is celebrated? What do the people of the southern counties furnish the Philadelphia market with?

The following picture represents a mill where cider is made—an object frequently seen in this state.



The falls of Passaic, at Patterson, may be regarded as one of the most beautiful natural objects in the world. The river, which is forty yards wide, rushes in one entire sheet over a rock, and falls perpendicularly 70 feet.

The Morris canal crosses the northern part of the state, from New Jersey to the Pennsylvania coal region. Several rail-roads are also begun in this state.

Trenton, the seat of government, is finely situated on the Delaware, 30 miles from Philadelphia. Pop. 4,000. Newark, on the Passaic, nine miles from New York, is a very pleasant town. Pop. 11,000. Elizabethtown, Burlington, and New Brunswick, are all very agreeable places. Patterson is distinguished for its manufactories, situated at the falls.

Princeton is the seat of the College of New Jersey, which is one of the most respectable institutions of the kind in our country. At the same place is a Theological Seminary, under the direction of the Presbyterians. At New Brunswick there is a Theological Seminary, belonging to the Dutch Reformed Church, with which a literary institution called Rutgers college is united. There are about 20 academies in the state.

## 20. STATE OF PENNSYLVANIA.

*Map of the United States.* How is Pennsylvania bounded? In what direction is it from Maine? Massachusetts? Vermont? New York? From you? Which way is Philadelphia

Describe the picture.

Describe the Passaic falls. Where are these falls? What of the Morris canal? What of rail-roads? What of Trenton? Of Newark? Elizabethtown? New Brunswick? Princeton? Burlington? Patterson?

What of New Jersey college? Where is this college? What other seminary at Princeton? What institution at New Brunswick? How many academies in New Jersey?



from New York? Trenton? Albany? Hartford? Providence? Boston? Portland? From you?

*Map of the Middle States.* How many counties in Pennsylvania? What counties touch the state of New York on the north? What counties touch the eastern border? What the southern? What the western?

*Let the teacher, if he thinks best, ask the pupil the boundary and shire town of each county, from the map.*

What is the capital? Where is Harrisburg? Direction from New York? Trenton? Albany? Where is Lancaster? Philadelphia? Reading? Carlisle? Pittsburg? York? Describe the Delaware river; Schuylkill; Susquehanna; Lehigh; Juniata; Alleghany; Monongahela; Ohio; Youghiogeny. What mountains in this state? In what part of the state do they lie?

## 21. PENNSYLVANIA, CONTINUED.

Pennsylvania is a large state, and in parts fertile and well cultivated; it is rich in manufactures, and enjoys a climate at once healthful and agreeable. It abounds in fruit, possesses fine roads, and excellent stone bridges, and may be regarded as one of the most important of the United States. The following picture exhibits a view in Pennsylvania.



The middle regions including nearly one half the state are mountainous; the other parts are chiefly level, or moderately uneven. West of the Alleghanies, the country is elevated and hilly. In passing through this state, the traveller may observe some of the finest agricultural districts in the Union. The mountainous parts are uncultivated except in some of the valleys.

Pennsylvania has, of late, manifested great spirit and enterprise in the construction of canals. The Union canal unites the Schuylkill and Susquehanna rivers. The Pennsylvania canal, designed,

21. Give a general description of Pennsylvania. In what does it abound? What does it possess? How may it be regarded? Describe the picture.

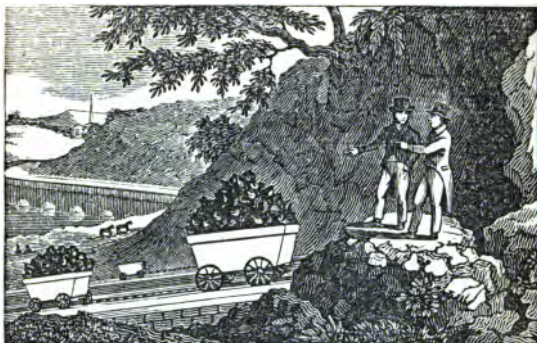
Describe the surface of the country. What may a traveller observe in passing through this state? What of the mountainous parts of Pennsylvania?

What has Pennsylvania manifested of late? Describe the Union canal; the Pennsylvania canal.



in connexion with a rail-road, to unite the eastern and western parts of the state, is now in progress. There are many other canals either completed or begun in this state. Several rail-roads are also commenced.

Pennsylvania is more largely engaged in manufactures than any other of the states. It also abounds in pit coal; the mines in the vicinity of Pittsburg supply that city and its manufactures at the rate of three cents a bushel. From the Lehigh, Schuylkill and other mines in the neighborhood, Philadelphia, New York, as well as Boston and other Atlantic towns, are furnished wholly, or in part, with their fuel. The engraving represents some of the cars, laden with coal, descending on the rail-road.



Iron ore is also abundant, as well as marble of a fine quality. Bedford springs, near Bedford, and York springs, 15 miles from Carlisle, are useful in various diseases, and are much resorted to. There are celebrated oil springs about 11 miles from Franklin.

Philadelphia is the second city in the United States, in population, and the first in the amount of its manufactures. It is pleasantly situated between the Delaware and Schuylkill rivers, about six miles from their confluence. It is one of the most regular cities in the world, its streets uniformly crossing each other at right angles. The picture which follows on the next page exhibits a scene in one of the streets of Philadelphia.

This city is built of brick, and is remarkable for its cleanliness. Some of the streets are adorned with handsome public, as well as

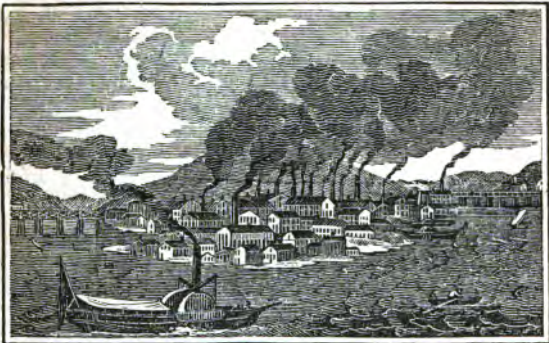
---

Other canals? Rail-roads? What of Pennsylvania in regard to manufactures? In what kind of coal does it abound? What of the coal mines near Pittsburg? What of the Lehigh coal mines? Describe the picture. What ore is abundant in Pennsylvania? What kind of stone? What medicinal springs in Pennsylvania? Oil springs?

What of Philadelphia in regard to population? In respect to its manufactures? How is Philadelphia situated? What can you say of the arrangement of its streets? Describe the picture. Of what is it built? For what is it remarkable? With what are some of its streets adorned?



private buildings. The bank of the United States is doubtless the most chaste and elegant edifice in this country. The Fair mount water-works, by which the city is supplied with water from the Schuylkill, is a most useful and ingenious construction. The daily expense of this establishment, by which such prodigious quantities of water are raised from the river, as to supply this great city, is very trifling. Philadelphia contains 60 houses of public worship, several extensive and valuable public libraries, and many benevolent, literary and scientific institutions. Population, 168,000.



Pittsburg, situated at the confluence of the Monongahela and Alleghany, which unite and form the Ohio, is the centre of an extensive trade, and is not only the seat of the principal manufactures in

---

What can you say of the bank of the United States? What of the Fair mount water-works? How many houses of public worship in Philadelphia? What public institutions in that city?

How is Pittsburg situated? Describe the picture. What is it the seat of?

Pennsylvania, but one of the most considerable manufacturing towns in America. By means of the Ohio, it has an easy communication with New Orleans and the Western States; and the abundant and cheap supply of coal in its vicinity, added to other circumstances, renders its advantages very great. Pop. 17,000.

Harrisburg, the seat of government, is a handsome town, pleasantly situated on the Susquehannah, 90 miles from Philadelphia. Pop. 4,300. Lancaster is a remarkably beautiful town, situated in a pleasant and highly cultivated region, and carries on a large trade with the interior. Reading is an agreeable place, and has considerable trade and manufactures. Carlisle, York, Chambersburg, Germantown, Eaton, and Bethlehem, are also towns of some importance.

The University of Pennsylvania, in Philadelphia, consists of four departments. The medical department holds the first rank among the medical institutions of the United States. Besides this, there are Washington Collège at Washington; Jefferson College at Canonsburg; and Alleghany College at Meadville. The Moravians have flourishing seminaries at Bethlehem, Nazareth and Litz.

The inhabitants of this state are emigrants from various parts of Europe, and their descendants. About one half are of English origin; one fourth German; one eighth Irish; and the remainder Scotch, Welsh, Swedish and Dutch. The English is the prevailing language, but German is also extensively spoken. Newspapers, almanacs, and some books, in the German language, are published in the state.

## 22. STATE OF DELAWARE.

*Map of the United States.* How is Delaware bounded? In what direction is it from New Jersey? Vermont? Massachusetts? Which way is Dover from Philadelphia? New York? Hartford? Boston? Montpelier? Concord? From you?

*Map of the Middle States.* How many counties in Delaware? Which is the northern county? Which the southern? Which the middle? Tell the shire town of each county. What is the capital of Delaware? Where is Dover? Direction from New York? Harrisburg? Trenton? Where is Newcastle? Wilmington? What bay between Delaware and New Jersey? Describe Brandywine creek; Duck creek; Christian creek; Indian river; Choptank; Nanticoke. Where is cape May? Cape Henlopen?

## 23. DELAWARE, CONTINUED.

Delaware is, in extent, the smallest of the American states, with the exception of Rhode Island; in respect to population, it is the

---

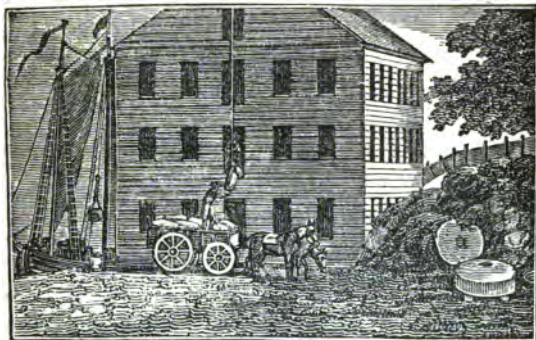
By what means has it an easy communication with New Orleans? What gives Pittsburg great advantages? What of Harrisburg? What of Lancaster? Reading? Carlisle? York? Chambersburg? Eaton? Germantown? Bethlehem?

Where is the University of Pennsylvania? What of this institution? What other colleges in Pennsylvania? Where have the Moravians flourishing schools?

What part of the inhabitants of this state are of English origin? What portion of German origin? What portion of Irish? What is the origin of the remainder of the inhabitants of Pennsylvania? What language is principally spoken in Pennsylvania? What other language is extensively used? What publications are there in German?

23. Which of the United States has the smallest territory? Which, after Rhode Island, has the smallest territory? Which has the smallest number of inhabitants?

smallest. The land in the northern part of the state is fertile, and well suited to agriculture; the rest of the aspect of an extended plain, the soil being sandy and light. Wheat is extensively raised in this state, of an excellent quality. The following is a picture of a mill for manufacturing wheat into flour, with a vessel waiting to carry it away.



On the Brandywine, near Wilmington, and the neighborhood, there are considerable manufactories for paper, woollen goods, and gunpowder, and the best flour mills in the United States. The commerce of the state is inconsiderable.

The Chesapeake and Delaware canal, which crosses the peninsula in the states of Delaware and Maryland, in a direction nearly east and west, opens a communication between Delaware river and Chesapeake bay. It is calculated for vessels of a draught not exceeding 10 feet. Its length is 14 miles, its breadth 60 feet.

Dover, the seat of government, situated on Jones's creek, contains a handsome state-house. Pop. 1,200. Wilmington is the largest town, and has considerable trade, and extensive manufactures. Pop. 6,600. At Lewiston, there are works for the manufacture of salt from sea water; Newcastle has some trade; Georgetown and Milford are considerable places.

## 24. THE FOUR MIDDLE STATES.

*Map of the Middle States.* Which four states are called the Middle States? Boundaries of the Middle States? Which are the three principal rivers in the Middle States? Describe the Hudson; Delaware; Susquehanna.

Describe the face of the country in Delaware; the soil. What is raised in Delaware, of an excellent quality, and to a considerable extent? Describe the picture. What manufactories on the Brandywine? What mills? What of the commerce of Delaware?

Describe the Chesapeake and Delaware canal. For what is it calculated? Its length? Width?

What of Dover? Wilmington? Lewiston? Newcastle? Georgetown? Milford?

Penn. in that large island in the Middle States? What bay between Delaware and New Jersey? What cape at the southern part of New Jersey?

What are the capitals of the four Middle States? What is the direction of the following places from New York:—Philadelphia? Trenton? Dover? Pittsburg? Harrisburg? Buffalo? Albany? Elizabethtown?

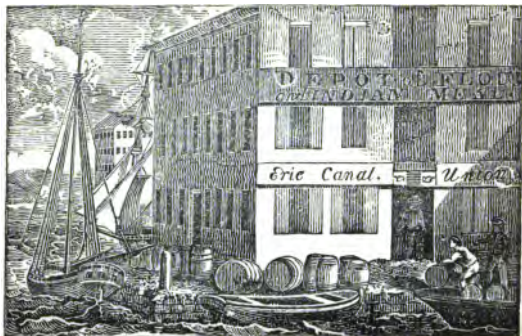
Distances of the following places from New York? Plattsburg, Albany, Utica, Trenton, Philadelphia, Dover, Baltimore, Washington, Norfolk, Wilmington, Newbern, Raleigh.

Which is the most extensive of the Middle States? The next? The next? The smallest? See tabular views.

## 25. MIDDLE STATES, CONTINUED.

The four Middle States occupy one of the finest portions of this country. Their surface presents every variety of mountain, hill, plain and valley. In general, the soil is fertile, and particularly favorable to the production of various kinds of grain. Wheat is the principal object of agriculture. Indian corn, rye, barley, and oats, are also extensively cultivated. Apples, pears and peaches are abundant, and arrive at great perfection. The climate is excellent, the winters are milder and shorter than in New England; sleighing is not common, except in the northern and western parts of the state of New York, and among the mountainous regions of Pennsylvania. The spring and autumn are delightful; the summers in Pennsylvania and Delaware are very warm.

The commerce of the Middle States is extensive, and is chiefly



carried on through the cities of New York and Philadelphia, to which it centres: the trade, however, of a part of Pennsylvania and a part of Delaware, goes to Baltimore. The preceding picture represents a place of deposit for wheat and other grain, which are the chief agricultural products of these states.

The Middle States were originally settled by people from different

---

25. What of the four Middle States? Face of the country? Soil? Productions? Fruits? Describe the climate. What of commerce and trade? Describe the picture. What of the settlement of these states?

countries, having different habits, feelings and opinions. Society, therefore, does not possess a uniform character, which enables us to describe it in general terms. The people have not that unity of feeling and interest, which we observe in the New England States, and the only reason for their being classed together appears to be that of contiguity. They seldom unite for any public purpose, and there seems to be no sympathy, or common feeling, which is likely to make them act in concert in public affairs.

The population of the Middle States is about 3,700,000. This division of the country embraces the two largest and most commercial cities in the Union. The first settlement in New York was made by Dutch emigrants in 1614. The colony was ceded to the British in 1674, and remained subject to them till the revolution. New Jersey was settled by a few Danes and Dutch as early as 1624. Elizabethtown was settled in 1664. Emigrants from various countries established themselves here, but the colony was subject to Great Britain till 1774. During the revolutionary war, many celebrated battles were fought in this state.

Pennsylvania was first settled by the Swedes in 1627; it was conquered by the Dutch in 1654; and, ten years afterwards, the Dutch surrendered it to the English. In 1631, it was granted to the celebrated William Penn, who soon after came over with a colony of Friends, and laid the foundation of Philadelphia. Delaware was first settled in 1627, by Swedes and Finns.

## 26. STATE OF MARYLAND.

*Map of the United States.* Direction from Maine? New York? New Jersey? Direction of Baltimore from Boston? Hartford? Montpelier? Providence? Trenton? Philadelphia? From you?

*Map of the Middle States.* Boundaries? How many counties in Maryland? What bay divides this state into two parts? Which counties are on the western shore of Chesapeake bay? Which on the eastern?

*Let the teacher ask the boundaries and shire town of each county from the map.*

Describe the Susquehannah river; Patapsco; Patuxent; Elk; Sassafras; Chester; Choptank; Nanticoke; Pocomoke. What is the capital of Maryland? Where is Annapolis? Direction from Albany? Trenton? Harrisburg? Concord? Dover? Where is Hagerstown? Baltimore? Fredericktown?

## 27. MARYLAND, CONTINUED.

The eastern portion of Maryland, called the Eastern shore, is low, level and sandy: the western part is similar, except in the northwestern portion, which is mountainous; and the northern parts, which are hilly and variegated. It is a highly commercial state, and exports large quantities of flour and tobacco, partly the produce of its own soil, and partly the produce of the adjacent

Society? Do these states usually act in concert? Why do they not act in concert? Present population? What remarkable cities in this division of the United States? What can you tell of the history of New York? What of the history of New Jersey? What of the history of Pennsylvania? Delaware?

27. Describe the face of the country on the Eastern shore of Maryland; on the western. What of Maryland as to commerce? What of its exports?



states. The Chesapeake and Delaware canal, described under Delaware, is partly in this state. A rail-road from Baltimore to the Ohio river, has been commenced, and the prospect is favorable for its successful execution.

The largest town in Maryland is Baltimore, which is a fine city, the third in size in the United States. It is beautifully situated on the Patapsco, and is a place of great commerce. Many of the ships which sail from Baltimore are celebrated as fast sailers. The following picture represents one of these at sea.



This city is regularly laid out, and possesses many splendid edifices. The Roman Catholic cathedral is a truly magnificent building. The Washington monument is a superb stone structure, 163 feet high. Baltimore has 80,600 inhabitants.

Fredericktown, situated in a fruitful tract of country, is a very handsome town, and carries on considerable inland trade. Hagerstown is also a flourishing place. Elkton, Chestertown, and Cambridge, are considerable places.

There is a flourishing literary institution in Baltimore, called the University of Maryland. The medical department forms one of the most valuable medical schools in the United States. There are two other colleges in Baltimore; St. Mary's college, and Baltimore college. Beside these, there are about 20 academies, supported in part by the government, and provision has been recently made for establishing primary, or common schools, throughout the state, to be supported by a public tax.

---

Of the Chesapeake and Delaware canal? Of the Baltimore and Ohio rail-road?

What is the largest town? What is the rank of Baltimore among the cities of the United States? How is Baltimore situated? Describe the picture. What of the Roman Catholic cathedral? Washington monument? Population of Baltimore?

What of Fredericktown? Hagerstown? Elkton? Chestertown? Cambridge?

What flourishing literary institution in Baltimore? What of the medical department in the University of Maryland? What other colleges in Baltimore? How many academies? For what has provision been recently made in Maryland?

## 28. DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.

*Map of the Middle States.* How is the district of Columbia bounded? What river divides it? On which side of the Potomac is Washington? On which side is Alexandria? On which side is Georgetown? What is the shape of the District of Columbia?

*Map of the United States.* In what direction is Portland from Washington? Concord? Montpelier? Hartford? Boston? New York? Trenton? Philadelphia? Dover? Baltimore? In what direction is Washington from you?

## 29. DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA, CONTINUED.

The District of Columbia is a tract of land 10 miles square, ceded by Maryland and Virginia to the United States. It is not a state, nor does it belong to either of the states. It pertains to the government of the United States, and is set apart for, and placed under the direction of, the general government.

The government of the United States is committed to a president, and congress. Congress consists of two bodies—the senate and the house of representatives. They meet at Washington, in a building called the capitol, once a year, to enact laws. The president lives in a public building, about a mile from the capitol, and his duty is to ensure the execution of the laws. Here is a picture of the president of the United States, at Washington, near his house.



Washington is the capital of the United States. It is situated on the Potomac, about 300 miles, by the course of the river and bay, from the ocean. It is pleasantly situated, and is laid out in a manner to render it a magnificent city, when the plan is completed.

29. What of the District of Columbia? Whom does it belong to? Under what direction and government is it? Of what does the government of the United States at Washington consist? Of what does congress consist? How often does congress meet? Where does it meet? For what purpose does congress meet? Where does the president live? What is his duty? Describe the picture.

What of Washington?



The Capitol, constructed of light-colored free-stone, is by far the most splendid edifice in the United States. In this building, congress meets every winter to enact laws. The other public buildings are, the general post-office, the president's house, about a mile from the capitol, and four buildings for the four departments of the government; viz. the department of state, of the treasury, war, and the navy. Pop. 18,800.

Alexandria has a considerable trade, principally in flour. Population, 8,200. Georgetown is a handsome place, with some trade. Pop. 8,400. There is a Catholic college in Georgetown, with handsome endowments. Columbia College, at Washington, is pleasantly situated, about a mile from the president's house to the north.

### 30. STATE OF VIRGINIA.

*Map of the United States.* Boundaries? Direction from Maine? Massachusetts? New York? Rhode Island? From you? Which way is Richmond from Portland? Boston? Washington? New York? Philadelphia? Dover? Annapolis? From you?

*Map of the Middle States, and Map of the Southern States.* How many counties in Virginia? What counties west of the Blue Ridge? East of the Blue Ridge?

Where is cape Charles? cape Henry? Describe the Potomac river; the Rappahannock; James; York; Sandy; Elk; Guandot; Ohio; Great Kenhawa; Little Kenhawa; Roanoke. What is the capital? Direction of Richmond from Washington? New York? Pittsburg? Where is Philadelphia? Annapolis? Where is Norfolk? Petersburg? Charlottesville? Lynchburg? What range of mountains in this state? In which direction does this range cross the state?

### 31. VIRGINIA, CONTINUED.

Virginia has a larger territory than any other of the United States. Its extent is nearly equal to that of all the New England States. The Alleghany mountains pass through the western part of the state. The main range passes between the waters of the Kenhawa and James rivers. East of this range, and parallel to it, is the Blue ridge, which divides the state into two nearly equal parts. The loftiest peaks of the Blue ridge are 4000 feet in height.

The land west of the Blue ridge is high and mountainous; on the east, it is at first hilly, but soon becomes low and level, and thus extends to the sea-coast. East of the Blue ridge, the inhabitants are principally planters, who live on their estates, the soil being cultivated by slaves. West of the Blue ridge, there are fewer slaves, and the white people labor, as in New England.

---

The capitol? What public buildings, in Washington, beside the capitol? What of Alexandria? Georgetown? What college at Georgetown? What college at Washington?

31. Which is the largest of the United States? What state is nearly as large as all New England? What mountains pass through the western part of Virginia? Between the waters of what rivers does the main range pass? Where is the Blue ridge? In what direction does the Blue ridge run? How does the Blue ridge divide Virginia? How high are the loftiest peaks of the Blue ridge?

Describe the face of the country east of the Blue ridge; west. What of the inhabitants west of the Blue ridge? East of the Blue ridge?

The staple productions of Virginia are wheat and tobacco; these are principally exported in northern and eastern vessels. Indian corn, rye, hemp and flax, are extensively cultivated. There are iron works in various parts of the state. There are gold mines in the mountainous regions, which are wrought to some extent.

Coal of an excellent quality is abundant on James river, 15 miles above Richmond; limestone, lead and chalk, are also found in the state. Berkley springs, and the warm and hot springs near Bath, are much resorted to, on account of their medicinal virtues. The hot springs are sometimes sufficiently heated to boil an egg.

There is a remarkable natural bridge, over Cedar creek, in this state. It extends across a chasm, from 60 to 80 feet in width, and 250 feet deep, at the bottom of which the creek flows. This stupendous arch is looked upon by the beholder with mingled emotions of awe and delight.

There is a curious cave, called Blowing cave, in one of the ridges of the Alleghany mountains. It is a hole, about 100 feet in dimensions, in the side of a hill, from which a stream of air rushes with sufficient force to prostrate the grass and weeds, at a distance of 60 feet! Madison's cave, near Staunton, extends into the earth 300 feet. Wier's cave, on the north side of the Blue ridge, consists of several apartments, and is between 2,000 and 3,000 feet in length. Some of the apartments display the most brilliant stalactites and incrustations, when viewed by torch-light. The passage of the Potomac river through the Blue ridge at Harper's Ferry, presents a beautiful and stupendous scene.



What are the principal or staple productions of Virginia? How are they exported? What other articles are extensively cultivated, beside wheat and tobacco, in Virginia? What works in various parts of the state? What of gold mines?

What of coal in Virginia? Limestone? Chalk? Lead? What springs in Virginia? What of the hot springs? What of the natural bridge? What of the Blowing cave? Madison's cave? Wier's cave? What of the passage of the Potomac through the Blue ridge?

Virginia is remarkable as the birth-place of Washington. Three other presidents of the United States—Jefferson, Madison and Monroe—were natives of Virginia. The preceding picture represents the rock bridge in the background; the monument, in the foreground, commemorates Washington, one of the greatest and best of men who has ever lived.

Richmond, the capital of the state, is the largest town. It is beautifully situated, at the falls of James river, about 150 miles from the mouth. It has several handsome public buildings, and carries on a considerable trade. Pop. 16,000.

Norfolk has a fine harbor, and more foreign commerce than any other town in the state. Pop. 9,800. Petersburg has a large trade in tobacco and flour. Fredericksburg receives large quantities of flour from the surrounding counties, which is exported from thence. Lynchburg is the centre of trade for the neighboring district. Yorktown is famous for the surrender of the British army at that place to the American forces under the command of Washington, near the close of the revolutionary war.

The University of Virginia is established at Charlottesville; the buildings were erected at great expense, and on an extensive scale. There are three other colleges in the state—William and Mary's College, at Williamsburg; Washington College, at Lexington; and Hampden Sidney College, in Prince Edward's county. This state has a literary fund of about 1,100,000 dollars; 45,000 dollars of the annual income is appropriated to common schools; and 15,000 to the University of Virginia. There are academies in various parts of the state.

## 32. STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA.

*Map of the United States.* How is this state bounded? In what direction is it from New York state? From Vermont? Delaware? Massachusetts? District of Columbia? What three capes on the coast? What is the capital of the state? Where is Raleigh? Which way is Raleigh from Washington? Boston? New York? Hartford? Providence? Trenton? From you? Where is Fayetteville? Newbern? Huntsville? Williamston? Wilmington? Describe the Roanoke river; Chowan; Neuse; Cape Fear; Yadkin; Catawba; Great Pedee; French; Broad. What mountains cross the state near the western border?

*Map of the Middle States, and Map of the Southern States.* What counties border on Albemarle sound? On Pamlico sound? What rivers empty into Pamlico sound? What into Albemarle sound? *Let the teacher ask the boundaries and names of the several counties from the two maps.*

## 33. NORTH CAROLINA, CONTINUED.

North Carolina is divided into 62 counties. The coast is bordered by a ridge of sand, separated from the main land by sounds

---

On what account is Virginia remarkable? How many presidents have been natives of Virginia? Describe the picture.

What of Richmond? Norfolk? Petersburg? Fredericksburg? Lynchburg? Yorktown? What of the University of Virginia? What other colleges in Virginia? What literary fund has this state? How large a portion of the income is devoted to the support of common schools? How much to the University of Virginia?

33. Into how many counties is North Carolina divided?

and broad bays. The western part of this state is mountainous; it becomes hilly toward the east, and, about 80 miles from the sea-coast, is low and sandy. Dismal swamp, 30 miles long, and 10 broad, is partly in this state, and partly in Virginia. A great many birds which spend the summer in the northern and eastern states, live in this swamp during the winter. Tobacco and Indian corn are extensively cultivated. Wheat, rice, barley, oats and hemp, are among the other productions. The low country is principally occupied with pine forests, which yield tar, pitch, turpentine and boards, constituting one half the exports of the state.

On the coast of North Carolina there are numerous sand banks and islands, which render the approach to it, from sea, difficult and dangerous. Its commerce is principally carried on through the seaports of neighboring states. Near the western border, there are several mineral springs, which are found useful in various diseases. Ararat, or Pilot mountain, near Salem, is esteemed a great curiosity. It is nearly a mile high; at the top, a stupendous rock rises, like a steeple, to the height of three hundred feet.

Gold has been recently found in the mountainous parts of North Carolina and the adjacent states, in considerable quantities. Many persons are engaged in obtaining it. It is stated that 20,000 persons are employed chiefly in North Carolina and Georgia. The value of the gold annually procured is variously estimated from



1,000,000, to 5,000,000 dollars. Travellers who have visited the gold mines, give a very interesting account of them. The preceding

Describe the face of the country in North Carolina. What of Dismal swamp? What articles are extensively cultivated in North Carolina? What articles, beside tobacco and Indian corn, are among the products of the state? What articles constitute one half the exports of the state?

What of the coast of North Carolina? How is the commerce of this state principally carried on? What mineral springs in this state? Describe Pilot mountain. What of gold? Describe the picture.

picture represents people seeking for gold in the foreground; in the background is a view of Pilot mountain.

Raleigh is the capital of the state. It is pleasantly situated, and had a state-house, in which was a costly statue of Washington, by Canova. This edifice was recently burned down, and the statue badly injured. Pop. 1,700. Newbern is the largest town in the state, and has considerable commerce. Pop. 3,800. Fayetteville is a flourishing town, and, from its favorable position, has an extensive trade. Great quantities of tobacco, cotton, flour, and other articles, are brought here from the back country, and carried down cape Fear river, to Wilmington. Wilmington, 35 miles from the sea, exports more produce than any other town in the state.

The University of North Carolina is a flourishing institution, at Chapel hill, 28 miles from Raleigh. There is an academy for females at Salem, under the direction of the Moravians, which enjoys a high reputation.

Dismal swamp canal, partly in this state, and partly in Virginia, connects the waters of Chesapeake bay and Albemarle sound. It is 22½ miles long.

### 34. STATE OF SOUTH CAROLINA.

*Map of the Southern States.* Boundaries? Let the pupil tell the names and boundaries of the counties. Direction of South Carolina from Maine? Massachusetts? Virginia? Vermont? Rhode Island? Pennsylvania? From you? What is the capital? Which way is Columbia from Boston? New York? Providence? Philadelphia? Washington? Pittsburg? Where is Charleston? Camden? Georgetown? Describe the Santee river; Great Pedee, Little Pedee; Saluda; Catawba; Broad; Combahee; Waccamaw; Savannah; Cooper; Ashley; Edisto. What islands on the coast of South Carolina? What mountains in the western part of this state? Describe the following canals. Santee; Wingaw; Kinlock

### 35. SOUTH CAROLINA, CONTINUED.

South Carolina is divided into 28 counties. The sea-coast is bordered with a chain of islands. The country, for about 80 miles from the shore, is a low, sandy plain, covered with forests of pitch pine. As you proceed inland, the surface, for an extent of 50 miles, is a region of sand hills. A ridge of considerable elevation rises here, and the country to the west is elevated and hilly. The Alleghany mountains cross the western border of the state. In the latter region, the air is pure, and the climate healthy; but in the low country, fevers prevail during the summer months, and prove very fatal to strangers.

Cotton is the great staple of this state. Rice, tobacco, lumber, tar, pitch and turpentine, are however amongst its products. The exports are principally made in northern and eastern vessels. There are several canals in this state.

---

What of Raleigh? Newbern? Fayetteville? Wilmington? What of the University of North Carolina? What academy at Salem? What of Dismal swamp canal?

35. How many counties in South Carolina? What of the coast? Describe the face of the country. Climate of the upper country? Of the lower country? What is the great staple of this state? The other productions? What of exports? What canals in South Carolina?

The western parts of this state are occupied by farmers, who possess few slaves, and chiefly depend upon their own efforts for support. The low country is inhabited by planters, with large estates, and numerous slaves, who perform the labor; their proprietors living at their ease, and possessing a high character for honor and independence of feeling. They are much devoted to the chase and other field sports. The following cut represents a planter's house, with the ordinary scenes around it.



South Carolina College, at Columbia, is well endowed, and liberally patronised by the state. Academies have been established in various places, and 30,000 dollars are annually appropriated to free schools.

The largest city in South Carolina is Charleston. It is the principal market for the products of this state, as well as a considerable portion of North Carolina. It is situated on a tongue of land, formed by the confluence of Cooper and Ashley rivers, seven miles from the ocean. It is laid out in a regular manner, and is a place of much wealth and commerce. Pop. 30,300.

Columbia, the seat of Government, is pleasantly situated on the Congaree river, 120 miles from Charleston. Pop. 3,300 Georgetown has some trade; Camden and Beaufort are considerable places. Vienna, Hamburg, and Cheraw, are also towns of some importance

### 36. STATE OF GEORGIA.

*Map of the United States, and Map of the Southern States. Boundaries? Let the pupil tell the names and boundaries of the counties. Direction from Vermont? Rhode Island? Massachusetts? Delaware? New Jersey? Maine? What is the capital? Direction of Milledgeville from Philadelphia? Annapolis? Washington? Trenton? Boston? Portland?*

Describe the inhabitants of the upper country. Describe those of the lower country. Describe the picture. What college? What of academies? What appropriations for free schools?

What is the largest city in South Carolina? What of Charleston, as a market? How is it situated? How is it laid out? What of this city as to trade and commerce? What of Columbia? Georgetown? Camden? Beaufort?

Hartford? From you? Where is Savannah? Augusta? Darien? New Echota? Etowee? Sunbury? Petersburg? Lisbon? Athens?

Describe the Savannah river; Great Ogeechee; Altamaha; Satilla; Ocmulgee; Oconee; St Mary's; Flint; Chatahoochee; Tallapoosa; Coosa; Suwannee; Etowee. Describe Oconee canal. What islands on the coast of Georgia? What part of the state is mountainous? What tribes of Indians in Georgia? Where is Nicojack cave?

### 37. GEORGIA, CONTINUED.

The face of the country in Georgia resembles that of South Carolina. The low country is a sandy, barren plain; the upper country, toward the northwest corner of the state, is at first hilly, and then rises into mountains. There is a swamp partly in this state, and partly in Florida, called Okefenoco, which is 130 miles in circumference, and is inhabited by multitudes of snakes, alligators, frogs, and millions of musquitoes.

The northwestern part of the state is occupied by a remnant of the Cherokee tribe of Indians. Considerable efforts have been made to introduce civilisation among them, and with success. The Indians claim to be independent, and to possess a right to make their own laws; while the state of Georgia insists that if they remain on their lands, they must become subject to the laws of Georgia.

There is a curiosity, called Nicojack cave, in the northwestern corner of the state, which consists of a stream of water, walled in, and covered over with limestone rock. A gentleman who explored it, entered the cave in a canoe, and proceeded on the stream for the distance of several miles; he was prevented from going farther by a fall of water. The stream is, in some places, 6 feet deep and 60 feet wide! The following picture represents a view of the cave, and persons exploring it.



Cotton is the chief product of Georgia. That which grows on

---

37 Describe the face of the country in Georgia. What of Okefenoco swamp? What tribe of Indians in Georgia? What do they claim? Upon what does Georgia insist? Describe Nicojack cave. Describe the picture. What is the chief product of Georgia?

the islands and near the coast, called *sea island*, is preferred to the *upland* cotton, which is produced in the higher districts. Oranges and figs grow in this state. There are rich gold mines in the northern part, which are extensively worked.

Franklin college, at Athens, is a respectable institution. Provision has been made by the legislature to establish an academy in every county; and a considerable sum has been appropriated to the establishment of schools.

Savannah, the largest town in the state, is the centre of commerce for a great extent of country. It is regularly laid out, and is planted with trees, called the pride of China. Pop. about 8,000. Milledgeville, the seat of government, is pleasantly situated, and is a flourishing place. It contains several handsome public edifices of brick. Pop. 2,000.

Augusta is a thriving town, and receives immense quantities of cotton, tobacco, and other produce, from the interior, which is carried by way of the river to Savannah. Pop. 6,790. Darien is a flourishing commercial place, near the mouth of the Alatamaha.

### 38. STATE OF ALABAMA.

*Map of the United States, and Map of the Southern States. Boundaries? Let the pupil tell the names and boundaries of the counties. In what direction from New England? New Jersey? Delaware? From you? What is the capital? Where is Tuscaloosa? Direction from Savannah? Washington? Charleston? Hartford? Boston? From you? Where is Mobile? Huntsville? St. Stephen's? Cahawba? Florida? Describe the Chatahoochee river; Tennessee; Mobile; Alabama; Coosa; Tallapoosa; Cahawba; Black Warrior; Elk; Connecuh; Perdido; Tombecbe. What tribes of Indians in Alabama?*

### 39. ALABAMA, CONTINUED.

This state is divided into 33 counties. The face of the country in Alabama is low and level along the coast; in the middle, it is hilly; and in the north, it is mountainous. The soil is generally fertile; it is particularly so along the banks of the rivers. The low lands are well suited to the cultivation of rice. Cotton is the chief article of production; rice, maize and wheat, are also successfully cultivated. The sugar-cane has recently become one of the agricultural productions of the state. Gold is found in the northeastern part.

This state has recently been settled, but is rapidly increasing in population. Two townships of land have been granted by congress for the support of a college; a section of each township is devoted to the support of schools; and one twentieth part of the money received from the sale of public lands in the state is appropriated to the making of roads and canals.

---

What two kinds of cotton in Georgia? What kind is best? What of fruit? Gold mines?

What college in Georgia? What provision for education in Georgia? What is the largest town in Georgia? Describe Savannah. What of Milledgeville? Augusta? Darien?

39. How is this state divided? What of the face of the country in Alabama? To what product are the low lands well suited? What is the staple product of this state? What are the other productions? What of gold?

What of the settlement of this state? What appropriation has been made for the settlement of a college? What, for common schools? What, for roads and canals



The Cherokee Indians are still in possession of a large tract of country, in the northeastern part of this state, contiguous to their lands in Georgia. A remnant of the Creek tribe inhabits the eastern border. The territory of the Choctaw Indians includes a small tract of country on the western border of the state. The following picture represents some of these Indians.



Mobile, the largest town, is a place of considerable trade, but the harbor is not easily approached by large vessels. Pop. 3,200. Huntsville is pleasantly situated in the midst of a very fertile country.

Tuscaloosa, the capital, situated on the Black Warrior river, is a pleasant and handsome town. It is laid out on a regular plan, and has a population of 1,600 inhabitants.

#### 40. STATE OF MISSISSIPPI.

*Map of the United States, and Map of the Southern States. Boundaries? Let the pupil tell the names and boundaries of the counties? Direction from Georgia? From New England? North Carolina? Maryland? New Jersey? What is the capital? Where is Jackson? Direction from Washington? Pittsburg. Savannah? Trenton? Annapolis? From you? Where is Natches? Washington, in Mississippi? Shieldsboro'? Monticello? Elliot? Fort Adams? Bruinsburg? Describe the Yazoo river; Yalo Busha; Big Black; Pearl, Pascagoula; Mississippi; Leaf; Bayou Pier; Homochitto; Chickasawhag; Tombecbe. What tribes of Indians in this state?*

#### 41. MISSISSIPPI, CONTINUED.

The northern part of the state is occupied by the Chickasaw Indians; the middle and largest portion, by the Choctaws; and the southern part, by the whites. The latter part is divided into counties. The face of the country in Mississippi is level, for about 100 miles from the sea-coast. The rest of the state is pleasantly

What of the Cherokees? Choctaws? Describe the picture. What of Mobile? Huntsville? Tuscaloosa?

41. By whom is the northern part of the state of Mississippi occupied? The middle part? The southern part? How is the southern part divided? Describe the face of the country

diversified with moderate hills and valleys. Cotton is the chief production; though the state is well adapted to tobacco, indigo and grain. The following picture represents the manner of cultivating cotton; wild horses are often used in ploughing.



Two colleges are incorporated in this state; one at Washington, and another at Shieldsboro'. The same appropriation has been made for roads and canals in this state as in Alabama.

Natchez, the largest town in the state, is situated on the Mississippi, and occupies a bluff, which is elevated 150 feet above the river. The adjacent country is populous and well cultivated, and produces large crops of cotton. Natchez is the centre of trade for the western towns of the state. Pop. 2,800. Jackson, the seat of government, is a new town on Pearl river. Elliot, on the Yalo Busha, is a missionary station among the Choctaws.

#### 42. STATE OF LOUISIANA.

*Map of the United States, and Map of the Southern States.* Which is the most southern of the United States? How is Louisiana bounded? Let the pupil tell the boundaries and names of the counties. In what direction is it from Virginia? Pennsylvania? Delaware? Massachusetts? Vermont?

What is the capital? Where is New Orleans? Direction from Washington? Trenton? Philadelphia? Charleston? Savannah? Boston? From you? Where is Natchitoches? Baton Rouge? Madisonville? Franklin? Alexandria? Describe the Mississippi river; Red river; Washitta; Sabine; Bayo La Pourche; Bayo La Atchafalaya; Iberville; Pearl; Amite; Mermentau; Teche; Vermillion; Calcasieu. What lakes in Louisiana? Tell the direction of each from New Orleans? What bays in Louisiana?

#### 43. LOUISIANA, CONTINUED.

The face of the country, along the southern border of this state,

---

What is the chief production? To what other products is the soil adapted? Describe the picture.

What of colleges in Mississippi? What appropriation for roads and canals? What of Natches? Jackson? Elliot?

43. What of the face of the country along the southern part of Louisiana?

is level, and consists of marshes and low prairie land, intersected by numerous bays and rivers. Around the mouth of the Mississippi, it is a continued swamp, destitute of trees, and covered with reeds. The northwest part is moderately hilly. The cultivated lands lie along the banks of the rivers, and are exceedingly fertile. Cotton, rice and sugar, are the chief productions. The river Mississippi occasionally overflows its banks, and inundates the country to a considerable extent. The following picture represents one of these scenes.



There is a Catholic college in New Orleans, and several academies are established in the state.

New Orleans, the capital, and largest town in the state, occupies an island, formed by the Mississippi on one side, and by the Iberville river, and lakes Mauripas and Pontchartrain, on the other. It is 100 miles from the mouth of the Mississippi. Its advantages for commerce are, perhaps, unrivalled. The Mississippi, one of the most magnificent of rivers, stretches its branches over the most fertile valley on the face of the earth. The waters, which are gathered from the surface of this vast basin, waft the productions of various fruitful and favored climes to this market.

As the population of these regions increases, this city must also increase, and it is easy to predict, that, notwithstanding its unhealthiness, it is destined to become, at a future day, one of the first commercial places in the world. Pop. 46,300.

Natchitoches, on the Red river, is the largest town west of the

---

By what is the coast intersected? What of the country about the mouths of the Mississippi? What of the northwestern part of Louisiana? What of the land along the borders of the rivers in Louisiana? What of the inundations of the Mississippi? Describe the picture.

What college in Louisiana? What of academies in this state? On what is New Orleans situated? How is the island, on which New Orleans is built, formed? What of the advantages of New Orleans for trade? Why are the advantages of New Orleans for trade so great?

What may we predict of the future state of New Orleans? What of Natchitoches?

Mississippi. Alexandria, Baton Rouge, and St. Francisville, are the other considerable towns.

#### 44. THE SOUTHERN STATES.

What eight states are called the Southern States? What eleven principal rivers in the Southern States? What of the Potomac? James? Roanoke? Pedee? Santee? Savannah? Altamaha? Appalachicola? Alabama? Tombigbee? Mississippi? In what range of mountains do all these rivers rise, except the Tombigbee and Mississippi? Tell the capitals of the eight Southern States, with the direction of each from Washington? What district, not a state, within the boundaries of the Southern States?

#### 45. SOUTHERN STATES, CONTINUED.

The tract of country in the Southern States bordering on the Atlantic, is a low, sandy plain, from 50 to 100 miles in width, and, in general, is covered with pine forests. Beyond this, toward the Alleghanies, the country becomes elevated and hilly, and then mountainous. Those portions of Alabama, Mississippi, and Louisiana, which border on the gulf of Mexico, are low and level. In the interior, they are diversified, and in parts mountainous. The low countries, in all the Southern States, are barren, except on the borders of rivers, where the soil is very fertile. Much of the interior, or upland country, is also fertile.

The climate of the Southern States varies considerably in the different parts. In Maryland, and the northern parts of Virginia, snow is common in winter, but not sufficient for sleighing. The streams and rivers are sometimes frozen over, but navigation is interrupted for a short time only. In summer here, the heat is not extreme. In the upland country, generally, throughout the Southern States, the climate is mild in winter, and cool and healthful in summer. In the low countries, south of Virginia, it is oppressively hot in summer, and unhealthy, particularly to strangers. As far south as Savannah, a fall of snow is exceedingly rare, and very thin ice upon the rivers is only produced by the severest winters. Oranges and figs grow in abundance here.

Wheat, tobacco, and Indian corn, are the staple products of the northern; cotton, rice, and sugar, of the southern parts of these states. In the low countries of the Carolinas, pitch-pine grows in great perfection, and tar, pitch, and turpentine, are the staple products of these districts.

The commerce of the Southern States is not extensive; the amount of shipping owned by them is very small. Their tobacco, cotton, and other productions, are for the most part exported in northern vessels. The manufactures of the Southern States amount to almost nothing. Agriculture is nearly the sole occupation.

---

Alexandria? Baton Rouge? St. Francisville?

45. Describe the face of the country in the Southern States that border on the Atlantic, in those that border on the gulf of Mexico. The soil in the low country; in the upland country. What of climate in Maryland and Virginia? in the upland country of the Southern States? in the low countries? at Savannah? What fruit is produced at Savannah?

What of the products of the Southern States? Commerce? Manufactures? Agriculture?

The Southern States are divided into counties, but are not subdivided into townships like the Northern States. More than one-third of the whole population consists of Negro slaves. These slaves perform the greatest part of the labor in the low countries, and are owned by white masters. They are bought, sold, and transferred from one proprietor to another, in the same manner as other property. Slaves are often sold at public auction; and in the southern cities, large numbers of negro men, women, and children, may be seen in the streets publicly exposed for sale. Slavery is authorized by law in all the Southern States, but not in the Middle, Eastern, and some of the Western States. One of the most common distinctions between the several states, in our country, is that of the slave-holding, and non-slave-holding states.



The preceding cut represents some of the characteristics of the Southern States. The man on horseback with the hounds, shows that hunting is one of their diversions; the negroes tilling the ground, show that they are slave-holding states; and in the background, is represented a flat country.

The tobacco, cotton, rice, and sugar lands, of the Southern States, are generally held by planters, many of whom are wealthy, and possess large tracts, usually containing several hundred acres, called plantations. These are cultivated by their slaves. Their habits of authority are perhaps too visible in the manners of the southern planters, but they possess a high sense of honor, great hospitality, and a manly independence of thought and conduct. There is great unison of feeling between the people of the Southern States, on most public questions, and the case is rare in which they do not act together.

---

How are the Southern States divided? What portion of the population are slaves? What of these slaves? What may be seen in the southern cities? Where is slavery authorized by law? Where not authorized? What common distinction between the states? Describe the picture. What of the sugar, rice, and cotton lands? What of the planters? Their character? Are the southern people often divided among themselves?

The first settlement in the United States was made in Virginia, in 1607, 13 years before the arrival of the pilgrims at Plymouth. The colony, consisting of a small band of English people, established themselves at Jamestown, on James river. Accessions continued to arrive from England, and the settlement soon became powerful. The character of the settlers was very different from that of the Puritans. The latter were a set of stern, grave men, who fled from persecution to enjoy a free worship in the wilderness. The former consisted, for the most part, of adventurers belonging to the higher classes in England, who came to America to improve their fortunes.

Maryland was settled by English Catholics in 1634. North Carolina was settled by the English in 1663; and South Carolina seven years afterwards. Georgia was not settled till 1733, when an English colony established themselves at Savannah. Alabama was first settled about 1783, by the French. It has since been one of the territories of the United States, and in 1819 it became one of the United States. As early as 1716, Mississippi was settled by the French. It became a state in 1817. Louisiana began to be settled by the French in 1699. It is part of a vast territory purchased of France by the United States in 1803. It became a state in 1811.

#### 46. STATE OF TENNESSEE.

*Map of the United States, and Map of the Southern States.* Boundaries? In what direction from New England? South Carolina? Georgia? Massachusetts? New Hampshire? Tell the names and boundaries of the counties. What is the capital of Tennessee? Where is Nashville? Direction from Washington? New York? Charleston? New Orleans? Boston? Savannah? From you? Where is Murfreesborough? Knoxville? Memphis? Greenville? Brainerd? Describe the Cumberland river; Tennessee; Holston; Clinch; French-Broad; Hiwassee; Duck; Mississippi; Big Hatchee; Forked Deer; Obion; Wolf; Powells. What tribes of Indians in this state? What mountains in Tennessee?

#### 47. TENNESSEE, CONTINUED.

The Cumberland mountains divide this state into East and West Tennessee. There are 52 counties, 30 being in West Tennessee, and 22 in East Tennessee. The latter portion of the state is partly hilly, and partly mountainous, presenting grand and picturesque scenery; the western part is level. The valleys in East Tennessee, and considerable portions of West Tennessee, are very fertile. The climate of this state is mild, healthy, and agreeable. Slavery is here authorized by law.

The Chickasaw tribe of Indians occupy the western part of this state, between the rivers Mississippi and Tennessee. The Cherokees inhabit a large tract, near the southeast part, on both sides of the Hiwassee. These tribes are said to have made considerable

---

What of the settlement of Virginia? Maryland? North Carolina? South Carolina? Georgia? What of Alabama? Mississippi? Louisiana?

47. What mountains divide the state into East and West Tennessee? How many counties in this state? How many in East Tennessee? West Tennessee? The face of the country in East Tennessee? In West Tennessee? What of the climate in Tennessee? What of slavery? What of the Chickasaw Indians? Of the Cherokees? What is said of these tribes as to civil

advances in civilisation. They own sheep, cows, mills, &c. There is a missionary station at Brainerd. The following picture exhibits a missionary preaching to the Indians.



Greenville College is the leading seminary in the state. Several other colleges have been incorporated.

Nashville, situated on the Cumberland river, surrounded by a populous and fruitful country, is the largest town in the state. It is also the seat of government, and has a seminary of high reputation called the Nashville University. It supports an extensive steam-boat navigation. Pop. 5,600. Knoxville, the most considerable place in East Tennessee, is pleasantly situated on the Holston. Pop. 2,000. Murfreesborough is a flourishing town, and, until 1826, was the seat of government. Memphis is a growing place.

#### 48. STATE OF KENTUCKY.

*Map of the United States, and Map of the Western States. Boundaries? Tell the names and boundaries of the counties. What is the capital of Kentucky? Where is Frankfort? In which direction from Washington? Boston? New York? Tuscaloosa? Savannah? Philadelphia? New Orleans? From you? Where is Lexington? Louisville? Russellville? Maysville? Washington? Bardstown? Paris? Danville? Newport? Winchester? Hopkinsville? Describe the Ohio; Mississippi; Tennessee; Cumberland; Kentucky; Green; Licking; Sandy. What canal in Kentucky?*

#### 49. KENTUCKY, CONTINUED.

This state is divided into 75 counties. The face of the country, in the eastern part, is mountainous; along the Ohio, it is hilly; the rest of the state is level or undulating. The middle portions of the state are exceedingly fertile. The climate is mild and healthy. There are salt springs in this state, from which a supply of salt is

*isation? What missionary station in Tennessee? Describe the picture. What of colleges? What of Nashville? Knoxville? Murfreesborough? Memphis?*

*49. How many counties in Kentucky? What of the face of the country? What springs in this state?*



manufactured, not only for Kentucky, but for part of Ohio and Tennessee. Tobacco, wheat, and Indian corn, are the principal products of the soil. Slavery is authorized in this state.

In Warren county is Mammoth cave. It has been explored to the distance of 16 miles, and contains many passages and apartments; one of the latter comprises a surface of 8 acres, without a single pillar to support the arch, which is about 100 feet in height. In some parts of the cave are the most brilliant specimens of spar, 60 feet in length. The following engraving represents an apartment in this cave.



Transylvania University is a flourishing establishment, to which a law and a medical school are attached. Beside this, there are the following, among other seminaries. Georgetown college, Danville college, St. Joseph's college, and Cumberland college.

Frankfort, the seat of government, is situated on Kentucky river. Pop. 1,700. Lexington, the second town in the state, is the most considerable manufacturing place in Kentucky. A rail-road is now constructing from this town to Louisville. The surrounding country is celebrated for its fertility and beauty. Pop. 6,100, Louisville, situated at the rapids of the Ohio, is the largest town in the state, and has an extensive trade. Pop. 10,400.

## 50. STATE OF OHIO.

*Map of the United States, and Map of the Western States. Let the pupil tell the name of each county and county town. Boundaries? Direction from Connecticut? South Carolina? Vermont? New Jersey? Delaware? Georgia? Louisiana? Tennessee? What is the capital? Where is Cincinnati? In what direction from Washington? New York? New Orleans? Charleston? Savannah? Tuscaloosa? Milledgeville? From you? Where is Chillicothe? Columbus? Marietta? Zanesville? Steubenville? Athens? Cleveland? Ashtabula? Painesville? Kenyon College? Maumee? Describe the Ohio; Muskingum; Hockhocking; Sciota; Great Miami; Little Miami; Sandusky; Cayahoga; Maumee. Describe the Ohio canal. Miami canal.*

*What states do these springs supply with salt? What are the productions? What of slavery? Describe Mammoth cave. Describe the picture. What of Transylvania University? Other Seminaries? What of Frankfort? What of Lexington? Louisville?*



## 51. OHIO, CONTINUED.

Ohio is divided into 72 counties. The southern part of the state is hilly; the rest is generally level. The soil is fertile. The staple production is wheat. The principal exports are flour, pork and tobacco, which chiefly pass down the Ohio and Mississippi rivers to New Orleans, and thence are shipped to the Atlantic states, or to foreign ports. A part of the produce reaches New York by way of lake Erie, and the Erie canal. The country is supplied with foreign goods by way of the Erie canal; by transportation across the country from Baltimore and Philadelphia, and by the steam-boats which take them up the Mississippi from New Orleans. The intercourse by means of steam-boats with New Orleans, is great. The quantities of produce sent to that port are immense.

The Ohio state canal, which is 307 miles in length, extends from the mouth of the Scioto to Cleveland, and connects the waters of lake Erie and the Ohio river. It will have the effect to direct a great deal of trade to New York, by way of the Erie Canal. The Miami canal extends from Cincinnati to Dayton 68 miles, and it is proposed to continue it to Maumee.

The Ohio University at Athens, Cincinnati College at Cincinnati, and Kenyon College in Knox county, are the principal seminaries.

Columbus, the seat of government, laid out in 1812, is situated on the Scioto, in a central part of the state. Pop. 2,500. Cincinnati, the largest town in the Western States, is pleasantly situated on the Ohio river. It is regularly laid out, and handsomely built of brick. It has an extensive trade and considerable manufactures,



and may be regarded as one of the most flourishing cities in the United States. Pop. 28,000.

51. How many counties in Ohio? What of the face of the country? The soil? Staple productions? Principal exports? How does the produce of this state find a market? How are the people supplied with foreign goods? Describe the picture. What canal in this state? Describe the Ohio state canal. What colleges in Ohio? What of Columbus?

Chillicothe is a large town, and has extensive trade and manufactures. Steubenville and Zanesville have also considerable manufactures. Dayton is a very pleasant town, with extensive manufactures.

## 52. STATE OF INDIANA.

*Map of the United States, and Map of the Western States.* Boundaries? Direction from Massachusetts? Connecticut? Alabama? Pennsylvania? South Carolina? Kentucky? Louisiana? Georgia? *Tell the names and boundaries of the counties.* What is the capital? Where is Indianapolis? Direction from Washington? New York? Boston? Savannah? New Orleans? Milledgeville? Cincinnati? From you? Where is Vincennes? Madison? Vevay? Corydon? New Harmony? Jeffersonville? What of the Ohio? Wabash? White river? Blue river? White water? Tippecanoe? Illinois? St. Joseph's? What canal is proposed in Indiana?

## 53. INDIANA, CONTINUED.

The northern portion of this state is in possession of the Indians. The part occupied by the whites is divided into 52 counties. The face of the country near the Ohio is hilly. Toward the north it is level, and abounds in prairies, which are vast plains destitute of trees, and covered with coarse grass. The soil is generally fertile, and repays cultivation with abundant crops of grain. The grape-vine is successfully cultivated by Swiss settlers near Vevay. The picture represents these people cultivating their vineyards.



Indianapolis, situated near the centre of the state, is the seat of government. Vincennes is one of the oldest towns, and has a considerable trade. Pop. 1,800. Madison is a flourishing place. Vevay, settled by Swiss, has vineyards, which annually yield about 8000 gallons of wine.

What of Chillicothe? Steubenville? Zanesville?

53. What people occupy the northern part of Indiana? By whom is the southern part occupied? Into how many counties is the southern part divided? Face of the country? Soil? Productions? Describe the picture. What of Indianapolis? Vincennes? Madison? Vevay?

## 54. STATE OF ILLINOIS.

*Map of the United States, and Map of the Western States.* Boundaries? Direction from Pennsylvania? Mississippi? South Carolina? Massachusetts? Rhode Island? Tennessee? Louisiana? Tell the names and boundaries of the counties. What is the capital? Where is Vandalia? Direction from Washington? New York? Charleston? New Orleans? Lexington? Cincinnati? From you? Where is Kaskaskia? Cahokia? Shawneetown? Brownsville? Albion? What of the Mississippi? Ohio? Great Wabash? Illinois? Kaskaskia? Alton? Rock Spring? St. Clair? Fox? Chicago? Callemack? What canal is proposed in Illinois? Little Wabash? Sangamon? Rock river?

## 55. ILLINOIS, CONTINUED.

The northern part of this state is occupied by Indians; the southern part, inhabited by whites, is divided into counties. The surface of the country is flat, abounding in rich prairies. The soil is generally fertile, particularly along the margins of the rivers, producing luxuriant crops of Indian corn, which is the staple production.

About 12 miles from Shawneetown, there are salt springs, where the government of the United States have manufactories, producing from two to three hundred thousand bushels of salt annually. Coal is found in great abundance; lead and iron are also found. On the banks of the Ohio and Illinois, are lofty, picturesque cliffs, in which there are caverns, one of which was formerly the rendezvous of a band of robbers. The picture presents a view of this spot.



A portion of land, in every town in this state, is devoted to the support of schools, and the legislature has made provision for the establishment of a college.

Vandalia, the seat of government, is a flourishing town, situated on the Kaskaskia. Kaskaskia, Alton, Edwardsville, Shawneetown, Brownsville, and Albion, are the other considerable places.

55. By whom is the northern part of Illinois occupied? By whom the southern part? What of the face of the country in Illinois? The soil? Staple production? What salt springs in Illinois? What minerals? What cliffs? Describe the picture. What provision for schools? For a college? What of Vandalia? What are the principal towns?

## 56. STATE OF MISSOURI.

*Map of the United States, and Map of the Western States. Boundaries? Tell the names and boundaries of the counties. Direction from Louisiana? Virginia? Massachusetts? Vermont? Delaware? Pennsylvania? Indiana? Louisiana? Mississippi? What is the capital? Where is Jefferson? Direction from Washington? Trenton? Boston? Philadelphia? Savannah? New Orleans? Natchez? Lexington? Indianapolis? From you? Where is St. Charles? Franklin? St. Genevieve? Herculaneum? Potosi? St. Michael? What of the Mississippi? Missouri? Gasconade? Salt? Currant? Des Momes? Osage? Chariton? Grande? Salt? Merrimack? St. Francis? What mountains in Missouri?*

## 57. MISSOURI, CONTINUED.

This state is divided into 23 counties. The face of the country is diversified with hills, plains and prairies. Along the rivers there are extensive fertile tracts; these, however, are low, and subject to inundation. At a distance from the rivers, the soil is barren. The productions are hemp, flax and Indian corn. Slavery is authorized in this state.

The lead mines of Missouri are situated near the river Merrimack, in the neighborhood of Potosi, 40 miles west of the Mississippi. They are the richest in the world, and occupy a district of 300 square miles. There are 45 mines, which employ more than 1,000 persons, and produce annually from 15 to 20 million pounds of lead. The engraving exhibits a view among these mines.



Provisions for education, similar to those in Illinois, have been made in this state.

Jefferson, the seat of government, is on the Missouri, and was laid out in 1822. St. Louis, the largest town in the state, is built near the junction of the three great rivers, Mississippi, Missouri and Illinois. It is very favorably situated for trade, and is a flourishing town.

57. How many counties in Missouri? What of the face of the country? The soil? Productions? What of slavery? Where are the lead mines of Missouri? What is the annual amount of lead produced from these mines? Describe the picture. What provisions for education in this state? What of Jefferson? St. Louis?

A good many hunting and trapping parties are fitted out at this place, who traverse the territories of Missouri and Oregon in quest of the skins of wild animals. Trading parties also proceed from St. Louis, and visit the western tribes of Indians for the purpose of obtaining peltry. It is now common for the hunters and traders to cross the Rocky mountains, and proceed to the borders of the Pacific Ocean.

There is a considerable trade carried on from St. Louis and other towns in the Western States with Santa Fe in the northwestern part of Mexico. The traders form caravans of several hundred persons and many horses and wagons. They carry various articles of merchandise, and being frequently attacked by the Indians, defend themselves with their rifles. Pop. of St. Louis, 5900.

Potosi and St. Michael's are the chief towns in the mining district.

## 58. THE WESTERN STATES.

*Map of the United States.* Which are the six Western States? What are the four principal rivers in these states? Describe the Ohio; Tennessee; Cumberland; Illinois. What are the capitals of the six Western States, with the direction of each from Washington?

## 59. WESTERN STATES, CONTINUED.

A considerable portion of the country in the Western States, west of the Ohio and Mississippi, consists of prairies, some of them containing but few acres, others spreading out to a vast extent. The face of the country in Tennessee and Kentucky is much diversified. The soil in the Western States is generally productive.

The climate is pleasant and healthful, being less subject to changes than in the same parallels of latitude between the Alleghany mountains and the Atlantic. At St. Louis, the Mississippi is sometimes frozen over, so that persons cross it on the ice. The steam-boats are stopped on this river, from two to three months in the year, during winter.

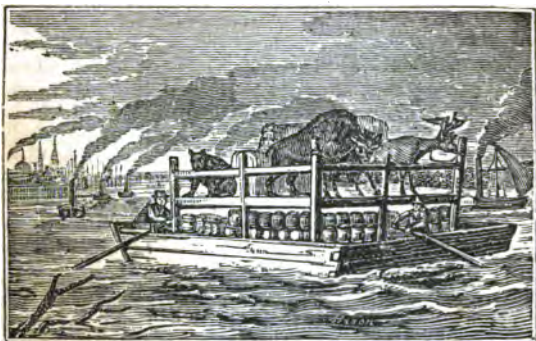
The productions of this region are various and abundant. Cotton and tobacco are produced in the southern portions. Wheat, Indian corn, rice, hemp, oats and barley, are extensively cultivated in other parts. Cattle are raised in great numbers, and pork is a leading article of attention in some districts. The swine are easily raised in the woods and prairies.

There is considerable intercourse between these states and New York, Philadelphia and Baltimore. A part of the produce reaches New York by way of the Ohio and Erie canals. By the same route foreign goods are returned. Large amounts of foreign goods

What of the hunting and trapping parties? What of the Santa Fe traders? Potosi? St. Michael's?

59. Face of the country in the Western States? Soil? Climate? What of the Mississippi at St. Louis? Steam-boats in the Mississippi during winter? Productions? Describe the intercourse between these states and New York, Philadelphia and Baltimore.

are also transported across the country from New York, Philadelphia, and Baltimore, to the Ohio, and thence distributed to their various destinations over the country. But the greater part of the trade is carried on by way of New Orleans. The quantities of



produce, of various kinds, sent down the Mississippi, is prodigious. The preceding picture represents a flat boat, or what is called an *ark*, loaded with live stock and produce, with several steam-boats, from these states, arriving at New Orleans. Slavery is authorized by law in all these states, except in Indiana, Illinois and Ohio.

A great part of the country has been recently settled, but the cheapness of land, the fertility of the soil, and the general character of the climate, are causing a tide of emigration to flow in, which is filling up the country with population, with almost unexampled rapidity.

Notwithstanding the great inducement to agriculture, the people of the Western States are not neglecting manufactures. There are flourishing establishments at Lexington, Maysville, Steubenville and Cincinnati. The woollen cloths of the latter place are equal to any manufactured in the United States.

Tennessee was originally a part of North Carolina; it was settled in 1765, and became a state in 1796. Kentucky belonged originally to Virginia; it was settled in 1775, by the celebrated Col. Boone, and in 1792 it became a state. Ohio was first settled in 1788; it became a state in 1805. Indiana became a state in 1816. Illinois was settled by the French many years since. It became a state in 1818. Missouri began to be settled about 1763, and became a state in 1819.

---

How is the greater part of the trade carried on? Describe the picture. What of slavery? What of the settlements of the Western States? Of emigration to them? Manufactures? What of Tennessee? Kentucky? Ohio? Indiana? Illinois? Missouri?

## MICHIGAN TERRITORY.

*Map of the United States, and Map of the Western States. Boundaries? Direction from Georgia? Virginia? New York? Vermont? New Hampshire? Massachusetts? Connecticut? Louisiana? Missouri? What is the capital? Where is Detroit? Direction from Washington? Boston? Hartford? New Orleans? Tuscaloosa? Trenton? From you? Where is Brownstown? Carey? What of the straits, or river Michillimackinac? St. Clair? Detroit? Saginaw? Grand river? St. Joseph? Huron? Raisin?*

## 61. MICHIGAN TERRITORY, CONTINUED.

A considerable part of this territory is occupied by various tribes of Indians. The country is generally level, or moderately uneven. The soil is very fertile, except on the border of lake Michigan, where it is sandy and barren. The emigration to this territory is now great, and the country is rapidly filling up with inhabitants.

Detroit, the chief town, is beautifully situated on Detroit river, and has considerable share in the fur trade, carried on by different companies, with the Indians and others, in the north-western regions



of North America. Several of the towns are very thriving. The preceding picture represents the natives disposing of their furs to the traders.

## 62. NORTH-WEST TERRITORY.

*Map of the United States: Boundaries? Direction from Maine? Mississippi? Maryland? Tennessee? New England? Louisiana? What of the Mississippi river? Wisconsin? Fox? Chippeway? Coppermine? Rocky? Montreal? St. Louis? St. Croix?*

## 63. NORTH-WEST TERRITORY, CONTINUED.

This territory is chiefly inhabited by Indians, and has been but little explored. Of the few settlements that have been made by

61. What of the Indians in Michigan Territory? Face of the country? Soil? What of Detroit? Describe the picture.

63. By whom is the Northwest Territory chiefly inhabited? What settlements in this territory?



Whites, those at the head of Green bay, and Prairie du Chien, are the principal.

The face of the country bordering on lake Superior is rough and mountainous; but the country is for the most part moderately uneven, or consists of prairies. This territory abounds in copper, lead, iron, and other metals.

#### 64. ARKANSAS TERRITORY.

*Map of the United States, and Map of the Southern States.* Boundaries? Direction from New York? North Carolina? Louisiana? New England? What is the capital? Where is Little Rock? Direction from Washington? Boston? Philadelphia? Savannah? New Orleans? From you? Where is Dwight? Arkansas? Arkopolis? What of the Arkansas? Mississippi? Red river? White? Saline? St. Francis? Washita? What mountains in this territory? In what direction do the ranges run? What part of the territory do they occupy?

#### 65. ARKANSAS TERRITORY, CONTINUED.

Nearly the whole of this country is occupied by the Indians. For the space of about 150 miles west of the Mississippi, the land is level: it then becomes rocky and broken, and afterwards mountainous. Beyond the Ozark mountains, the land is elevated, and a considerable portion of it sandy and barren. There are extensive prairies, some of them abounding in wild horses, and vast herds of bisons. The hunting grounds of the Indians are filled with deer, elk, bears, wolves, cougars, and other wild animals. The engraving represents the Indians killing buffaloes.



The land on the rivers is generally fertile, and adapted to the growth of cotton. The borders of the White river afford some of the best land in the United States.

What of the face of the country? What of minerals?

65. By whom is the principal part of Arkansas territory inhabited? What of the face of the country east of the Ozark mountains? West of the Ozark mountains? What animals abound in this territory? Describe the picture. What of the soil?



The hot springs in this territory, 150 miles northwest of the Arkansas, are about 70 in number, and are found useful in various diseases. At some seasons, they are sufficiently heated to boil an egg in a few minutes. A considerable distance up the Arkansas river, there is a prairie of several miles in extent, covered with white salt to the depth of five or six inches. There are also several salt springs. Little Rock is the seat of government. Arkopolis is pleasantly situated on the Arkansas, and there are several other thriving towns. Dwight is a missionary station among the Cherokees.

## 66. MISSOURI TERRITORY.

*Map of the United States. Boundaries? Direction from New England? Pennsylvania? Georgia? Ohio? New Jersey? Virginia? What of the Missouri river? Yellow Stone? Platte? Kansas? What range of mountains in the western border of this territory?*

## 67. MISSOURI TERRITORY, CONTINUED.

This immense tract of land is chiefly inhabited by Indians; the United States having no other settlements than military posts at St. Peter's river and Council Bluffs. Occasional bands of white hunters and trappers range this country for furs. Some of them extend their expeditions to the foot of the Rocky mountains, and even to the shores of the Pacific, and obtain vast numbers of bison's skins, which are sold under the name of buffalo robes. They also procure great quantities of furs. These parties are sometimes attacked and cut off by the Indians.

The eastern parts of this immense territory are either level, or moderately hilly. The central and western parts are elevated and mountainous. The latter portion of the country is destitute of timber and vegetation, and, excepting the borders of rivers, presents an immense barren wilderness. The eastern and southeastern portions are fertile, and the land lying along the rivers is generally of a good quality.

The Rocky mountains, which form the western boundary of this territory, are the loftiest range of mountains within the limits of the United States. They rise suddenly from the plains to the prodigious elevation of 11,000 to 12,000 feet, their peaks being covered with perpetual snow. The grisly bear, which is by far the most formidable wild animal in the United States, is an inhabitant of these mountains. The herds of buffaloes that are seen in this territory sometimes amount to 10,000 each. When the herd is moving, the ground trembles for a considerable distance, and the grumbling and bellowing of the multitude is heard for miles.

---

What of the hot springs in Arkansas Territory? Salt springs? Salt prairie? What of Little Rock? Arkopolis? Dwight?

67. How is this territory chiefly inhabited? What military stations have the United States in Missouri Territory? What of the hunters and trappers? What of the face of the country? The soil? Describe the Rocky mountains. What wild animal in the Rocky mountains? What of the herds of buffaloes?

The great falls of the Missouri present a spectacle of uncommon grandeur. They consist of a succession of cataracts, the whole descent being 350 feet. In one instance, the entire body of the river falls in a perpendicular sheet to the depth of 87 feet. The place where the Missouri passes from the mountains, called the Gates of the Rocky mountains, displays a stupendous work of nature. The river is compressed to the width of 450 feet, between perpendicular rocks, 1200 feet in height; for three miles, there is but one spot where a man can find footing, between the water and the mountainous precipices.

About 100 miles below the great falls on the Missouri, there are immense piles of rock, 300 feet in height, presenting the appearance of an artificial wall. They are nearly perpendicular, and the beholder can discern amid the various forms which they exhibit, the shapes of ruined castles and other edifices.

Near the foot of the Rocky mountains are lofty elevations, with nearly perpendicular sides, and level summits. One of these mounds, called Castle Rock, presents a striking resemblance to an edifice with arches, columns, and porticoes.

The picture exhibits this rock in the middle-ground; in the back-



ground are the Rocky mountains; in the foreground is a grisly bear on the point of being attacked by hunters.

## 68. OREGON TERRITORY.

*Map of the United States.* Boundaries? Direction from New England? Louisiana? Northwestern Territory? Alabama? Georgia? Where is Astoria? Direction from Washington? Boston? Pittsburg? Annapolis? Charleston? Savannah? New Orleans? From you? What of the Columbia river? Multnomah? Lewis's? Clark's?

---

Describe the great falls of the Missouri; the Gates of the Rocky mountains. What curiosity 100 miles below the great falls of the Missouri? What singular elevations near the Rocky mountains? Describe the picture.

## 69. OREGON TERRITORY, CONTINUED.

This vast region is yet in possession of the Indians, and is very imperfectly known. It is represented as possessing a milder climate than similar latitudes on the Atlantic. The banks of the Columbia river are said to be fertile, covered with heavy forests, and with fir-trees sometimes growing to the height of 200 feet. Toward the Rocky mountains, the country is described as elevated, mountainous and barren.

There is an American settlement on the Columbia river, 18 miles from its mouth, called Astoria, established to promote the fur trade. The engraving exhibits some of the inhabitants looking with anxie-



ty at a vessel upon the waters of the Pacific ocean, and endeavoring to hail her, in the hopes of obtaining news from their friends living in the Atlantic States. It is now common for the hunters and traders to cross the Rocky mountains to this territory.

## 70. FLORIDA.

*Map of the United States, and Map of the Southern States.* Boundaries? Direction from Ohio? New England? Massachusetts? Missouri? New Jersey? Alabama? What is the capital? Where is Tallahassee? Direction from Washington? New York? Boston? Savannah? Jackson? Astoria? Detroit? Little Rock? Where is Pensacola? St. Augustine? St. Mark's? What of St. John's river? Appalachicola? St. Mark's? Suwanee? Conecuh? Perdido? Escambia? St. Mary's? Ochlockonne? Where is Amelia I.? What canal is proposed in Florida?

## 71. FLORIDA, CONTINUED

Florida resembles the low country of the Southern States; the

69. What people are yet in possession of Oregon Territory? What of the climate of Oregon Territory? What of the country along the banks of the Columbia river? Face of the country in the eastern parts? What American settlement in Oregon Territory? Describe the picture.

71. What does the country of Florida resemble?

surface being moderately uneven and barren, except along the banks of rivers and lakes, where it is very fertile. But a small portion of the country is under cultivation. It is adapted to cotton, sugar, rice, indigo, oranges, olives and figs. It is remarkable for the richness and beauty of its flowering shrubs, and the height and grandeur of its forest trees. The live oak, which is of great value in ship-building, grows to a large size, and considerable quantities of it are obtained here for the navy of the United States. The picture represents a forest in Florida, and people cutting down the trees for timber.



The Seminole Indians possessed the greater part of the country until the late war with them, in which they were nearly exterminated. The remnant of the tribe still occupy some of the finest districts.

Tallahassee, the seat of government, is a new town. Pensacola is celebrated for its fine harbor. Pop. 4,000. St. Augustine is remarkable for being built of stone formed of a concretion of shells. Pop. 5,000.

## 72. THE SIX TERRITORIES.

*Map of the United States.* Which are the six territories belonging to the United States? Tell the boundaries of each. Tell the direction of the following places from Washington:—Tallahassee. Cape Sable. Little Rock. Council Bluff. Detroit. Prairie du Chien. Astoria. Describe the St. John's river in Florida; the Arkansas; St. Francis; Missouri; Yellow Stone; St. Clair; Ouiskonsin; Columbia.

## 73. TERRITORIES, CONTINUED.

The six territories are generally thinly settled, and are chiefly in

---

What of the face of the country? Of the soil? What is the state of the country as to cultivation? What is it adapted to produce? For what is it remarkable? What valuable timber does it produce? Describe the picture. What of the Seminole Indians? What does the remnant of the tribe possess? What of Tallahassee? Pensacola? St. Augustine?

73. How are the territories settled?

the occupation of various tribes of native Indians. There are immense regions which have never been explored. The white population is, however, increasing in most of them; civilisation is rapidly encroaching upon the wilderness, and before many years, the whole of these immense regions will be inhabited by civilized men.

It is probable that, ere long, roads will be cut across the Rocky mountains; that lines of stages will convey travellers from the shores of the Atlantic to the Pacific; that the borders of the latter ocean will be occupied by towns and villages; and that the immense valleys of the Missouri, the Arkansas, and the Columbia, now given up to the dominion of savages and wild beasts, will present all the busy and varied scenes of a crowded population. It is not incredible that persons now in being may witness the day, when every mail that arrives will bring letters and newspapers from towns and villages that are yet to spring up on the various branches of the Columbia, the Missouri, and the Arkansas. Should the population of the United States increase at the same ratio that it has done, in the year 1900, it will amount to 100,000,000. Ere this time arrives, it is probable, that what may now seem too fanciful, will be in fact realized.

The territories of the United States are under the care and direction of the general government. A governor is appointed by the president, who superintends the affairs of the territory over which he is placed. When the population of a territory amounts to 60,000, on the adoption of a republican form of government by the people, and their offering a petition to that effect to Congress, they will be admitted into the Union, and enjoy the same privileges as the other states. Missouri, Indiana, Illinois, Mississippi, Alabama, and other states, formerly territories, have in this way become states within a few years past.

## 74. UNITED STATES. GENERAL VIEW.

*Map of North America.* Tell the boundaries of the United States.

*Map of the United States.* Tell the boundaries of each of the six Eastern States, with the capital, and its direction from Washington; the same of the four Middle States; the same of the eight Southern; of the six Western; the names and boundaries of the six Territories.

What six principal rivers enter the Atlantic from the New England and Middle States? What is the general direction of these rivers? What eight principal rivers enter the Atlantic from the Southern States? What is the general direction of these eight rivers?

What three principal rivers enter the gulf of Mexico from the United States? What is the general direction of these three rivers? What five principal rivers join the Mississippi from the east? What is the general direction of these five rivers? What five principal rivers join the Mississippi from the west? What is the general direction of these five rivers?

What two great ranges of mountains in the United States?

---

What of white population? Civilisation? What will take place before many years? What is not incredible? If the population of the United States increase as it has done, what will it amount to in 1900? Under what direction are the territories of the United States? Who superintends the affairs of the territories? What is necessary for a territory to become a state, and a member of the Union? What have become states within a few years, that were formerly territories?

## 75. UNITED STATES, CONTINUED.

The United States occupy the middle region of North America, and are, from the extreme points, 1,700 miles in extent from north to south, and 3,000 miles from east to west. The number of square miles is about two millions, embracing one twenty-fifth part of all the land on the globe, and forming one of the most extensive territories under one government, in the world. A view of the extent and population of the individual states, and of the country generally, may be found in Table No. 1, in the Atlas.

So vast a region, of course, includes a great variety of surface, soil and climate. It abounds in rivers, and a larger portion of it is susceptible of cultivation, and of a quality to repay the labor bestowed upon it, than almost any other region of the same extent. But a small portion of its surface is occupied by mountains, which, from their height or ruggedness, forbid all attempts to render them productive of the means of subsistence to man. There are no great deserts, and few barrens; nothing like the vast sterile plains which exist in other parts of the globe.

The basins of the rivers are exceedingly productive: that of the Mississippi, including the Missouri, is undoubtedly the finest valley on the globe. It is abundantly watered by streams, which not only give fertility to their borders, but are ready to waft the gifts of the soil to the ocean, and bring back to the inhabitants the products of all other climes. Its soil returns an ample harvest for all that is planted in it; and its climate is favorable to almost every production of the earth that can sustain life, or increase its luxuries.

The United States, though lying within the temperate zone, embrace a great variety of climate. In the northern parts, the winters are long and severe. Snow often falls to the depth of two or three feet, and the cold is so piercing as to oblige the inhabitants to make very diligent provision against it. Spring here returns in April, and in summer the heat is great. In the southern parts of the United States, snow is seldom seen; ice is rarely formed in the rivers, and those fruits which shrink from a northern climate, and flourish only in warm regions, are scattered over the soil. In Georgia, the inhabitants are able to make a breakfast of figs, which grow before their windows, and may load their tables with oranges, lemons, and other exquisite fruits, that grow in their own gardens and groves; while in parts of Maine, New Hampshire and Vermont, even peaches will not flourish. Between these extremes, as

---

75. What part of North America is occupied by the United States? Extent of United States from north to south? From east to west? Number of square miles? What portion of all the land on the globe is this? *Here the pupil should answer the questions on Table No. 1.* What does so vast a region as the United States embrace? What does it abound in? What of the soil? Its surface? The basins of the rivers? What do you mean by the basin of a river? *Ans.* 'The whole country bordering on a river and its branches.' What of the valley of the Mississippi? Its rivers? Its soil? Its climate? The climate of the United States? Winter in the northern parts? Summer? Climate in the southern parts? What of fruits in Georgia? What of peaches?

in Virginia, Kentucky, Missouri and Illinois, there is a region adapted to the wine grape, which thrives best in places removed from both the torrid and frigid zones.

In regard to education, the United States may be considered as superior to most other countries in some respects, and inferior to many countries in other respects. Education is widely diffused here, and there are very few persons who have not instruction, or the means of instruction, in all the branches of a common English education; yet we have few men who make literature the business of their lives. In Europe, there are many authors, and a multitude of professors, in the various branches of literature, who spend their lives in the acquisition of knowledge. There are also universities containing many thousands of volumes, thus affording great facilities to such individuals in their pursuits.

Beside this, there are many collections in natural history, furnishing specimens of almost every animal, vegetable, and mineral, that is found on the globe. Yet while these facilities are furnished to those engaged in literature and science, the education of the common people is overlooked, or neglected, in many of these countries. The United States, therefore, are distinguished in respect to education, for the general diffusion of knowledge among the people, while they are destitute of a class of men well known in Europe under the title of *literati*. A list of colleges will be found in Table No. 2, in the Atlas.

Government is a system, by which the laws of a country are made and put in force. Most governments consist of three branches;—that which makes the laws, called the legislative, and that which sees to their execution, called the executive. The other branch, called the judiciary, consisting of the courts, has for its object the explanation of the law, in doubtful or disputed cases.

The various operations of making and executing the laws, render it necessary to employ many persons to perform these duties. A government in which the people, directly or indirectly, choose these persons to make and execute the laws, is called a democracy, or republic. It is called a free government, because the people are at liberty to give their votes for whom they please. It is also called a popular government, because all the power, in the hands of those engaged in the business of government, is derived from the people.

Now, each of the 24 states is a republic, for it has a government of its own: that is, it has a legislature to make laws for the people

What of the wine-grape? Education in the United States? What of its diffusion? Of what class of men are there few? What of authors and professors in Europe? Universities? Collections in natural history? Common education in European countries? How are the United States distinguished with respect to education? Of what are they destitute? Answer questions on Table No. 2.

What is government? What are the three branches of government? What is necessary in order to have various operations of government performed? What is a democracy, or republic? Why is a republic called a free government? A popular government? Why is each of the 24 states a republic?

of the particular state; an executive, at the head of which is a governor, to see that the laws are enforced; and a judiciary, to decide in disputed cases between its citizens; and these are directly or indirectly chosen by the people.

The United States are all united under a general government, called a Federal Republic; that is, a republic in which several separate republics are federated, or united, into one. The legislative power of the United States is vested in the hands of Congress, which consists of two branches, the senate and the house of representatives. The executive power is vested in the hands of a president, who, with various subordinate officers, administers the government, and they are therefore called the Administration. The great business of the general government is, to manage the affairs of the country with foreign powers, to provide for its defence against insurrection and invasion, and to attend to all the general affairs of the country, which may not happen to be the business of a particular state. The president, with a vice-president, is elected by electors chosen in the several states. He holds his office for four years, and resides at Washington in a building belonging to the government of the United States, called the president's house. He is assisted by four subordinate officers, called secretary of state, secretary of the treasury, secretary of war, and secretary of the navy; and these are called the cabinet.

Congress meets at Washington every winter, and transacts its business in the capitol. Two senators are sent from each state; consequently the senate consists of 48 members. Each state sends one member to the house of representatives for every 40,000 of its inhabitants; if it has five times 40,000, or 200,000 inhabitants, it sends five representatives. In the slave states, five slaves count as three white men; 66,666 slaves therefore enable their owners to elect one member of Congress. Senators are chosen for six years, and members of the house of representatives, for two years. These two bodies meet in separate apartments in the capitol, and their deliberations are always distinct.

The judiciary of the United States consists of seven judges. These judges hold courts separately in various parts of the Union, and every winter they are united in one court at Washington, called the Supreme Court, to hear and adjudge such questions as may come up before them. The business of the United States' courts

---

How are the individual states united? What is a federal republic? How is the legislative power in the United States vested? Of what does Congress consist? How is the executive power vested? What is the administration? What is the duty of the general government? How are the president and vice-president chosen? How long does the president hold his office? Where reside? By whom assisted? When and where do Congress meet? For what purpose do they meet? How many senators sent from each state? How many in all? How many inhabitants in the state enable the people to send one representative to Congress? How many slaves enable their holders to send one member to Congress? For how long are senators chosen? How long representatives? What of these two bodies, the senate and house of representatives? What of the judiciary? The Supreme Court? The duty of the United States'



is to decide questions which may arise under the laws made by Congress.

In most countries, some particular religion is established by law, and the people are required to pay for the support of it, and are also called upon to believe it. If they refuse to believe it, they suffer various inconveniences. But in the United States, no religion is established by law. The government does not meddle with religious matters. Every person is at liberty to choose his religion, and freely worship God according to the dictates of his conscience. The people are divided into various sects, an account of which will be found in the table of religious denominations in the Atlas, No. 3.

The New England States, as has been seen, were settled by English emigrants, called Puritans. These Puritans were a very peculiar people; their habits, their notions of religion, of society and government, were peculiar. They were in Europe very different from all around them; they were in America very different from the settlers in other portions of the country. They were of one opinion, and although divided into different colonies, and having different governments, yet they acted in concert on great occasions, and in times of difficulty and danger, resorted to mutual counsel, and, if there was need, to united efforts. A people thus tied together by calling the same land their first home,—by sharing the same faith,—participating in the same dangers,—fighting in the same battles,—sympathizing with each other in all their feelings of joy and sorrow,—were likely to become firmly knit together, like one great family. Such has been the fact. The descendants of the pilgrims have not only retained many of the peculiar traits of their noble and stern forefathers, but to this hour they bear the marks of the same ancestry, and, as in earlier days, though now divided into six distinct sovereignties, they usually, on national questions, act in concert.

The Middle States, as has been observed, were settled at different times by people from different parts of Europe,—people having different forms of religion, different languages, and different habits. These, by living together in the same climate, and under the same government, by a blending of interest, and a mutual accommodation of feeling, are beginning to assimilate and coalesce; and ere long they will doubtless possess a nearly uniform character.

The people of the Southern States, like those of New England, derive their origin principally from one source. Their ancestors were chiefly English emigrants, a large portion of them belonging to the higher classes in England, who brought with them many of

courts? What of religion in most countries? In the United States? How are the people divided? *Here answer questions on Table No. 3.*

What of the New England States? The Puritans? How were the people of New England tied or united together? What of the descendants of the pilgrims? What of the Middle States? What is beginning to take place in the Middle States? What of the Southern States?

their native habits. These habits have been transmitted, and to this day, in all the Southern States, the planters resemble the English country gentlemen. Living, in like manner, on large estates, they have their race course, their packs of hounds, their deer chase, and their fox hunting, with the same liberal and hospitable habits towards those who become their guests.

Thus united by a common origin, and by similar tastes and feelings derived from their ancestors, the Southern States have been still more strongly bound together by the circumstance, that while their interests and habits as between themselves are alike, they are yet different from those of other sections of the country. Their chief interests and occupations being in agriculture, they differ from those portions which are largely engaged in manufactures and commerce. Depending upon slaves to perform their labor, they differ from those who labor for themselves. Possessing large plantations and abundant fortunes, they differ from those, who, living where wealth is much distributed, have each a little, and depend upon their ingenuity and industry to obtain more.

From the operation of these causes, the Southern States are generally closely united, while they are often opposed to the Northern and Eastern States. The people of these two sections of the country are frequently found advocating different measures and different plans of policy. What seems advantageous to one, appears disadvantageous to the other;—a law that would benefit New England, appears to threaten injury to the South. It is happily found, however, that this spirit of opposition diminishes, as the true interests of both are better understood,—and the rivalry of the two sections will, we hope, only operate as a mutual stimulus to excel in patriotic exertion.

The Western States, all lying west of the great Alleghany range of mountains, are separated from the ocean, while each of the New England, Middle, and Southern States, with the exception of Pennsylvania and Vermont, touches upon the sea. No one of the Western States has a seaport. They are, however, abundantly compensated by their mighty rivers. The number of steam-boats on the Mississippi alone, is more than 300, and such is the rapidity of their motion, that a few days is sufficient to perform a trip from Cincinnati to New Orleans and back. Some of these boats are of 500 tons burden. The amount of produce that goes down, and of goods that return, is truly immense, and sufficiently attests the wealth and importance of this flourishing section of our country.

---

What of the southern planters? How are the people of the Southern States bound together? What of their chief interests and occupations? How do they differ from those who labor for themselves? From those who live where wealth is so distributed that each has a little? What follows from these causes? What of the people of the North and South? What is happily found? What may we hope? What of the Western States? The New England, Middle, and Southern States? What of rivers in the Western States? Steam-boats? What of internal improvements?

Since the completion of the Hudson and Erie canal, there has sprung up in this country an active spirit to promote internal improvements. Various canals have been undertaken and successfully completed. Others, some of them of great extent, and designed to connect the Western with the Atlantic States, have been projected. Several rail-roads are now in operation, and should they prove successful, they will soon connect the remotest parts of the country with each other. The operation of the Hudson and Erie canal, which has been to annihilate distance, and bring the very shores of the great western lakes into immediate and close connexion with an Atlantic market, has made the value of these improvements visible to every eye. The effect upon an intelligent and active people must be, to secure to the country, at no distant day, all the advantages of these improved means of transportation. A view of the present internal improvements of the country may be found in the Atlas, in Table No. 4.

We have noticed the settlement of the various parts of the United States under the several divisions of Eastern, Middle, Southern and Western. We shall now take a view of the history of the country, from the time that the people began to act as one great nation.

In 1775, there were about 3,000,000 of people in the thirteen colonies. At this period, these colonies declared themselves independent, and took up arms to separate themselves from Great Britain. They were instigated to this act by the injustice of that government, who taxed the colonies, and yet refused them the privilege of having representatives in their parliament. The effort of Great Britain to subdue the country was great; but, animated by a love of liberty, and led by Washington, the people of America, after a bloody struggle of eight years, drove the British soldiers from the land, and became an independent nation. In 1789, the present form of government was established. Washington was the first president, and we have had six presidents since.

The following are the 13 original states; and were united in the revolutionary war:

New Hampshire,	New Jersey,	Virginia,
Massachusetts,	Pennsylvania,	North Carolina,
Rhode Island,	Delaware,	South Carolina,
Connecticut,	Maryland,	Georgia.
New York,		

---

What of canals? Rail-roads? What of the operation of the Hudson and Erie canal? Here answer questions on Table No. 4. The principal canals and rail-roads in the United States will be found marked in the maps of New England, Middle States, Southern States, and Western States. The pupil may here be required to give an account of these several canals. The teacher will interrogate him as to the direction and length, and places of termination of each. How many inhabitants in the colonies in 1775? What happened at this period? What instigated the people of America? What of the effort of Great Britain? What animated the Americans? Who led them? What did they do? When was the present constitution formed? Who was the first president? How many since? Which were the 13 original states?

The following have been admitted into the Union since 1789.

Vermont, 1791.	Louisiana, 1811.	Alabama, 1819.
Kentucky, 1792.	Indiana, 1816.	Maine, 1820.
Tennessee, 1796.	Mississippi, 1817.	Missouri, 1820.
Ohio, 1802.	Illinois, 1818.	

We cannot close our view of the United States without bestowing some attention upon the remnants of that people, which once claimed this country as their own. The Indians received the first settlers with hospitality. But they soon perceived that the white men levelled their forests, and that civilisation encroached upon their dominion. They became at first jealous, and then hostile. War ensued, and the Indian bow and arrow failed in the encounter with the European musket. The savages retired, and civilisation spread rapidly over the country. The Indians that hung upon the frontier gradually died and disappeared through the force of ardent spirits, and in various battles, which they have never ceased occasionally to provoke. Some broken and degenerate tribes still linger within the civilized districts. The Creeks, Cherokees, Choctaws and Chickasaws, have partially thrown off their savage character, and adopted some of the habits of civilized life. They are at best, however, but a miserable people, and are more ready to imbibe the vices than the virtues which belong to the society around them. The great portion of the Indians, that still live in the United States, occupy the remote western forests, disdaining the tame uniformity of settled life; they still, with a free foot and nervous arm, hunt the buffalo of the prairie, and climb the Rocky mountains in pursuit of the antelope and deer. An estimate of their present number will be found in Table No. 5, and a view of the various missionary stations may be seen in Table No. 6.

## 76. LOWER CANADA.

*Map of North America.* Boundaries? Direction from where you are? What is the capital? Where is Quebec? Direction from Washington? New York? Boston? Where is Montreal? Direction from Quebec? New York? Boston? From you? What of the St. Lawrence? Utawas? St. Francis? Sorelle? Chaudiere? Where is the island of Cape Breton?

## 77. LOWER CANADA, CONTINUED.

A great part of Lower Canada is yet unoccupied by white inhabitants. The principal settlements are along the banks of the St. Lawrence. The face of the country is diversified, there being several parallel ranges of mountains, which extend through the province from the sea-coast. Between these, there are very fertile

Tell the period when each of the other states was admitted into the Union. How did the Indians receive the first settlers? What did they soon perceive? What followed? What became of the Indians? What part of them still linger in the civilized districts? What tribes have partly adopted civilisation? What of these tribes? What of the greater part of the Indians in the United States? Here answer the questions on Tables No. 5 and 6.

77 What is the state of a great part of the country in Lower Canada? Where are the principal settlements? What of the face of the country? The soil?

valleys, producing abundant crops of grass and grain. The exports are furs, timber, pot and pearl ashes, grain and fish. A considerable part of these exports are the produce of Upper Canada, which are taken to Montreal, and thence to a foreign market.

The climate is excessively severe in winter, the thermometer



sometimes sinking to  $30^{\circ}$  below zero. The people protect themselves from this extreme cold, by covering every part, even the face, except the eyes, thickly in furs. The preceding cut represents a winter scene in Canada. The summers are very warm and short. The transition from winter to summer is very rapid, leaving scarcely more than a month for the season of spring.

More than three fourths of the inhabitants of the country are natives, but are of French descent, and speak the French language. The rest are English, Scotch, Irish, and their descendants. The Catholic religion prevails to a great extent in this province, but other denominations are rapidly increasing. Education is much neglected, and the mass of the people, are very ignorant. There are many persons, however, particularly in the large towns, of taste and refinement, and the elegancies of European society are often met with. There is a marked difference between this province and the United States, in the habits of the people, their buildings, and their modes of living. An individual from the latter country, who happens to be in Canada, will be reminded by every thing about him that he is not at home.

Quebec, the seat of government, is situated on the St. Lawrence, and is a remarkable place. It is divided into the upper and lower town. The latter is occupied principally by traders and sailors.

---

The climate? Describe the picture. What of the seasons?

What of the inhabitants as to their origin? What is the prevailing religion? What of other denominations? What of education? Society? What of the difference between Lower Canada and the United States? What of Quebec?

The former, which constitutes the largest portion, is built upon a high rock, and is very strongly fortified. A person in the upper town looks abroad as from a lofty steeple, the prospect being very extensive and striking. Seven miles below the city, the falls of the Montmorenci present a sublime spectacle. Near its entrance into the St. Lawrence, it passes over a rock, and descends in one sheet to the depth of 240 feet. Population of Quebec, 22,000.

Montreal is situated on an island in the St. Lawrence, at the head of ship navigation. It has an extensive commerce, the fur trade constituting one of its principal branches. The city is irregularly built, many of the houses being of stone, and covered with tin. Pop. 25,000.

The island of Cape Breton belongs to this province; the inhabitants are chiefly occupied in working coal mines. They, however, pay considerable attention to the fisheries and fur trade. Arichat and Louisburg are the principal towns in this island.

## 78. UPPER CANADA.

*Map of North America.* Boundaries? What is the seat of government? Where is York? Direction of York from Quebec? Montreal? New York? Washington? Boston? From you? Where is Kingston? What of the St. Lawrence? Utawas? Niagara? Trent? Thames?

## 79. UPPER CANADA, CONTINUED.

A large portion of this territory has never been explored. The settlements are chiefly in the vicinity of the St. Lawrence. Near this river the land is level; in the interior, it is uneven. The soil is generally excellent, and yields abundant crops of grass, wheat, Indian corn, hops, and flax. The climate is much milder than in Lower Canada.

York, the seat of government, is pleasantly situated on lake Ontario, and has a good harbor. Pop. 4,000. Kingston, on lake Ontario, has also an excellent harbor, and is the place of rendezvous of the shipping on the lake. Pop. 4,000. Newark and Queens town are the other considerable places.

## 80. NEW BRUNSWICK.

*Map of North America.* Boundaries? Direction from Massachusetts? Connecticut? New York? Where is the bay of Fundy? Passamaquoddy bay? What is the capital? Where is Frederickton? Direction from Quebec? Boston? New York? From where you are? Where is the town of St. John's? St. Andrew's? What of the St. John's river?

## 81. NEW BRUNSWICK, CONTINUED.

The country in this province, toward the sea-coast, and along the St. John's, is level. The most western portion is mountainous.

---

Falls of Montmorenci? Montreal? Cape Breton? Inhabitants? Towns?

79. What of a large portion of Upper Canada? Where are the principal part of the settlements? What of the face of the country? Soil? Productions? Climate? What of York? Kingston? What other considerable places?

81 What of the face of the country?

The climate is similar to that of Lower Canada. The borders of the rivers are fertile in grass and grain, though agriculture is not yet greatly advanced. The uplands yield fine timber, the pine forests affording very large trees, which are used for masts in the British navy. The sea-coast abounds in cod and other fish; the river St. John's is thronged with herring, shad, and salmon. The fisheries are a principal source of employment and wealth to the inhabitants. The exports are timber and fish.

The herring fisheries present a curious spectacle. The fishermen, seated in a boat, at night, carry a torch, which attracts the fish. The boat is rowed rapidly forward, the fish crowd to the stern of the boat, and are scooped out of the water by one of the fishermen. The following engraving exhibits one of these scenes.



Frederickton, the seat of government, is situated on the St. John's, near the head of sloop navigation. The town of St. John's, situated near the mouth of the same river, is a flourishing place, and the largest in the province. Pop. 10,000.

## 82. NOVA SCOTIA.

*Map of North America.* Boundaries? Direction from Massachusetts? New York? What is the capital? Where is Halifax? Direction from Quebec? Boston? New York? Washington? Where is the island of St. John's?

## 83. NOVA SCOTIA, CONTINUED.

The peninsula of Nova Scotia presents a moderately uneven surface, the soil along the sea-coast being generally barren and dreary. In the interior it is better, and along the bay Fundy, and southwest of Halifax, it affords abundant crops of grain. The climate, like that of Lower Canada, is severe, though softened, in

Climate? Soil? Productions? Agriculture? What of the fish? The fisheries? Exports? Describe the picture. What of Frederickton? St. John's?

83. What is Nova Scotia? Face of the country in Nova Scotia? Soil? Productions? Climate?

some degree, and rendered moist by the neighborhood of the sea. Lumber, fish, and plaster of Paris, are the principal exports.

*Observation.*—Plaster of Paris is a species of stone, which is ground to powder, and strown upon lands where it produces the effect of manure. It is extensively used by the farmers in some parts of the United States.

Halifax, on Chebucto Bay, is the capital; it possesses a fine harbor, and with the exception of Burmuda, is the principal station for British ships in North America. Pop. 15,000. The engraving exhibits the British ships in port at Halifax, and a British officer in the foreground.



The other considerable towns are Liverpool and Windsor. There is a College at Windsor, which possesses a valuable library. Provision is made for the support of schools, in all the villages in the province.

### 34. NEWFOUNDLAND.

*Map of North America.* What is Newfoundland? What straits separate it from Labrador? How is it bounded? In what direction is it from Massachusetts? New York? What is the capital? Where is St. John's? Direction from Quebec? Halifax? Boston?

### 35. NEWFOUNDLAND, CONTINUED.

The interior of this island has never been explored. It presents a bold and rocky shore, abounding in fine harbors. The face of the country, where it is known, is hilly, and the soil barren, though productive of timber. The climate is severe, and the country is frequently visited by dreary fogs, and storms of sleet and snow.

---

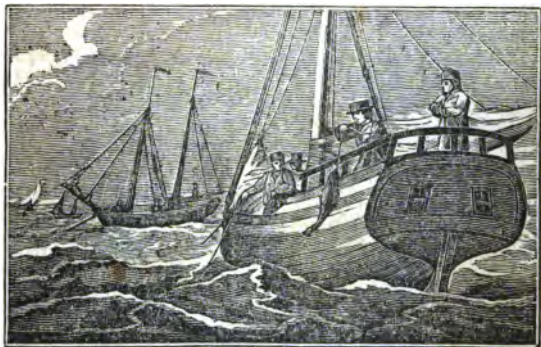
Exports? What is plaster of Paris? Its use? What of Halifax?

Describe the picture. What are the other considerable towns? What college in Windsor? What is done for education?

85. What of the interior of Newfoundland? What of the shore? The face of the country? Soil? Climate?



This island owes its importance to its cod fisheries, which are the most valuable in the world. The fish are caught singly, with baited hooks, upon the banks, which are places of shallow water in the ocean. The Grand Bank, 60 miles from the southeast shore of the island, is 330 miles long, and 75 wide. East of this, is the Green Bank, which is 240 miles long, and 120 broad. Three thousand small vessels, belonging to Great Britain, France, and the United States, with 100,000 men, find employment in these fisheries. They are important, not only for the great value of the fish taken, but as a practical school for the training of seamen. The picture exhibits fishermen engaged in taking fish.



The fishermen in this service suffer very much from cold and from tempestuous weather. After the fish are caught, they are taken ashore, dressed, and dried in the open air. They are then salted in barrels, and sent to various markets throughout Europe and America.

## 86. NEW BRITAIN.

*Map of North America.* What bay divides New Britain into two parts? Where is Labrador? East Maine? New South Wales? New North Wales? What of Mackenzie's river? What lake is the source of Mackenzie's river? What of Nelson's river? What lake is the source of Nelson's river? In what direction are the following places from New York:—Baffin's bay? Labrador? Slave lake? Winnipeg? Where are Hudson's Straits? Davis's straits? James's bay? Barrows' straits? James island? Southampton island? Melville? North Georgian isles? Where is fort Severn? Fort Moose? Where is Nain? Okkok?

## 87. NEW BRITAIN, CONTINUED.

The face of the country in this immense region, where it has

From what does it derive its importance? What of the cod fisheries? How are the fish taken? Where? What are the Banks? Describe the Grand Bank; Green Bank. How many vessels employed in these fisheries? How many men? To what countries do these vessels belong? On what two accounts are these fisheries important? Describe the picture. How are the fish cured? Where are they sent?

87. Face of the country in New Britain?

been explored, is in parts level and marshy; in others, uneven, hilly, or mountainous. The soil is generally barren; the climate exceedingly rigorous; and the aspect of nature dreary and desolate. Nothing of the vegetable kind flourishes here, and the country is given up to the possession of savage tribes and wild animals.

The coasts of Labrador are inhabited by the Esquimaux, a race of savages, of low stature and inferior capacity, who sustain a miserable existence chiefly by feeding on seals and whales. Of the skins of the seal they make their boats, and their clothes, and of his sinews they make thread. They travel over the snow in sledges drawn by dogs, of which they have a very hardy and sagacious breed. These will travel, with a considerable load, 60 miles in a day. The Esquimaux display great skill in driving them. The engraving represents a picture of these people drawn by their dogs.



The interior of New Britain is occupied by various tribes of Knisteneaux and Chippewa Indians. They subsist principally by hunting, but are a miserable and degraded people. Bears, deer, raccoons, and muskrats, are abundant, and the peltry obtained from them are sold by the Indians to the traders, who give in exchange blankets, guns, powder, beads and trinkets.

There are no settlements, except at the posts established by the fur companies, and the three small settlements of the Moravian missionaries among the Esquimaux.

The men engaged in the fur trade, who have occasion to traverse

Soil? Climate? Vegetation? What regions do the Esquimaux Indians inhabit? What of these Indians? Their mode of life? How do they travel? What of their dogs? Describe the picture.

By whom is the interior of New Britain inhabited? What is the character of these tribes? How do they subsist? What wild animals are abundant? What do the Indians do with their furs? What settlements in New Britain? What settlements among the Esquimaux?

these desolate regions, have a singular method of travelling. They take with them birch-bark canoes, which are very light, carrying them on their shoulders across the land, and using them upon the rivers, when these chance to flow in the direction of their route. In this way they travel for thousands of miles, taking with them their furs, goods and provisions.

The fur companies engaged in this business, are the Hudson's bay company, and the Northwest company. The former is an English company, and confined to Hudson's bay and the vicinity. The North-west company is composed of Montreal merchants, whose operations extend to the Pacific ocean on the west, and the Frozen ocean on the north. Many of the agents of this company obtain large quantities of peltry in the neighborhood of Columbia River, and of course within the boundaries of the United States.

## 88. BRITISH POSSESSIONS IN NORTH AMERICA.

*Map of North America.* What countries in North America are embraced in the British possessions? Tell the boundaries of British America. What six principal rivers in British America? What is the largest river? Describe the St. Lawrence; Mackenzie's; Slave; Saskatchewan; Nelson; Severn; Albany. What three great lakes? What five lakes partly in British America?

## 89. BRITISH POSSESSIONS. GENERAL VIEW.

The British possessions in North America comprise an immense territory, nine-tenths of which is yet occupied by Indians. The



whole white population amounts to near a million. Of the number of Indians, we have no means of forming an estimate. Throughout the whole of this region, the winters are long and severe; the summers hot, but short. The soil is fertile in the

What method of travelling have the fur traders? What of the Hudson's bay company? Of the Northwest company?

89 What of the territory of British America? White population? Climate? Soil?

southern parts, but by far the greater portion supports but a scanty vegetation.

The British provinces are placed under the direction of a governor-general who is appointed by the king of Great Britain, and resides at Quebec. The preceding picture represents the governor-general, with soldiers to enforce his commands.

Each of the four provinces, Upper and Lower Canada, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia, has a lieutenant-governor, who is under the direction of the governor-general. The island of New foundland is under the government of an admiral. The inhabitants of these countries are loyal subjects of the king of England. Many of them are natives of Britain, and a strong attachment to the mother country is cherished in the provinces.

These countries were principally settled by the French, and remained in their possession till 1759. At that time they were taken by the British, and have ever since remained as appendages to the British dominions.

## 90. RUSSIAN POSSESSIONS.

*Map of North America.* Where are the Russian possessions? In what direction are they from New England? New York? Washington? Boundaries? What of Cooke's river? Where is Kodiak island? King George's island? Where is Admiralty bay? Portlock harbor? Where is mount Elias? Where is cape Prince of Wales? Cape Lisburn?

## 91. RUSSIAN POSSESSIONS, CONTINUED.

The tract of country belonging to Russia is a great extent of territory, of which but little is known. It contains about 1000



white inhabitants, who are chiefly occupied in the collection of furs.

What of the governor-general? Describe the picture. What of each of the four provinces? Of Newfoundland? What of the inhabitants? By whom were these countries settled? When, and how, did they become British possessions?

91. What of the Russian Possessions in North America? How many white inhabitants? What is their business?

There are about 50,000 Indians within the Russian territories, whose pursuits are hunting and fishing. They sell their furs to the Russian settlers, and receive in payment beads, tobacco, and other articles. In their character and appearance they are said to bear a resemblance to the Greenlanders. The engraving represents the Indians disposing of their furs to the traders.

## 92. GREENLAND.

*Map of North America.* Boundaries? Direction from Massachusetts? From where you are? Where is New Hernhut? Lichtenfels? Lichtenau?

## 93. GREENLAND, CONTINUED.

Greenland is the coldest inhabited country on the globe. Its surface presents a dreary and desolate waste of barren, rocky mountains, whose summits are always covered with snow and ice. The northern parts of the country are totally destitute of vegetation, and the southern portions only afford a stunted growth of trees and shrubs. The winters are long and intensely cold; the summers are very short. The inhabitants derive exceedingly little advantage from the productions of the earth.

The sea furnishes them with almost their whole support. Whales, seals, walrusses and porpoises, abound on the coasts. The white bear, a fierce and powerful brute, disputes the sovereignty of the soil with the inhabitants, and often claims possession of the fish thrown upon the shores by the sea. Reindeer, foxes, hares and wild dogs, are common. The latter, which are the same as those of the Esquimaux, are rendered domestic, and trained to sledges, and carry the inhabitants over the snow, at the rate of 60 miles a day.

The people live in houses made of stone or turf. Their fires are supplied by drift wood, which floats to their shores in considerable quantities, and by moss and train oil. The seal is of great importance to them. Its flesh is their principal article of food, its skin is converted into boats and clothing, and thread and twine are made of its sinews. To excel in catching seals, is esteemed a matter of pride and renown; to be ignorant of it, is regarded as a worthy occasion of contempt. The following picture represents the people engaged in taking seals.

The people of Greenland are of the same race as the Esquimaux, low of stature, dull in intellect and feeling, and filthy in their hab-

How many Indians? Their chief pursuits? How do they dispose of their furs? Their character and appearance? Describe the picture.

93. What is the coldest inhabited country on the globe? Face of the country in Greenland? What of vegetation? What of winter and summer? From what do the inhabitants derive their chief support? What fish and animals abound on the coast? What powerful animal inhabits the land? What other wild animals in Greenland? What of the dogs in Greenland? What of their houses? Their fires? What supplies them with their means of subsistence? What are the uses of the seal? How is the art of catching seals esteemed among the people? Describe the picture. Of what race are the Greenlanders? Their character?



its. Until the Moravian missionaries taught them something of Christianity, they were barbarians, and sometimes the children buried their parents to get rid of the trouble of maintaining them. They are now partially initiated in the knowledge and practice of Christianity.

The only settlements are New Hernhut, Lichtenfels, and Lichtenau. The number of inhabitants was formerly 20,000; but they are now reduced to about 7,000: owing, it is said, to the increased rigor of the climate. They are subject to the king of Denmark. The country is principally valuable for its whale fisheries, which were formerly extensive, but are now of less importance.

#### 94. ICELAND.

*Map of the Atlantic Ocean.* Where is Iceland? Is it nearest the eastern or western continent? In what direction is it from Boston? Cuba? England? How many degrees of latitude between Iceland and New York? How many degrees of longitude?

#### 95. ICELAND, CONTINUED.

This island is about 280 miles in length, and, lying partly within the frigid zone, the climate is very severe. The face of the country is wild, rugged and mountainous. Vegetation is scanty, there being no woods except trees scarcely taller than a man: the pastures are however tolerable, and a few potatoes are produced.

The island is thinly peopled. The largest town has only 500 inhabitants. The Icelanders are Lutherans, and are simple in their habits, moral and religious. They have no schools, but the children are taught by their mothers. A love of knowledge prevails, and

---

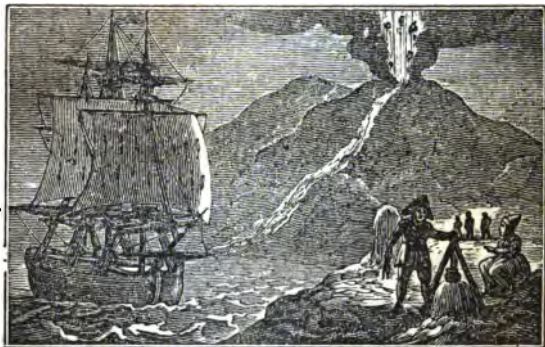
State of society? What settlements in Greenland? What is the number of inhabitants? To whom are the people subject? On what account is Greenland valuable? What of the Greenland fisheries?

94. What of Iceland? Climate? Face of the country? Vegetation? Pastures? What are cultivated? What of the largest town? The inhabitants? Education? Knowledge?



you can scarcely enter a hut, without finding one or more persons of much general intelligence. Families usually spend their evenings in listening to reading, each individual making such remarks as he chooses upon the subject. The people live mostly in rude huts of turf, or in caverns hewn in the rocks. The whole population of the island is about 50,000.

Mount Hecla is one of the most celebrated volcanoes in the world. It is 5000 feet high, and has been known to throw stones,



lava and ashes from its crater to the distance of many miles. Its eruptions are truly terrific. The hot springs, called the Geysers, at the foot of the mountain, throw up columns of boiling water and foam, sometimes to the height of 80 feet! The picture presents a view of the Geysers, Hecla, and some of the people.

## 96. MEXICO.

*Map of North America.* Boundaries? What range of mountains in Mexico? In what direction do the Cordilleras run? What peninsula on the western coast of Mexico? What gulf on the western coast of Mexico? Where is lake Chapala? What is the capital of Mexico? Where is the city of Mexico? Direction from New Orleans? Washington? New York? Boston? Quebec? Where is Guanajuato? Puebla? Vera Cruz? Santa Fe? Monterey? Acapulco? Valladolid? San Louis de Potosi? What of the Arkansas river? Red? Rio del Norte? Colorado? Grande? Gila? Puerco? Brazos?

## 97. MEXICO, CONTINUED.

Mexico is divided into fifteen provinces. The surface of the country is low and level, both on the eastern and western coast. Toward the interior, it rises gradually, till it reaches the elevation of 6,000 or 8,000 feet above the sea. It then expands into broad plains, called table lands, many hundred miles in extent. From

How do families spend their evenings? Habitations? Population? Mount Hecla? The Geysers? Describe the picture.

97. How is Mexico divided? What of the face of the country? Describe the table lands;

these plains, the tops of the Cordilleras rise to a great height, and present the sublime spectacle of peaks clothed in everlasting snow.

The climate is hot and unhealthy on the sea-coast, but as you ascend toward the table lands, it becomes cool and salubrious. At the elevation of about 5000 feet, the air is delightful, possessing the genial influence of spring. On the higher table lands, the temperature is even cold, and on the tops of the mountains, winter holds perpetual sway.

The soil of this favored country is generally very fertile, and its productions are varied and abundant. Vegetation is in the highest degree rich and luxuriant. Maize, or Indian corn, is the staple article, and two or three crops are often gathered in one year. Wheat, rye, and barley, are extensively cultivated. Oranges, lemons, figs, melons, sugar, indigo, tobacco, cochineal, cocoa, barilla, bananas, and various other articles, are among the productions of the soil.

The Cordilleras, a chain of mountains, forming a part of the great range that runs through the American continent, consist of table lands, from which, as already mentioned, peaks rise up to a great elevation. The highest peak, Popocatepetl, is 17,000 feet above the level of the sea. This is a volcanic mountain, and formerly sent forth smoke, fire, lava, and red-hot stones from its top. Several of the peaks near the city of Mexico are volcanic, and rise to the height of 15,000 feet. These volcanoes are among the most sublime objects which the face of the world exhibits.

The gold and silver mines of Mexico are the richest in the world. The principal mines are those of Guanaxuato, Catorce, and Zacatecas. The gold is found either mixed with sand in small particles, or in veins in the rocks. In the former case, it is separated by washing; in the latter, it is obtained by blasting, and separated by a chemical process. Silver is found in various states, sometimes mixed with other minerals in the form of ore, sometimes imbedded in earth, and sometimes mixed with sand. It is most usually dug from the rocks with great labor, in ores of various colors, red, blue, yellow or black.

The population of Mexico was estimated at 7,000,000 in 1827. Less than one fourth of the inhabitants are whites; one third are Indians, submitting to the government; the remainder, constituting nearly one half of the population, are mixed races called Mestizoes. The whites are vicious, and lead indolent and luxurious lives. The Indians are in a state of servitude and degradation, and generally go naked. Industry is not common among any part of the people.

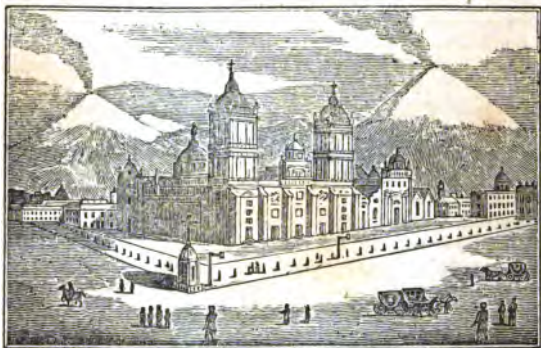
climate; soil; productions; Describe the Cordilleras; Popocatepetl; the peaks near the city of Mexico. What of volcanoes? What of the mines of Mexico? What are the principal mines? In what states is gold found? How is it separated? In what forms is silver found?

The population of Mexico? What proportion are whites? What portion are Indians? What are the rest? Character of the whites? What of the Indians? What of industry?



Violence, robbery, and murder, are frequent. The roads are bad, and travelling is chiefly performed on mules. It is to be hoped, that the influence of the new government will produce a better state of things.

The city of Mexico, containing 150,000 inhabitants, is one of the largest towns in America. Its streets are regular, and many of the public and private buildings are in a style of magnificence, equalled by few cities in the world. It contains upwards of one hundred churches, many of them adorned in a most costly manner, with gold and silver. The mint, an establishment for coining money, is the richest in the world. The valley around the city is beautifully cultivated, and affords a delightful picture, when contrasted with the sublime mountains that encircle it. On the lake Tezcuco, which is near the city, are extensive floating gardens, which supply the place with its vegetables. If we take into consideration the elevation of Mexico, which is 7,500 feet above the level of the sea, the splendor of its edifices, the beauty of the valley around it,



and the grandeur of the scenery, it may be regarded as one of the most remarkable and interesting places in the world. The preceding picture represents the cathedral of Mexico, with volcanic mountains in the background.

Puebla, a city of 70,000 inhabitants, is at the same elevation as Mexico, and about 70 miles distant from it. It is regularly built of stone, and its edifices are lofty and handsome. Zacatecas is remarkable for its silver mines, which are the most productive in the world. Pop. 33,000. Guanajuato, situated among the mountains, is also celebrated for its silver mines. Pop. 36,000.

---

Of violence and robbery? The roads? Method of travelling? What of the city of Mexico? Its population? Streets? Buildings? Churches? The mint? The surrounding scenery? The floating gardens? On what accounts is Mexico remarkable and interesting? Describe the picture. What of Puebla? Zacatecas? Guanajuato?

Vera Cruz is a place of great commerce, almost all the trade of Mexico with Europe being carried on through it. Its harbor, however, is inconvenient, and the climate is unhealthy. Pop. 16,000. Acapulco is the principal Mexican port on the Pacific ocean. It is a small, unhealthy town, with a fine harbor, principally inhabited by mulattoes. Pop. 4,000. Santa Fe, the most northern town of importance, has considerable trade with the southwestern part of the United States, carried on across the country.

The religion of Mexico is Roman Catholic; there are 10,000 clergy, many of them being rich, and possessing great influence over the minds of the people. The government is republican, and similar to that of the United States. The country is, however, in a very unsettled condition, and its future prospects are uncertain. Until within a few years, Mexico was subject to the king of Spain, but the people have thrown off his sovereignty and declared themselves independent.

## 98. GUATIMALA.

*Map of North America?* Where is Guatemala? Its boundaries? Direction from New England? What mountains pass through this country? What river in Guatemala? Describe Juan river. Where is lake Nicaragua? Where the bay of Honduras? Amatique bay? Where are the Corn isles? What is the capital? Where is the city of Guatemala? Its direction from the city of Mexico? Washington? New York? Boston? New Orleans? Where is Leon? Truxillo? Vera Paz? Chiapa?

## 99. GUATIMALA, CONTINUED.

Guatemala is divided into six provinces. The great American range of mountains extends through its whole length, giving a mountainous character to the face of the country. There are



Vera Cruz? Acapulco? Santa Fe? Religion? Clergy? Government? What has recently taken place in Mexico?

99. How is Guatemala divided? What mountains in Guatemala? Face of the country?

more than twenty volcanoes constantly burning; eruptions are frequent, and earthquakes are not uncommon. In the low parts of the country, the climate is hot and unhealthy; in the higher parts, it is cool and salubrious. The soil is fruitful, and the productions are nearly the same as in Mexico. The lands along the bay of Honduras are celebrated for logwood and mahogany, of which vast quantities are shipped to various parts of America and Europe. The picture represents people cutting down logwood and mahogany. In the background are views of volcanoes.

This country was subject to Spain till 1823, when it became independent. Its government is republican, but rather unsettled.

The city of Guatemala is the capital; it is near the Pacific ocean, and possesses a good harbor. Its churches and monasteries are numerous and costly; the gold and silver used for decoration in the churches, would amount to several millions of dollars. This city contains a university, and 50,000 inhabitants. In 1773, it was overwhelmed by an earthquake, and 8,000 families were swallowed up in a moment.

## 100. NORTH AMERICA.

*Map of North America.—Map of Western Hemisphere.* How many degrees of latitude in North America, from Melville island to the isthmus of Panama? How many degrees of longitude in North America, from the island of Newfoundland to Bheering's straits? Which is the most northern part of North America that has been discovered? The most eastern part? Southern? Western?

What three islands, one northern, and two southern, in the same longitude as Washington? What town in the Western States, and what lake in Mexico, nearly in the same latitude as Washington? How many degrees south of Boston is the city of Mexico? How many degrees west? What islands, waters, and countries, in North America, between 10 and 20 degrees of north latitude? Between 20 and 30? Between 30 and 40? Between 40 and 50? Between 50 and 60? Between 60 and 70?

Describe the three great ranges of mountains in North America. Where is mount Elias? Describe the eight principal rivers of North America. What eight islands on the western coast of North America? What six islands on the eastern coast, north of 40 degrees N. latitude? Which are the five largest islands on the map of North America? What are the ten largest lakes in North America? What are the six divisions of North America? Tell the boundaries of each.

## 101. NORTH AMERICA, CONTINUED.

The length of North America, from Melville island to the isthmus of Panama, is about 4,500 miles; the width is about 2,500 miles. The surface contains about eight millions of square miles; the population, including all the inhabitants, may be estimated at 25,000,000.

It embraces nearly every variety of climate, from the inflexible winter of polar regions, to the perpetual summer of the tropics. As we proceed farther in the study of Geography, we shall discover

---

What of its volcanoes? What of earthquakes? Climate? Soil? Productions? What of logwood and mahogany? Describe the picture. What of the government of Guatemala? Describe the city of Guatemala. What of the churches? How many inhabitants in the city of Guatemala? What happened to it in 1773?

101. Length of North America? Width? Extent? Population? Climate?

er that the winters of North America are far more severe than those of Europe in the same latitudes. This is probably owing, in part, to the great accumulations of ice in the northern parts of the American continent, which render the winds cold. We have all observed that winds from the north are cold, while those from the south are warm; this is easily accounted for, by considering that the former come from the frozen regions of the Arctic ocean, while the latter visit us from the warm and sunny regions of the equator. The soil and productions of North America are as various as the climate.

The peculiar geographical features of North America are, its remarkable lakes, its long rivers, and its great ranges of mountains. Lake Superior is the largest collection of fresh water in the world; and there are at least six others in North America, each of which is more extensive than the largest lake in Europe. There are eight rivers, the shortest of which is 1000 miles in length. The most remarkable cataract in the world is that of Niagara, of which a picture is here presented



The mountains of North America consist of two great ranges. The western range extends from the isthmus of Panama to the Frozen ocean. It passes through Guatemala, Mexico, the United States, and the Russian possessions, in a direction nearly parallel to the coast. Its whole extent in North America is probably more than 5,000 miles. The highest peak, mount Elias, is 18,000 feet above the level of the sea, and is the highest mountain in North America.

The eastern range lies wholly within the United States, and passes under the name of the Appalachian chain. Its general direction is nearly parallel with the Atlantic coast, from which it is 150 to

Why are the winters more severe in North America than in Europe? Why are our north winds cold? Our south winds warm? Soil? Productions? Lakes? Rivers? Cataract? Describe the picture. Mountains? Describe the western range; the eastern range.

250 miles distant. It consists of two parallel ranges, the principal of which is called the Alleghany ridge; the subordinate one, the Blue ridge. The Catskill mountains in New York, the Green mountain range in Vermont, Massachusetts, and Connecticut, and the White mountains in New Hampshire, are considered as branches of the Blue ridge. The peaks of the white mountains, in New Hampshire, are the highest elevations in the Appalachian chain.

The mineral treasures of North America, so far as discovered, are chiefly confined to coal, iron, copper, lead, silver, and gold. The most remarkable coal mines are in Pennsylvania. Iron, the most useful of metals, is abundant in various parts of the country, particularly in the United States. There are rich copper mines in the vicinity of lake Superior; there are other copper mines in various parts of the United States. The lead mines of Missouri are among the most productive in the world. The silver and gold mines of Mexico are equal, perhaps superior, to the most prolific of the South American mines. Gold has recently been discovered in North Carolina, and the adjacent states, and large quantities are now annually obtained.

The animal kingdom of North America embraces a considerable variety of species, some of which are not found in any other parts of the world. The following is a list of the most remarkable of the native animals.

*Of the cat kind.* The cougar, or puma, improperly called panther. It is about one third less in size than the lion, of sufficient strength to carry a man up a tree, and found in the wooded parts of the country. The jaguar, resembling the panther, found, though rarely, in Mexico. The ocelot, found sometimes in Mexico and Guatemala. The lynx, common in Canada. Mexican tiger cat, found in Mexico, and a little larger than the domestic cat. Wild cat, twice the size of the domestic cat, with a short tail; it is a different species from the wild cat of Europe, of which the domestic cat is a tame variety.

*Seal kind.* The walrus, or great morse, common in the Greenland seas. The seal, several varieties; abundant on the northern coasts, both in the Atlantic and Pacific.

*Opossum.* One species found in Virginia.

*Beaver. Muskrat. Rat.* Of the latter, various kinds. *Mouse;* many varieties.

*Marmot.* The prairie marmot, or prairie dog; vast numbers in the Missouri territory. *Woodchuck,* or Maryland marmot; common in the United States. *Hood's marmot, Louisiana marmot,* and *Parry's marmot,* and several other species.

*Squirrel.* Red, gray, fox, black, cat, great-tailed, line-tailed, four-lined, Hudson's bay, ground or chip, flying, and some others.

---

Minerals; coal mines; iron; copper; lead; silver; gold. What of the animal kingdom of North America? The teacher will here make such an examination of the pupil, respecting the animals of North America, as he may think fit.

*Common Hare.* Commonly, but improperly, called rabbit. The rabbit is not a native of America. Two or three other species of hare.

*Deer.* Moose; similar to the elk of Europe, the largest of the deer kind. The Wapiti, or American elk, a stately animal, whose horns are sometimes seven feet in length. Fallow deer; the common deer of America. Mule, or black-tailed deer, a fine species, found in the vicinity of the Rocky mountains. Long-tailed deer, found in the Western Territories. Caribou, or American Reindeer, confined to frigid regions, and not used for draught, as the Reindeer of Europe. These six kinds are all the species of deer in North America. The stag, or red deer, of Europe, is not known here. It is a peculiarity of the deer kind, that they shed their horns once a year.

*Antelope.* One species, the prong-horned antelope of the Rocky mountains; a graceful and fleet animal, so swift, that it seems rather to fly than leap from rock to rock, in the rugged regions which it inhabits.

*Goat.* Rocky mountain goat. The domestic goat is a foreign species.

*Sheep.* Found in the Rocky mountains; similar to the Argali of Europe and Asia. All our breeds of domestic sheep are imported.

*Ox.* Bison, improperly called Buffalo. Musk ox, confined to the arctic regions, covered with long hair, smaller in size than the domestic ox. All the varieties of domestic cattle are of foreign origin.

*Bat.* Many kinds. *Mole.* Several species. *Gopher.*

*Bear.* American black bear. Grisly bear, the most powerful and dangerous wild animal in North America, found near the Rocky mountains. Polar bear. The brown bear of Europe is not a native of this country.

*Raccoon.* Common in all parts of North America.

*American Badger.* Found in the plains of the Missouri.

*Glutton.* Called wolverine, probably the strongest animal of its size; found in the northern parts.

*Weasel.* Common weasel, becomes white in winter, and is called *ermine* in Europe. Pine weasel, pine martin, Pennant's martin, sable, mink, otter, sea-otter. These animals furnish the fur companies with the most valuable part of their furs. *Skunk.* Peculiar to this country.

*Dog.* The Esquimaux dog; three of these will draw a sledge of whale-bone, weighing 200 pounds, with a man on it, at the rate of 10 miles an hour. Newfoundland dog, a peculiarly faithful, sagacious, and interesting animal. Hare Indian dog. Found among the Hare Indians.

*Wolf.* Common, barking, dusky, black. This latter is the fiercest of wolves

**Fox.** Common, red, gray, black or silver, arctic, swift. This last is the smallest of foxes, and is confined to the arctic regions.

**Alligator.** Found in southern waters, sometimes called *cayman*.

**Serpents.** Various kinds; the most remarkable of which is the rattle-snake, which is found only in North and South America.

**Birds.** The most remarkable bird of North America is the wild turkey; it is peculiar to this country, and is the original stock whence the tame turkeys have sprung. The mocking-bird of the Southern States is one of the sweetest singers among the whole tribe of melodious birds. The whippoorwill is peculiar to this country. In general, there is a great resemblance between the birds of Europe and North America. Parrots and parroquets are found in Mexico. One species of parrot is found in the United States.

After the discovery of America, the various nations of Europe sent expeditions to the New World, to take possession of the lands they might discover or conquer. Paying little regard to the rights of the native occupants, they settled upon the lands, and without scruple appropriated them to their own use. North America fell chiefly into the possession of the Spanish, French, and English. Mexico, then inhabited by a numerous and partly civilized people, was conquered by Fernando Cortes, a Spanish general, by bloodshed, treachery, and murder. This country remained subject to the Spanish yoke till its independence, which has recently been achieved.

The middle portions of the country came into the possession of the English, and are now embraced in the United States. A part of the territory of the United States has been purchased since the independence of that country. Florida, which belonged to Spain, was purchased in 1821. The whole of the vast territory lying west of the Mississippi, to the Pacific ocean, now including the states of Louisiana and Missouri, and the territories of Arkansas, Missouri and Oregon, was purchased of France in 1803, for 15,000,000 of dollars. It then had the general name of Louisiana.

The French settlements in America were chiefly confined to the vicinity of the St. Lawrence and the Mississippi. Their northern possessions were conquered by the British in 1759. The dominion of this part of North America was thus transferred from France to Great Britain. Since that period, British America has continued subject to the British government. The other French settlements passed under the government of the United States after the purchase of Louisiana.

---

What happened after the discovery of America? What did the Europeans do? Into whose hands did North America chiefly fall? What of Mexico? What portion of North America came into the hands of the English? What of the United States? Florida? Territory formerly called Louisiana? The northern settlements of the French in North America? The French settlements along the Mississippi?

The history of America, previous to its discovery by the Europeans, we cannot penetrate. They found it inhabited by various tribes, most of whom were wandering savages. The most civilized among them had no books. The traditions among the Indians furnish some obscure hints, but these are vague and uncertain. There are some remarkable monuments in the western parts of the United States, having somewhat the appearance of fortifications. They evidently belonged to a remote age, and a nation now passed into oblivion. It is quite possible, that this continent has been the theatre of great events, long before it was trodden by a European foot. Empires may have risen, flourished, and fallen, whose history is eternally blotted out from human record. But of all this we know nothing.

In various parts of North America, the bones of remarkable animals, now extinct, have been found imbedded in the earth. An almost complete skeleton of an animal several times larger than the elephant, was dug up a few years since near Newburgh in the State of New York, and is now preserved in the museum in Philadelphia. The bones of animals still larger have also been discovered. It appears probable that, at a very remote period, whole races of animals, different from any existing in any part of the world, and far surpassing the elephant and rhinoceroos in magnitude, once roamed in the forests of North America. Of such animals, the Indians have some traditions.

## 102. WEST INDIES.

*Map of the Atlantic Ocean.* Where are the West Indies? Which of these islands are the farthest north? Which is farthest east? South? West? Which is the largest of the West Indies? Which is the next largest? The next? The next? Which way is Cuba from Mexico? From New Orleans? Washington? New York? Boston? Which way is Jamaica from Cuba? Hayti from Cuba? Trinidad? Curacao? Guadaloupe? Tobago? Pine island? What is the capital of Cuba? Jamaica? Hayti? Curacao? Where is Port au Prince? St. Salvador? St. Jago? Where are the Bermudas? In what direction from Boston? New York? Charleston? Savannah? Cuba?

## 103. WEST INDIES, CONTINUED.

The climate of these islands is in summer extremely hot, oppressive, and unhealthy. In winter it is delightful. In the autumn, hurricanes are frequent; they are so terrible as to destroy many ships, and sometimes do great injury to towns and villages. The seasons are divided into wet and dry; spring and autumn being the rainy seasons. Thunder and lightning are common, and earthquakes are occasionally felt. Snow and ice are never known in these islands. The soil of most of them is very fruitful.

---

What of the history of North America previous to its discovery by the Europeans? What of the original inhabitants? Their traditions?

The western monuments? What is possible? What of animal remains in North America? A remarkable skeleton? What is probable? Traditions of the Indians respecting these animals? Let the teacher examine the pupil in Table No. 7, 8, and 9.

103. What is the climate of the West Indies? Seasons? What of hurricanes? Thunder and lightning? Earthquakes? Soil?



The sugar-cane is the principal article of cultivation. From this, sugar, rum, and molasses are made, which constitute the chief articles of export, and on account of which the trade of these islands is esteemed of great importance both in Europe and America. The following is a picture of slaves making sugar and molasses from sugar-cane.



The other products are cotton, cocoa, indigo, coffee, ginger, cinnamon, and cloves. The fruits are oranges, lemons, limes, pineapples, figs, pomegranates, and many others. These delicious fruits are as abundant in the West Indies, as pears, apples, and peaches are in the Middle States.

Nearly seven-eighths of the inhabitants of these islands are blacks, and chiefly slaves, who perform nearly all the labor. Many of the whites are planters, who possess large estates, their lands being cultivated by their slaves. All these islands belong to European governments, except Hayti. This was formerly in the possession of France and Spain; but, within a few years, the black inhabitants have revolted, expelled the whites, and established an independent government. Table No. 7, embraces the most important of these islands.

The Bermuda islands, though not belonging to the West Indies, may be mentioned here. They lie about 800 miles off the coast of Carolina. They are in the possession of the British.

#### 104. COLOMBIA.

*Map of the Atlantic Ocean.* Where is Colombia? In what direction is it from New England? In what direction is Santa Fe de Bogota, from Washington? From New Orleans? Havanna? Mexico?

Productions? What is manufactured from sugar-cane? What of the inhabitants of the West Indies? What of the planters? To whom do these islands belong? What of Hayti? Capital of Cuba? Population of Cuba? What government does it belong to? Let the pupil here answer the questions on Table No. 7. What of the Bermuda isles?

*Map of South America.* How is Colombia bounded? Where is cape St. Francisco? Cape Vela? Cape Corientes? Where is the gulf of Darien? Gulf of Maracaybo? Where is the bay of Panama? Where is lake Maracaybo? What mountains in Colombia? In what part of Colombia are the Andes? In what direction does the range of the Andes run? Where is Chimborazo? Cotopaxi? What of the Orinoco? Apures? Meta? Cauca? Magdalena? Amazon? Rio Negro?

What is the capital of Colombia? Where is Santa Fe de Bogota? Caracas? Guayaquil? Panama? Cumana? Cartagena? Porto Bello? Maracaybo? Popayan? What city lies in Colombia under the equator?

### 105. COLOMBIA, CONTINUED.

In the western part of Colombia, the face of the country is mountainous. Lofty ranges traverse the country, presenting the most stupendous mountain scenery. East of the Andes, along the Orinoco, and its branches, the country spreads out into vast plains. In the rainy seasons, the Orinoco overflows its banks, and the plains are sometimes inundated to a great extent.

In the low countries, the climate is hot, and, in parts, unhealthy. The temperature of summer prevails here throughout the year; the trees, shrubs, and plants, being at all times in a state of verdure. Among the mountains, the climate varies according to the elevation; their summits are clothed in perpetual winter. In less elevated parts, the temperature is that of spring: here the climate is delightful, and subject to little variation throughout the year.

The valleys among the mountains are very fertile; the plains are also fertile, and produce good crops of cotton, tobacco, corn, coffee, and fruits of various kinds. The country along the banks of the Orinoco affords pasturage for immense herds of wild cattle. The condor, a species of vulture and the largest bird of flight that is



known, is an inhabitant of the mountains. The boa, a monstrous

105. Face of the country in Colombia? What happens on the banks of the Orinoco during the rainy seasons? Climate in the plains? In the higher parts? What of the soil? Productions? What is afforded by the country along the Orinoco? What large bird inhabits the Andes? What great serpent in Colombia?

species of serpent, is found in the plains. The jaguar, a powerful animal of the cat kind, is common. The preceding picture represents some of these animals in the foreground. In the background are volcanic mountains.

The mountains of Colombia are rich in gold and silver; there are also mines of copper, platina, lead, and emeralds. The Andes abound in objects that astonish the beholder. The volcanoes are truly sublime. Cotopaxi, which rises to the elevation of nearly four miles above the level of the sea, is the loftiest volcanic mountain in the world. Its top is in the form of a cone, and is always covered with snow. Its explosions are frequent and terrible. The flames have been known to rise 3000 feet above the crater, and its roar has been heard at the distance of 600 miles.

Chimborazo, a little more than four miles in height, above the level of the sea, is the highest peak of the Andes. When viewed from the Pacific ocean, it presents a scene grand and beautiful beyond description. Fifteen miles from Santa Fe de Bogota is the cataract of Tequendama. Here, the river Bogota, at two bounds, plunges to the depth of 600 feet into an unfathomable gulf. The vapor that rises is seen at the city of Santa Fe, presenting all the colors of the rainbow. Nothing, indeed, can exceed the wildness and sublimity of this waterfall.

Not far from the city of Cumana is a remarkable cave, several miles in length, which is the resort of thousands of nocturnal birds. On the route from Santa Fe to Popayan, are the natural bridges of Icononzo. One of them presents an arch extending across a chasm 300 feet in depth.

Santa Fe de Bogota, the seat of government, is handsomely built, and is situated in the midst of a broad and fruitful plain, which rises 8,000 feet above the level of the sea. The population is 50,000. Quito, the largest city in Colombia, is built on the side of a volcanic mountain, at the extraordinary elevation of 9,500 feet above the level of the sea. The grandeur of the mountain scenery in its vicinity surpasses description. From the situation of this city, so near the equator, we should expect that it would have a burning and oppressive climate, but, in consequence of its great elevation, the air is cool and delightful. The place is subject, however, to tempests, and violent thunder-storms. The population is 70,000.

Caraccas, situated in a valley near the northern coast, is memorable for the earthquake of 1812. This destroyed a portion of the city, by shaking the buildings to the ground, burying 12,000 of the inhabitants in the ruins.

Within about ten years, Colombia has become independent, hav-

---

What animal of the cat kind? Describe the picture. What of the minerals? What of Cotopaxi? Chimborazo? Cataract of Tequendama? Cave near Cumana? Natural bridges of Icononzo? What of Santa Fe de Bogota? Population? What of Quito? Its elevation? Its population? What of Caraccas? What of the government? Inhabitants?

ing thrown off the dominion of Spain, to which it was previously subject. The form of government is republican. The population of Colombia is about 3,000,000, consisting of whites, Indians, and negroes.

## 106. GUIANA.

*Map of the Atlantic Ocean.* In what direction from New England? Cuba? Mexico? *Map of South America.* Boundaries? Rivers? What of Demarara? Essequibo? Where is the town of Stabroek? Direction from Quito? Where is Paramaribo? Cayenne?

## 107. GUIANA, CONTINUED.

Guiana is divided into three parts; the eastern part belongs to the French, the middle to the Dutch, and the western to the English. The interior is still in the possession of tribes of native Indians. The country along the coast only, is occupied by the whites. Guiana is a low, flat region, with a hot climate. It is, however, exceedingly fertile. Sugar, coffee, cotton, cocoa, maize, and indigo, are produced in great abundance. There is also a profusion of various delicious fruits. The orange and lemon trees, with many others, are at all times in bloom, and loaded with ripe and ripening fruit. It is on account of the great fertility of this spot, that it is valued by the European governments. The population is 250,000, of whom only 20,000 are whites; the rest being negro slaves, who perform nearly all the labor.

Guiana is subject to annual inundations during the rainy season; the rivers, swollen by continual rains, overflow their banks; forests,



trees, shrubs, and parasitical plants, seem to float upon the water.

107. How is Guiana divided? Where is French Guiana? Dutch Guiana? English Guiana? What of the interior? What part do the Europeans occupy? What of the surface of the country? Its climate? Fertility? Productions? Fruits? What induces the European governments to keep possession of it? To what is Guiana subject? Describe an inundation in Guiana.

Quadrupeds are forced to take shelter in the highest trees; large lizards, agoutis, and peccaries quit their dens, now filled with water, and remain among the branches. Aquatic birds spring upon the trees, to avoid the alligators and serpents that infest the temporary lakes. The fishes forsake their ordinary food, and live upon the fruits and berries of the shrubs, among which they swim: the crab is found upon the trees, and the oyster multiplies in the forest. The Indian, who surveys from his canoe this confusion of earth and sea, suspends his hammock on an elevated branch, and sleeps without fear in the midst of so great apparent danger. The preceding picture represents this scene.

Stabroek, the capital of English Guiana, is situated on the Demarara river. Pop. 8,000. Paramaribo, the capital of Dutch Guiana, is a beautiful city on the Surinam river, with regular streets, adorned with orange and lemon trees always in bloom. Pop. 20,000. Cayenne, the capital of French Guiana, is situated on an island of the same name, and is well defended by fortifications. Pop. 2,000.

### 108. PERU.

*Map of the Atlantic Ocean.* Direction from New England? Cuba? New Orleans? New York?

*Map of South America.* Boundaries? What mountains traverse Peru? In what direction do the Andes cross Peru? In what part of Peru are the Andes? What is the capital? Where is Lima? Direction from Quito? Where is Cuzco? Arequipa? Guamanga? Callao? Truxillo? What of the Ucayale river? Marañon? Alto? Apurimac?

### 109. PERU, CONTINUED.

Peru stretches along the shore of the Pacific ocean, for more than a thousand miles. The Andes extend across the country in two nearly parallel ranges, called the eastern and western Cordilleras. The country between the Pacific ocean and the western range nowhere exceeds 40 or 50 miles in width: this is called Low Peru, and consists of sandy, barren plains. High Peru lies between the two ranges of mountains, and consists of table lands, 8000 feet above the level of the sea. This region is interspersed with mountains and valleys, the latter being very fertile. Between the eastern Cordilleras and the boundary of Brazil, the country is called Interior Peru, and consists chiefly of plains, called Pampas. These have an undulating surface, and are covered with coarse grass. They resemble the prairies of the Western States; the vegetation is, however, coarser, and they are less fertile.

Peru, lying under the equator, possesses every variety of climate.

---

Describe the picture. What is the population of Guiana? How many are whites? What are the rest? What of Stabroek? Paramaribo? Cayenne?

109. What is the extent of Peru from north to south? How do the Andes cross Peru? How are they divided? Where is Lower Peru? Upper Peru? Interior Peru? Face of country in Lower Peru? In Upper Peru? Interior Peru? Describe the Pampas.

The tops of the mountains are covered with perpetual snow, and here winter reigns with as stern an aspect as in Greenland. Lower down, the plants which are common to temperate regions are seen to flourish. Between the mountains in Interior Peru, the climate is that of perpetual spring. In Low Peru, the temperature is always that of summer.

The productions of Peru are cotton, sugar, grain, and Peruvian bark. It possesses rich mines of silver and gold, likewise copper, mercury, and lead. Earthquakes are not uncommon. The earthquake which happened at Lima in 1786 was one of the most destructive earthquakes on record. It lasted several weeks. The city was almost destroyed, and many of the inhabitants lost their lives. The port of Callao was completely demolished; 24 vessels were sunk, and the fragments of three others were thrown by the rise of the waters beyond the beach. Out of 4000 persons in Callao, 200 only escaped; 1300 individuals perished at Lima, and many others were maimed or wounded. The picture represents a scene during this earthquake.



Peru was conquered by Pizarro, a Spanish general, about 1532. It was at that time a populous country. From its conquest it remained subject to Spain, till within a few years, when the inhabitants asserted their independence, and adopted a republican form of government.

Lima, the capital, is situated in the midst of a beautiful valley, a few miles from the Pacific ocean. It is a handsome city, enjoys a perpetual summer climate, and is remarkable for the costly magnificence of its churches. The people are distinguished for their rich equipages and sumptuous habits in dress. Callao is a seaport on the Pacific, seven miles from Lima; through this port, the commerce

---

Describe the climate of Peru; soil; productions; mines; earthquakes; the earthquake at Lima. Describe the picture. What of the history of Peru? Of the government? What of Lima? Callao?

of Peru, of which Lima is the centre, is carried on. Population of Lima, 60,000.

Cuzco is remarkable for the monuments which still exist of its former greatness. Before South America was conquered by the Spaniards, this city was the seat of the empire of the Indian kings, or princes called Incas. The Peruvians had made considerable progress in the arts of civilisation. The temple of the sun, in which they conducted their worship, and many other edifices, were truly magnificent. The population is 30,000. Arequipa and Guamanga are large towns. Guanica Velica, situated 12,000 feet above the level of the sea, is famous for its mines of quicksilver.

## 110. BRAZIL.

*Map of the Atlantic Ocean.* Direction of Brazil from New England? New York? From where you are? Direction of Rio Janeiro from Philadelphia? Washington? Mouth of the Columbia river? Mexico? Cuba?

*Map of South America.* Boundaries? Where is lake de los Palos? Where is Joannes island? St. Catharine's isle? Where is cape St. Roque? Cape Frio? Cape North? Cape Orange?

Capital? Where is Rio Janeiro? Direction from Quito? Lima? Stabroek? Where is St. Salvador? Pernambuco? Cuiaba? Villa Rica? Villa Boa? Tejuco? Para? St. Paul? Olinda? Scarra? What of the Amazon river? Paraguay? Parana? St. Francisco? Madeira? Tocantins? Tapajos? Xingu?

## 111. BRAZIL, CONTINUED.

The empire of Brazil is a country of vast extent, and is greatly celebrated for its fertility and beauty. It extends about 2,300 miles from north to south, and nearly 2,000 miles from east to west. This region comprehends about two-fifths of South America, and is somewhat larger than the whole of the United States. Its population, however, is very inadequate to its extent, being estimated at only four millions, and these are chiefly confined to the coasts and mining districts; this calculation excludes, however, numerous tribes of Indians, of whom very little is known.

Viewed from the sea, Brazil appears, on its first aspect, mountainous, rough, and unequal; but on a nearer approach, no prospect can be more picturesque and agreeable than that which it presents; its eminences being covered with magnificent woods, and its valleys with eternal green. The interior of the country, for the most part, is one vast forest; near the centre, however, is an immense sandy plain, called Campos Parexis. This plain, near the middle, rises into chains of mountains which are among the highest in Brazil. It is from this mountainous district, and the eastern declivity of the Andes, that those great rivers proceed which finally pour their waters into the Atlantic.

---

What of Cuzco? Arequipa? Guamanga? Guanica Velica?

111. What of the empire of Brazil? Length? Breadth? What portion of South America does it comprehend? How large, compared with the United States? What of population? Describe Brazil. What of the interior? What plain near the centre? What of mountains? Rivers?

In a country so extensive as Brazil, there must be great varieties, both as to climate and productions. With the exception of the ridges of mountains, and the plain of Campos Parexis, the country is generally characterized by an excess of vegetation. The dense forests mitigate the heat of summer; but, at the same time, render the air humid and unhealthy. The forest trees grow to a great size. Creeping and parasitical plants are so entwined with the trees, that a Brazilian forest is almost impenetrable. These forests swarm with insects, and abound with wild beasts, monkeys, parrots, parroquets, and other birds of the most brilliant plumage. The woods are filled with aromatic plants, whose perfumes are often wafted many leagues to sea.

The climate of Brazil is for the most part that of perpetual summer. In the low and marshy districts, the excessive heat renders them unhealthy. Among the mountains and elevated plains, the air is cool and delightful.

In the district immediately back of Rio Janeiro, is the highest ground in Brazil. These mountains are totally distinct from the Andes, consisting not of rock, but of sand. The surface is destitute of almost every species of vegetation; but in the beds of the rivers which flow from this district, diamonds, topazes, chrysoberyls, and other precious stones are found. Gold is also found in the same ridge mixed with the sand; a bowl full of this can be washed by a man in an hour, producing gold to the value of about a shilling.

A fine portion of Brazil is that opposite the small island of St. Catharine. The vale of Picada, in this district, is full of orange and coffee groves, and studded with white cottages of great neatness. The plain of Corriteva, behind the mountains in this part of Brazil, extends to the source and near to the banks of the Parana, and is, perhaps, the most fertile and beautiful plain in the world. From this plain, the capital, and many other towns on the coast, are supplied with mules and cattle. They are of excellent quality, and there is no limit to their number.

The district of Bahia, in which St. Salvador is situated, is one of the best in Brazil, in a mercantile point of view. The soil is rich, and produces great quantities both of sugar-cane and tobacco, together with considerable indigo; but the last is of an inferior quality. The timber in the interior, about Bahia, is well adapted for ship-building, and is extensively used for that purpose.

The district of Pernambuco, to the north of Bahia, produces immense quantities of cotton, as also dye-woods, sugar, coffee, and rice. The country, from cape St. Roque to Guiana, resembles, in

---

How is the country generally characterized? The forests? Forest trees? What render the forests almost impenetrable? What animals in the forests? What of aromatic plants? Describe the climate. What of the mountains immediately back of Rio Janeiro? What of precious stones? Gold? Describe the vale of Picada. What of the plain of Corriteva? What of the mules and cattle? The district of Bahia? The soil? Productions? Timber? District of Pernambuco? Describe the country from cape St. Roque to Guiana.



most of its features, the latter country, except that the air is not so moist.

Rio Janeiro, the capital of Brazil, is a large city, containing about 150,000 inhabitants; its situation is singularly picturesque. That part of the city which lies low is unhealthy, and the streets are filthy, but the buildings upon the eminences are airy and delightful. The churches are loaded with costly decorations, and the people are fond of parade, processions, and pompous religious ceremonies.

Pernambuco is a place of large trade, the chief article of which is cotton. Population, 60,000. St. Salvador, or Bahia, is also a large and important place, exhibiting splendid edifices contrasted with dirty streets and very mean houses. Population, 120,000.

Tejuco is the capital of the diamond district. The diamond mines here are the principal in the western continent, and belong to the government of Brazil. Cuiaba, Villa Boa, and Villa Rica, are famous for their gold mines.

Brazil was formerly a province belonging to the king of Portugal. Don Pedro, the former sovereign of that country, removed to Brazil, over which he reigned, till a recent period, with the title of emperor, having resigned the sovereignty of Portugal. He has now returned to Europe, and the government is in an unsettled state.

The prevailing religion of Brazil is Roman Catholic. There is a great contrast between the rich and poor in this country. The European settlers are in general gay, and fond of pleasure, yet extremely observant of the ceremonies appropriated to the Virgin Mary, whose effigies are stuck up in a glass case at every corner. Cloaks and swords are sometimes worn by the men. The country people, who are not engaged in mining, live in small mud cottages covered with tiles or leaves. Hammocks usually supply the place of beds, and not unfrequently are substitutes for chairs. The best cottages are furnished with a table, but it is more usual for the family, at meal times, to sit upon a mat in a circle on the floor, with the dishes in the centre.

## 112. BOLIVIA.

*Map of the Atlantic Ocean.* Direction from New England? Direction of Potosi from New York? Boston? Mexico? Cuba?

*Map of South America.* Boundaries? What mountains in B.? In what direction do the Andes cross Bolivia? What desert in B.? What lake in B.? What is the capital? Where is Potosi? Direction from Santa Fe de Bogota? Rio Janeiro? Lima? Stabroek? Where is Chuquisaca or La Plata? Pilcomayo? La Paz? What of the Paraguay river? Bianco? Mamore?

## 113. BOLIVIA, CONTINUED.

The range of the Andes crosses the southwestern part of Bo-

---

What of Rio Janeiro? Streets? Churches? People? Pernambuco? St. Salvador? Tejuco? Diamond mines? What towns famous for their gold mines? What was Brazil formerly? What of Don Pedro? Government of Brazil? Religion? Describe the European settlers. The country people?

113. What of the Andes in Bolivia?

livia. These with other elevations give a rough and mountainous character to the western part of this country. In the northeastern portions, there are extensive valleys, and the eastern portions are sandy plains. The climate is cold and variable on the high grounds; on the plains it is mild and salubrious. Between the Andes and the ocean lies the desert of Atacama; this is a dreary wilderness, 300 miles in length, totally destitute of vegetation, and upon which there is said not to be one living thing. Among the mountains there are some fertile valleys; those in which Cochabamba, Tarija and Charcas are situated, are exceedingly fruitful, abounding in grain and wine



The mines in Bolivia are the principal sources of its wealth. The silver mines of Potosi have been the richest in South America. Lake Titicaca, 240 miles in circumference, is situated between two of the Cordilleras, and enclosed by surrounding mountains. One of the islands in this lake was inhabited by Manco Capac, the first inca of Peru, who was supposed to have received here his divine commission to become legislator of that country.

Potosi is situated on the southern declivity of a mountain, in which are the celebrated mines. The silver mines are said to have been first discovered by a slave, who was climbing the mountain in pursuit of a wild animal. Its population increased so rapidly after its mines were made known, that in about 1640 it contained 160,000 persons. From various causes the population is now reduced to 25,000. The immense wealth of its mines, which annually amount to several millions of dollars, renders it, however, a

---

What of the face of the country in the western part of Bolivia? In the northeastern part? The eastern part? Climate? What of the desert of Atacama? What parts of Bolivia are fertile? What parts abound in wine and grain? The mines of Bolivia? Those of Potosi? What of lake Titicaca? How were the silver mines first discovered? What of the population of Potosi? The mines?

place of great importance, and the centre of trade for the eastern provinces. The preceding picture gives a view among the mines.

La Paz is surrounded with sublime and beautiful scenery. Its chief article of trade is matte or Paraguay tea, of which a syrup is made, much used by the miners. Pop. 20,000. Oropeza is a large town, situated in a district which for its fertility has been called the Granary of Peru. Tarija is the capital of Chicas, a country abounding in grain and wine. In 1825, Bolivia became an independent country, with a republican government, being named after the celebrated Simon Bolivar. It was once a part of Peru, and subject to Spain. It afterwards formed a part of the United Provinces.

#### 114. UNITED PROVINCES.

*Map of the Atlantic Ocean.* Direction from New England? Direction of Buenos Ayres from New York? Washington? Mexico?

*Map of South America.* Boundaries? What range of mountains separates the United Provinces from Chili? Where is Salt lake? Anegada bay? Where is cape St. Marie? Corientes? Cape St. Antonio?

What is the capital? Where is Buenos Ayres? Direction from Santa Fe de Bogota? Lima? Potosi? Rio Janeiro? Where is Montevideo? Santa Fe? Corientes? Cordova? Mendoza? Rioja? Assumption? What of the Rio de la Plata river? Uruguay? Paraguay? Pilcomayo? Vermejo? Salado? Yuaues? Willows?

#### 115. UNITED PROVINCES, CONTINUED.

The northern portion of the United Provinces, including a great part of the territory, is still in the possession of the native Indians, and is imperfectly known. That part which is occupied by the whites, is divided into provinces. The western part of the country bordering upon the Andes is mountainous. The countries which lie between the Paraguay and Bolivia, extending into the middle regions of the United Provinces, consist of arid plains, impregnated with salt, sandy deserts, and pestilent marshes. Along the rivers, the soil is more fertile; and in some places is well adapted to indigo, cotton, and Indian corn; in others, there are forests, which produce vast quantities of wild honey.

The country on the east of the Paraguay is a fine, undulating, fertile region; immediately around Buenos Ayres, it is very fertile. To the west and south, extending to Patagonia, is the dreary level of the Pampas, which spreads out like a sea, presenting nothing but its crop of coarse, high grass to the view. The length of this plain is 1500 miles, and the width 500 miles.

The lands in the United Provinces are chiefly devoted to the raising of cattle. Immense herds of horses and cattle may be seen

---

Describe the picture. What of La Paz? Oropeza? Tarija? Government of Bolivia? History?

115. What of the northern portion of the United Provinces? Of that portion occupied by the whites? What part of the United Provinces is mountainous? What part consists of arid plains, marshes, &c.? What of the soil along the rivers in this district? What is produced in the forests here? What of the country east of the Paraguay? Of the country immediately around Buenos Ayres? What of the Pampas? To what are the lands chiefly devoted in the United Provinces?

in a wild state on the Pampas and the plains. The people take these animals with a rope called a *lasso*. This has a noose at the end, and is thrown by men on horseback with such unerring skill, that the noose invariably catches the animal by the neck or leg, according to the intention of the thrower. The engraving represents a scene of this kind.



Hides, tallow and wool, are produced in the United Provinces in abundance; various kinds of grain, tobacco, sugar, wine, and fruits, are plentiful. Paraguay tea, or matte, which is much used in South America, is also cultivated to a considerable extent. The mines of gold, silver, copper, and lead, are also prolific.

Buenos Ayres, situated at about 200 miles from the sea, may be considered as the only port of the United Provinces. Few ships can reach it, the river being full of rocks and shallows; large vessels unlade about ten miles from the city, and their cargoes are transferred to lighter vessels, which enter the town by the Buenos Ayres river. It is seated in the middle of a plain, on the south side of the La Plata. It is regularly built, and well fortified. Its streets are broad and well paved. Pop. 80,000.

Mendoza is situated on the Andes, and the most convenient pass over the mountains runs through it. Pop. 8,000. Cordova, in the interior, is noted for its mules. St. Juan, is celebrated for its trade in brandy. Tucuman is famous for its college and cathedral.

The United Provinces, like the other South American republics, was dependant upon Spain, but it has thrown off the yoke, and adopted a free government. The province of Paraguay has been for several years under the direction of Dr. Francia, who rules

---

What may be seen on the Pampas and plains? How are the wild cattle and horses caught? Describe the picture. What are the productions of the United Provinces? What of matte? What of the mines? What of Buenos Ayres? Mendoza? Cordova? Tucuman? What of the government of the United Provinces? Dr. Francia?

with absolute authority, and rigidly excludes all foreigners from his dominions.

## 116. CHILI.

*Map of the Atlantic Ocean.* Direction from New England? Direction of Santiago from Washington? New York? Astoria? Mexico?

*Map of South America.* Boundaries? Where is the island of Chiloe? Where is Mocha island? Juan Fernandez? Massafuero? St. Felix islands? Where is point Coquimbo? What is the capital? Where is Santiago? Direction from Buenos Ayres? Rio Janeiro? Lima? Potosi? Where is Valparaiso? Concepcion? Copiapo? Valdivia? El Juncal?

## 117. CHILI, CONTINUED.

Chili seems completely insulated from the rest of the world. On one side is the ocean; to the north, for a considerable distance between Peru and Chili, the Andes touch the coast, and form a natural barrier of precipices and snowy summits, with dreary wastes between. The ridges of the Andes on the east, between Chili and the United Provinces, are lofty and abrupt, and 14 of the peaks are volcanoes. To the south, the regions of Patagonia are wild and mountainous.

Chili may be described as a narrow plain or beach running along the sea, from which an elevated plain arises, which extends east to the Andes. The shape of the territory is long and narrow, being about 1,500 miles in length, and not over 200 miles at the greatest width. The climate of this country is healthy and delightful. In the northern portions, it seldom, and in some places, it is said, never rains; dews, however, are abundant. In the south, rains are frequent. The tops of the Andes are covered with perpetual snow; on the coast, snow never falls. Chili is crossed by about 70 small, rapid rivers, which descend from the Andes, giving great fertility to the soil. The principal rivers are the Salado, the Juncal, and the Valdivia.

The country has luxuriant pastures, the grass of which is so tall as to hide the cattle, of which there are numerous herds. Grain, sugar, cotton, oil, wine, and fruits, are produced in abundance, among which are apples and peaches of extraordinary size, some of the latter weighing sixteen ounces. The cedars of the Andes rival those of Lebanon; and the fruits and vegetables are of the choicest description. The myrtle attains the height of 40 or 50 feet, and the olive equals the largest trees in our forests.

The seasons are remarkably uniform in Chili; no part of the world is, indeed, more favorable to human life and enjoyment; and further cultivation alone is wanting to make it the paradise of the American continent. From May to September, the winter of the Chilian year, the wind blows from the north, accompanied by rain;

---

117. Why does Chili seem insulated from the rest of the world? How may Chili be described? Its shape? Length? Width? Climate? Rivers in Chili? The three principal? Its pastures? Productions? Fruits? Cedars? Myrtle? Olive? Seasons? What of the winds in Chili?

during the rest of the year, the wind is from the south, and is dry.

The mines of copper in Chili are very productive; those of gold and silver are situated in the snowy summits of the Andes, and the working of them is alike difficult and dangerous, from the situation, the extreme cold, the violent storms, and the frequent earthquakes. The gold and silver of Chili, like those of most other parts of South America, were the first objects that attracted the curiosity and cupidity of Europeans; but, compared with the produce of the soil, they are obtained at great peril, and small profit.

Santiago, the capital, is situated about 90 miles from the coast, and is bounded on one side by a hill, and on the other by a large plain. It is the centre of all the internal traffic of the country, and has 40,000 inhabitants. Its streets are wide and well paved, and the public buildings are large and handsome. It is well stored with every species of merchandise. The inhabitants are gay, hospitable, and fond of music and dancing. The following picture represents a party of Chilians engaged in dancing, which is a favorite national amusement.



Valparaiso is the principal commercial city in Chili; it is very flourishing, and has of late years attracted most of the settlers. It stands at the base of a steep hill. Pop. probably 10,000. Concepcion is situated on one of the finest bays in South America. Population about 10,000. Valdivia has the safest and largest harbor on the western coast, and is strongly fortified. Chillan, Coquimbo, Copiapo, St. Fernando, and Petorca are the other most important towns.

---

Copper mines? Gold and silver mines? What first attracted the curiosity of the Europeans? What of the produce of the mines as compared with the produce of the soil?

What of Santiago? Its streets? Buildings? Inhabitants? Describe the picture. What of Valparaiso? Concepcion? Valdivia? What other important towns?

The island of Chiloe is 180 miles long. There are numerous islands about it, the group being called the Archipelago of Chiloe. The island of Juan Fernandez is remarkable for having been the residence of Alexander Selkirk, a Scotch sailor, who lived there several years, with no other companions than the animals which he tamed. His adventures gave rise to the interesting romance of Robinson Crusoe.

The southern part of Chili is occupied by the Araucanian Indians, a tribe, brave, warlike and fond of liberty, whom the Spaniards for three centuries vainly endeavored to subdue.

Chili, formerly a Spanish province, declared itself independent in 1818, and has recently formed a republican government.



## 118. PATAGONIA.

*Map of the Atlantic Ocean.* Direction from New England? Mexico? Cuba?

*Map of South America.* Boundaries? Where are the straits of Magellan? Cape Blanco? Cape St. Lucia? St. George's bay? St. Mathias bay? What of the Camarones river? Rio Negro? Port Desire river? What mountains in Patagonia? How do the Andes lie in Patagonia?

## 119. PATAGONIA, CONTINUED.

This country is bounded on three sides by the ocean; it is cold and barren, and appears to be a region of perpetual storms. It has not been very much examined, and indeed the privations, to which a traveller would be subjected, are such, as seem well calculated to damp the most ardent curiosity. The eastern side is composed of sandy, rocky plains, which are almost destitute of vegetation.



The western side is mountainous, and contains extensive forests.

---

What of Chiloe? Juan Fernandez? What of the Araucanian Indians? History of Chili? Government?

119. Describe the face of the country in Patagonia; soil.

The climate is cold, and summer seasons seldom attain that degree of heat which we call temperate.

The vegetables are few. The inhabitants are the chief objects of interest. Though few in numbers, exposed to great hardships, and apparently at the very bottom of the scale of civilisation, they are by most voyagers, both ancient and modern, represented as considerably exceeding in height the standard of mankind in more favored climes. One of the most recent and minute accounts of them, represents the very shortest man that could be found, as measuring about six feet, while the tall men were about two feet more. The preceding picture exhibits some of these people. These remarkable savages are of a copper complexion. Like the other American Indians, they dress themselves in skins with the hair worn inwards. Though hospitable to strangers, they are of a warlike character and live a wandering life.

They have a small active breed of horses, and both men and women are excellent riders. They are almost constantly on horse-back pursuing wild game. The rhea, a bird resembling the ostrich, is the frequent object of their pursuit. They are very expert in the use of the bow and arrow, and manage a peculiar kind of sling with singular dexterity. They have the strange custom of drying the bones of their dead, which are then carried to the sea shore and deposited in huts, where they are surrounded with the skeletons of their horses.

## 120. ISLANDS.

*Map of the World. Map of South America.* Where is the island of Terra del Fuego? Cape Horn? Falkland isles? Georgia island? Sandwich land? South Shetland isles?

## 121. ISLANDS, CONTINUED.

Terra del Fuego is a group of cold, bleak, and desolate islands, where winter holds an almost uninterrupted sway. They have several volcanic mountains, and are inhabited by miserable tribes, who live in huts, clothe themselves in seal skins, and appear to subsist on the products of the sea.

On the map, southeast of cape Horn, will be observed several islands, the principal of which are the Falkland isles, Georgia island, Sandwich land, and the South Shetland isles. The Falkland isles are destitute of trees, and the attempts of the Spaniards to make them grow there have proved abortive. The islands are covered with sword-grass, and are resorted to for taking seals, which are common along the shores. The island of Georgia is covered with perpetual snow and ice. It is destitute of vegetation, and the lark is the only land bird that is known to inhabit it. Sand-

---

Climate; vegetables. What of the inhabitants in respect to number? Condition? Size? Complexion? Dress? Character? Habits? What strange custom have they?

121. Describe the group of islands called Terra del Fuego; the inhabitants; the Falkland isles; Georgia island; Sandwich land.



which land was discovered by Captain Cook, and remained for a long time the most southern land known. In 1820, the South Shetland isles were discovered, and have since been visited by numerous ships on account of the multitude of seals which they afford. There are doubtless other islands still farther south, but the intense cold has hitherto excluded the adventurous voyager from this empire of eternal winter.

## 122. SOUTH AMERICA.

*Map of South America. Map of Western Hemisphere.* What is the most northern point of South America? Eastern? Southern? Western? How many degrees of latitude between cape Vela and cape Horn? How many degrees of longitude between cape St. Roque and cape Blanco?

What three vast rivers empty into the Atlantic ocean? Mention the ten principal branches of the Amazon. What four rivers flow into the Orinoco? What two rivers form the La Plata? What are the five principal branches of the Paraguay? What two large lakes in South America? Describe the Andes. What mountains south of Guiana? What islands on the northern coast of South America? Eastern? Southern? Western? What of the nine divisions of South America? Boundaries of each?

## 123. SOUTH AMERICA, CONTINUED.

The extent of South America, from north to south, is nearly the same as that of North America. The extreme width is about 3,000 miles, but the average width does not exceed 1,600. Its surface embraces about 7,000,000 of square miles. The population may be estimated at from 15 to 20,000,000.

The face of the country in South America may be divided into three parts—the western, middle, and eastern. The western part consists of a vast plain, or plateau, elevated near 12,000 feet above the level of the sea, crowned with a vast chain of insulated peaks called the Andes. The middle portion lies to the east of this, and is several times broader. It is a great expanse of country, composed of marshy, or sandy plains, furrowed by three magnificent rivers, and their numerous branches. The eastern portion, embracing the eastern part of Brazil, is an elevated region, but less elevated and less in extent than the western plateau.

The climate of South America is very remarkable. In the low and level parts, near the equator, the temperature is always that of summer. The trees are clothed in perpetual verdure, the flowers are ever in blossom, and the fruits ripen at all seasons. In those parts which are well watered, vegetation becomes exuberant, animals increase, and reptiles and insects are multiplied without end. Never checked by the return of winter, animals and vegetables go on producing and reproducing, till the whole face of nature seems to be teeming with animal and vegetable life. The exhalations, which

---

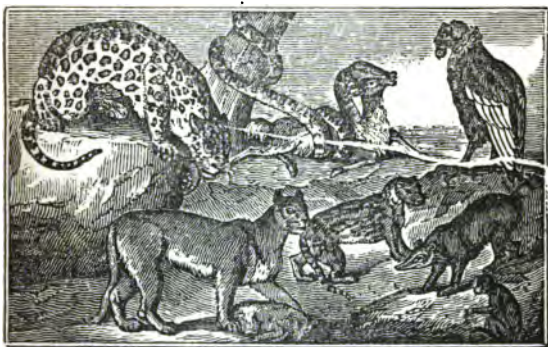
Describe the South Shetland isles.

123. Length of South America? Width? Extent? Population? Into how many parts may the face of the country be divided in South America? Describe the western part; middle; eastern; climate; climate of the low parts.

arise from the marshy soil and vegetable putrefactions, render the air extremely unhealthy.

In the elevated plains, the temperature is cool and delightful. Throughout the year, the climate has the charms of spring. On the mountains, it is still colder; and at the height of 15 or 16,000 feet, winter establishes a perpetual dominion. Thus in the same latitude, and within the compass of a few hundred miles, are three distinct zones, each having its own temperature, and its distinct classes of trees, plants, and animals. It must also be remembered that these climates never vary. There is no change of seasons, except from the wet to the dry. In the words of an eloquent writer, summer, spring, and winter are seated on three distinct thrones, which they never resign, each being surrounded by the attributes of its power.

Among the most remarkable animals of South America are the jaguar and cougar; the ocelot, the most beautiful of the cat family; the lama, a useful animal of the camel kind; various kinds of monkeys; the chinchilla, a kind of mouse, that furnishes the chinchilla



fur; alligators, 18 feet in length; various kinds of serpents, some of monstrous size; the rhea, resembling the ostrich; parrots and paroquets in great variety; the toucan and other birds of brilliant plumage; and the condor of the Andes; this species of vulture is the largest bird of flight in the world.

The vegetable kingdom in South America is in the highest degree rich and varied. Among the trees are the palm, cocoa, and banana, besides multitudes of others common to both temperate and tropical climates. The fruits are rich and abundant. Among the plants are a variety of spices, cotton, indigo, sugar-cane, coffee

---

Describe the elevated plains; mountains. What of three distinct zones? What of the uniformity of the climate. Mention the most remarkable animals of South America. What of the vegetable kingdom?

and matte. There is a great variety of flowering shrubs and plants; almost every species of grain is cultivated, and abundant crops are afforded.

In mineral treasures, South America surpasses all other countries. The quantity of gold and silver, annually taken from the various mines, amounts to many millions of dollars. The diamond mines of Brazil are the most prolific in the world. Various other precious stones, and a variety of other metals, are profusely yielded by this remarkable country.

The Spaniards, on the discovery of South America, found it in the possession of various tribes of Indians, generally of a more gentle and less warlike character than those which inhabited North America. They were perhaps of the same race, but the influence of a softer climate had subdued their vigor and courage. With the cross in one hand, and the sword in the other, the ruthless invaders took possession of the land. Peru, a populous empire of partly civilized people, was conquered by Pizarro, by a series of treacherous and intrepid acts scarcely paralleled in the history of mankind. The whole peninsula of South America fell into the power of the European governments. Spain took possession of the western portion, and Portugal of the eastern. For two centuries, the country remained in the possession of these two powers, with the exception of Guiana. The Spanish portion has lately become independent, and though the new governments are wavering and unsettled, yet it is to be hoped, that the inhabitants will soon experience the benefits which ought to flow from free institutions. The Portuguese part of South America was until a recent date under the dominion of a legitimate sovereign, but its prospects are now uncertain.

The prevailing religion of South America is the Catholic. The country is generally destitute of roads, bridges, and canals. Travelling and transportation of goods are for the most part performed on mules. The great mass of the people are poor, superstitious, and ignorant. Except in the cities, they generally live in low mud houses, and are indolent, vicious, and improvident. The Roman Catholic priests are numerous, rich, and powerful. The churches are costly, and decorated with prodigious quantities of silver and gold. The rich people of South America generally live in a luxurious and ostentatious manner, singularly contrasted with the poverty and degradation of the inferior classes.

## 124. CONTINENT OF AMERICA.

*Maps of the Western Hemisphere, North America and South America.* How is America bounded? How separated from Asia? How are North and South America united? What

What of minerals? What of the original inhabitants of South America? What of the invaders of South America? What of Pizarro? Into whose hands did South America fall? Which part did Spain take possession of? Portugal? What was the state of South America for two centuries? What of the Spanish portion of South America? The Portuguese part? Religion? State of the country as to internal improvements? Travelling and transportation of goods? The mass of the people? The Catholic priests? Churches? The rich?

great range of mountains runs through the whole continent from north to south? What names are given to the different parts of this range?

Where is Cape Farewell? Cape St. Roque? Cape Blanco? Cape Cod? Cape St. Antonio? Cape Fear? Cape May? Cape St. Lucas? Cape St. Francisco? Cape St. Louis? Cape Horn? Cape Mendocino? What group of islands between North and South America? What islands west of South America under the equator?

What straits between New Britain and James isle? Between Greenland and James isle? Between Labrador and Newfoundland? Between Patagonia and Terra del Fuego? What gulfs in America? What bays? What seas? Describe Rio del Norte; Mississippi? Mackenzie's; Ohio; Amazon; Rio de la Plata; Columbia.

Where is lake Superior? Winnipeg? Ontario? Huron? Erie? Slave? Michigan?

## 125. AMERICA, CONTINUED.

America is washed on all sides by the sea, except at the north. It is separated from Asia on the west by Bheering's straits, but the northern part of the continent has never been explored. Some intrepid navigators have lately passed through Baffin's bay, and, penetrating these icy regions, have proved the extension of the ocean as far as Melville island. But whether the eastern and western waters unite, and separate the continent from the polar regions, is yet a matter of total uncertainty. No human foot has yet been able to penetrate these fearful abodes of eternal winter.

The continent of America, from latitude 75 north to cape Horn, embraces about 130 degrees, making the length 9000 miles. The average width may be estimated at 1600 miles, and the surface is supposed to contain near 15,000,000 of square miles.

The whole of America, north of latitude 55, may be considered a frozen region. In Greenland, and around Hudson's bay, brandy freezes during the winter. The ice and snow accumulate on the land and water, and cover a great part of the country throughout the year. The winter begins in August, and continues for nine months. In summer, the heat is as great as in New England. It continues however for too short a period to bring grain to maturity, and the cultivation of the soil is very little practised. Vegetation is too scanty to supply the inhabitants with any considerable part of their food; they therefore live chiefly on seals, and other productions of the sea.

Between 55° and 44,° the climate of North America is still severe. In winter the cold is intense; and the snow, which begins to fall in November, remains till May. The summer advances with such rapidity, that the season of spring is scarcely known. In June, the fields and forests are covered with luxuriant verdure. Grass is abundant, and in some parts, grain is cultivated with success.

The temperate portions of North America may be considered as extending from 44° to 37° north latitude. These regions are

---

*Let the teacher examine the pupil in Tables No. 11, 12, and 13.*

125. What of America? What have navigators proved? What is matter of total uncertainty? Length of the continent of America? Width? Extent? What of America north of 55 degrees? What of Greenland, and the vicinity of Hudson's bay in winter? In summer? What of the climate between latitude 55 and 44? Winter? Summer? What may be considered the temperate regions of North America? What are the productions of these regions?

prolific in grass, grain, and various kinds of fruit, as apples, pears, peaches, &c. From 37° north to the latitude of 40 degrees south, the climate is hot, and the products are tobacco, indigo, cotton, rice, and various fruits and plants called tropical, as oranges, lemons, figs, pine-apples, sugar-cane, coffee, &c. Beyond latitude 40° south, the climate again becomes cold, and at Terra del Fuego, it is severe. At the Georgian isles, in lat. 54° south, the climate appears to be frigid.

It seems, therefore, that the temperature, in general, becomes cold or warm as we approach or recede from the equator. Here, beneath a vertical sun, reigns perpetual summer, and nature puts on a magnificent array of vegetation. As if enchanted by these regions, birds of beautiful plumage are seen in flocks amid the ever-verdant groves; monkeys are sporting on the trees; and lurking amid marshes and thickets are jaguars, cougars, and serpents of prodigious size. As we leave these countries, and proceed to the north, or south, there is a gradual change; not only does vegetation assume a less and less exuberant character, but the trees and plants are exchanged for others. The orange gives place to the peach and vine; these disappear, and the hardier fruits, such as apples and pears, are suspended from the trees. These again disappear, and forests of dark pine cover the land with gloom. These dwindle by degrees, until only here and there a stunted birch, or willow, the hardiest of trees, is found to endure the inhospitable climate.

But while the climate of a country thus chiefly depends upon its nearness to the equator, there are other circumstances which modify or change the climate of particular places. Islands and coasts feel the influence of the sea air, which is not only moist, but is neither very hot nor very cold; it therefore softens the severity of winter, and abates the heat of summer. Consequently, places exposed to its influence are rendered more temperate.

Great accumulations of ice and snow materially affect climate. The great masses of snow and ice in the regions of Greenland impart their chilling influence to the winds which visit us from the north, and constitute one of the causes of the greater coldness of our climate, than that of other countries in the same latitude. These cold winds, mingled with the sea breezes which come from the Atlantic, give that harsh and chilling quality so remarkable in the easterly winds of New England.

Mountains, which shelter a country from cold winds, render the climate warmer. In all parts of our country, the southern decliv-

What of the regions between 37 north, and 40 south? What of the climate beyond latitude 40 south?

What of climate as we approach or recede from the equator? Describe the climate and countries near the equator. What change is observed as we proceed north or south from the equator? Upon what does the climate of a country chiefly depend? What is the effect of the sea air? What other circumstance affects climate? What effect have the masses of snow in northern countries? What of mountains?

ities of mountains, and places lying south of them, sheltered from the north winds, are well known to be much warmer. So great is the difference observed in such places, that in some cases plants, which would flourish on the southern side of a mountain, would perish on the northern.

Elevation above the level of the sea is an important circumstance in climate. The city of Mexico, according to its latitude, should be excessively hot, but, being elevated 7,000 feet above the level of the sea, it enjoys a cool and refreshing climate like that of spring. Quito, which lies under the equator, has a similar climate. Within sight of this city, at an elevation of 15 or 16,000 feet, the tops of the mountains are so cold as to be covered with never-changing masses of snow and ice. At the distance of a few miles, the inhabitants of Guayaquil, living on a low and level margin of the sea, experience an intense and sickly degree of heat.

There is a range of mountains, running the whole length of the continent of America; a distance of near 11,000 miles, including its windings. This is the longest range of mountains on the globe. Beginning at the southern extremity of the continent, in latitude 54 south, it runs along the western coast of South America, and, crossing the isthmus of Darien, passes into Mexico in North America. After leaving Mexico, it continues in a course west of north, and terminates, it is supposed, in the Frozen ocean, in latitude 70° north. The different parts of this range are called by different names. The part in South America is called the Andes; the part in Mexico, the Cordilleras of Mexico; and the part north of Mexico, the Rocky mountains. The highest parts of this range are in South America and Mexico. There are many summits from 15,000 to 20,000 feet in height, and several of the loftiest are volcanoes.

America greatly surpasses the eastern continent in the magnitude of its rivers. In North America, the great rivers are Mackenzie's, St. Lawrence, Hudson, Mississippi, Rio Bravo del Norte, Columbia, and Colorado. The Mississippi, including the Missouri, which is its longest branch, is 4,500 miles in length, and is the longest river in the world. In South America are the Magdalena, Orinoco, Amazon, St. Francisco, and La Piata. Of these, the Amazon is the largest, its whole length being estimated at 3,000 miles. The whole extent of country, bordering upon this river and its various branches, is estimated at 2,400,000 square miles. This extent, called the Basin of the Amazon, is nearly equal to the whole of Europe, and is about a twentieth part of all the land on the globe. Toward the mouth of this river, it is so wide, that the

---

What other important circumstance in climate? What of Mexico? Quito? Guayaquil? What of the great range of mountains running through the American continent? What are the different parts called? The highest peaks? What of rivers in America? What are the great rivers of North America? What of the Mississippi? The great rivers of South America? The Amazon? Length? Extent of its basin? Width?

naked eye can hardly see across it. Its depth is 600 feet, and the tide is felt at more than 700 miles from its mouth. The quantity of water discharged by this river, is probably about equal to one-twentieth part of the whole volume emptied into the sea by all the other rivers of the globe, and nearly equal to the quantity discharged by all the rivers of Europe.

The number of inhabitants in America may be estimated at 40,000,000. They may be divided into four classes; Whites,



Negroes, Indians, and mixed races, called Mulattoes and Mestizoes. The whites are descendants of the Europeans. The negroes are the descendants of African slaves. The Indians, of a copper complexion, are the remnants of the aborigines, those who occupied the country at the time of its discovery. The whites constitute one half of the population; the negroes, perhaps, one eighth part; the Indians, probably, not more than one third, and are rapidly diminishing, while the whites and negroes are fast increasing. The number of the mixed races is inconsiderable.

A little more than three centuries ago, the inhabitants of Europe, Asia, and Africa, were totally ignorant of the existence of such a continent as America. At this period, the art of navigation was extremely limited, and mariners only ventured along the coasts. But Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa, entertained the bold idea that a vast extent of land lay far in the ocean to the west. So confident was he in this opinion, that he set about obtaining the means for ascertaining the truth or fallacy of his theory, by experiment.

Every where he met with ridicule and contempt. But though

---

Depth? The quantity of water it discharges? Population of America? How may the inhabitants be divided? What of the whites? Negroes? Indians? Mixed races? What of the inhabitants of the eastern continent a little more than three centuries ago? What of navigation at that time? Columbus?

regarded as a visionary, he still persevered, and at length Ferdinand and Isabella, sovereigns of Castile, in Spain, listened to his proposals, and furnished him with three small vessels and 90 men. With these he set out upon the trackless sea. Having sailed more than 2,000 miles, his men became disheartened, and refused to proceed. Columbus promised to return, if in three days land was not discovered. Favorable indications soon appeared, and on the 11th of October, 1492, Columbus, standing upon the deck, a little before midnight, descried a distant light.

The morning came, and land was before them. Columbus proceeded to the place, and had several interviews with the inhabitants, who now for the first time saw a ship, and people with white skins. It was one of the West India isles. Columbus carried the news of his discovery to Spain. Various expeditions were fitted out, and the whole continent was soon discovered. In due time, it was settled by colonies, and claimed as the possession of various European powers.

The origin of the American Indians has been a subject of much investigation, but the total absence of historical records among the Indians themselves, renders it difficult to arrive at any satisfactory result. It has been discovered that there are remarkable resemblances between some of the languages of Asia and those of the Indians, and hence it becomes nearly certain that they came from Asia. But at what period they came, it is impossible to determine. It is evident that they are a distinct people, being essentially different in several respects from any of the existing races on the Eastern continent. They have few customs, superstitions, religious opinions, or religious rites, bearing any analogy to those of any Asiatic nation at the present day. If, therefore, they came from Asia, it is nearly certain the migration must have taken place many ages since.

## 126. THE ATLANTIC OCEAN.

In which direction is the Atlantic ocean from America? Boundaries? In which direction is England from New York? How far is England from New York? What are the principal islands in the Atlantic ocean? In which direction is Europe from the United States?

## 127. SAILING ACROSS THE ATLANTIC OCEAN.

Having taken a view of the continent of America, let us bid adieu to our own country, and pay a visit to foreign lands. The only way in which we can leave America is by means of a ship. Let us imagine that we enter one of the fine packets at New York,

---

Who assisted Columbus to undertake a voyage of discovery? Describe Columbus's voyage? When did he discover America? What part of America was it that he first discovered? What followed the discovery of America? What of the origin of the American Indians? What has been discovered? What is rendered nearly certain? What is it impossible to determine? What is evident? What analogy between their religion and customs and those of existing Asiatic nations? What is therefore nearly certain?



and set out for Europe. Taking leave of our friends, we depart. The wind fills the sails, and we stretch away upon the sea. Steering in a northeasterly direction, we proceed on our way. The hills along the shore sink behind the water, and nothing but the



ocean is now spread around us. We could almost imagine that the skies above, and the deep beneath, were all that remained of creation.

Now that we are upon the broad sea, we have leisure to examine the map of the great ocean upon which we are sailing.

After we have been at sea a few days, the captain informs us that we are in the gulf stream. We shall discover, that the atmosphere now is very warm, that the water is several degrees warmer than in other parts of the ocean, and that a current is driving us rapidly in a northeasterly direction. On inquiry of the captain, he gives us the following information. There are various currents in the Atlantic, as well as the Pacific ocean; some of these are regular, while others are variable, and change periodically with the seasons. This current, which is now driving us forward, is called the Gulf stream. It is felt as far south as cape St. Roque, in South America. It runs along the coast of Brazil, and passes through the Caribbean sea into the gulf of Mexico; thence it issues at the rate of four or five miles an hour. It gradually diminishes in velocity, and at length its impulse is scarcely perceived. On striking the banks of Newfoundland, it turns to the eastward; and seems to lose itself in the eastern parts of the ocean. Such is its effect, however, that the mast of a ship, burned in the West Indies, was afterwards driven upon one of the northern islands of Scotland.

In crossing the ocean, we must expect to meet with our share of

127. Describe the picture. In what direction is England from New York? What of the gulf stream?

adventures. For several days we are surrounded with thick fog. The air suddenly becomes very cold, and the captain wears a look of the deepest anxiety. Night sets in; the passengers gather in the cabin, and make anxious inquiries of each other. There is no sleep in the ship this night. The morning at length dawns. The fog is blown away by a clear, northwesterly wind. Suddenly there is a cry through the ship. The voice of the captain sounds harsh and loud; the sailors put forth their utmost efforts.

The passengers look out, and see with astonishment an immense island of ice directly before the vessel, in her very path. With breathless fear they gaze on the scene, but the obedient ship now yields to the helm; with a graceful bend she turns her prow away from the iceberg. The moment of danger is past; the captain exclaims, "We are safe!" Joy spreads through the ship; silent thanksgivings ascend from the heart to Heaven. The rapid vessel speeds on her way, and the iceberg disappears behind the bending water.

The danger over, and every heart at ease, the passengers tell each other many tales of ships that have been lost by running upon icebergs. The captain expresses the opinion, that many of those vessels, which have gone to sea, and never afterwards been heard of, have thus been dashed to pieces, and sunk in the ocean. Among the facts related on this occasion, is the story of a ship going from England to America, that struck suddenly upon a floating mass of ice, nearly hid beneath the waves. Large seams were opened in the hull of the vessel, and she began instantly to sink.

The sailors and all the passengers jumped into the life-boat, save one gentleman, his wife and two children. The life-boat was full; the sailors requested the gentleman to jump into the boat, but, declaring that there was not room for his wife and children, refused to permit them to enter. "I will not leave them to perish alone," said the gentleman, and turned his back upon the sailors. The boat pushed off, the wreck settled rapidly in the water, and soon the smooth waves closed over the scene.

We continue on our voyage, with porpoises and whales sporting about us. In about 20 days from our departure, the captain, with his spy-glass, is keenly looking out for the rocky coasts of Ireland. At length the shore of Kinsale is in view. It was here that the Albion was lost, with a great number of passengers, among whom was the lamented professor Fisher, of Yale College.

Our captain is now all vigilance, and every sailor is on the alert. Soon we are in St. George's channel. The tall blue hills of Wales are on the right. A cannon is fired, and a small white sail is seen coming out from the coast. It comes nearer and nearer, and at length it reaches us. The pilot comes on board. The captain re-

---

What are icebergs? Are they dangerous to ships crossing the ocean? Describe a voyage from New York to Liverpool? What channel between England and Ireland?

signs the command of the ship to him. He knows every rock and current in this dangerous passage. Every sail is spread, and we proceed at a rapid pace. Beautiful green hills, chequered with hedges, are in view; this is England. A large dark city lies before us; it is Liverpool. We come near the wharf; a crowd of men and women are waiting for us; we step ashore, and our voyage is done.

## 128. ENGLAND.

*Map of Europe. Map of the Atlantic Ocean.* Where is England? Boundaries? How is the island of Great Britain separated from the continent? How is it separated from Ireland? Describe the Thames; Severn. What is the capital? Where is London? Direction from Boston? New York? Washington? From you? Where is Liverpool? Birmingham? York? Carlisle? Bristol? Bath? Plymouth? Newcastle? Norwich? Oxford? Glasgow?

## 129. ENGLAND, CONTINUED.

England is divided into 40 counties. It is beautifully diversified with hills, valleys, and plains, resembling the face of the country in New England. The climate is exceedingly moist, and there is a great deal of foggy and rainy weather. The extremes of heat and cold are less than in any other country in the same latitude, owing to its being surrounded by the sea. The winters are by no means as severe as in New England; snow is common, but it seldom falls to any considerable depth, and remains but for a few days. The frost is not severe, and the meadows often retain their verdure through the winter.

The soil is generally good, though there are extensive heaths and plains, which only furnish a meagre pasture for sheep. Nearly the whole surface of the country, however, is under cultivation. The lands are divided not by rail and stone fences as in this country, but by hedges, or rows of thorny shrubs, which give a very picturesque effect to the landscape. A traveller in England will not hesitate to pronounce it the most beautiful country on the globe.

Agriculture is carried to a high degree of perfection, and, in general, an acre of land is made to produce much more than in this country. The principal productions are grain, wool, cattle, horses, and culinary vegetables. The mineral productions are exceedingly important. The whole fuel of the country, not only for families, but for steam-boats, and multitudes of steam engines used in manufactories, is produced from the coal mines. Great quantities of coal are also exported. The copper mines supply, not England only, but many other countries. The tin mines are the most extensive in the world. Iron is so abundant, that it is used for fences,

---

129. Into how many counties is England divided? Describe the face of the country. What does it resemble? What of heat and cold in England? Winters? Snow? Frost? What of the meadows in England? What of the soil in England? Of heaths and plains? What of the surface of the country in England? How are the lands divided? What would a traveller in England say of it? What of agriculture in England? Of productions? Minerals? What of the coal mines? Copper mines? Tin mines? For what purposes is iron used in England?

lamp posts, window sashes, almost every species of machinery, and a great variety of uses, to which it is not applied in this country. It also supplies the material for the immense manufactures in hardware and cutlery. Lead is also abundant.

There are several famous mineral springs in England. These are resorted to by multitudes of persons in search of health. At particular seasons, they are thronged by crowds of the gay, the idle, the fashionable, and the dissipated. The most celebrated of these watering places are Bristol, Bath, Buxton, Cheltenham, Tunbridge, Scarborough, Harrogate, and Epsom.

England abounds in canals, which cross the country in every direction. Rail-roads are also becoming common, and may be regarded as one of the greatest improvements of modern times. On that between Liverpool and Manchester, cars filled with passengers are propelled at the astonishing rate of 20 miles an hour. The roads and bridges are excellent, the latter being generally of hewn stone. England is the greatest manufacturing country in the world. Woollens, cottons, silks, hardware, and earthen ware, are the chief articles of manufacture. Its commerce extends to every country on the globe. Its ships are seen on every ocean, in every sea, at almost every port.

The most ample arrangements are made in England for education. There are two universities, Oxford and Cambridge, which are more richly endowed than any others in the world. The schools of Eton, Westminster, St. Paul's, Winchester, Harrow, and Rugby, are nearly on the same scale as our colleges. There are multitudes of other schools, public and private, and in them all a long-continued, systematic, and thorough course of instruction is given.

Though education at any of these places is expensive, yet so general is the conviction of its superior importance, that the children of all persons in tolerable circumstances are well educated. The children of the poorer classes, by means of Sunday schools and the efforts of their parents, are generally taught to read and write. Immense numbers of volumes, consisting of the works of the best English authors, are circulated in every part of the kingdom, in the form of weekly or monthly pamphlets, at a very cheap rate. Even the poorest mechanics and laborers are in the habit of spending a considerable part of their leisure in the perusal of these publications.

London, the metropolis of England, is an immense city; being

What is said of lead? What of mineral springs? Who frequent them? Which are the most celebrated of these springs? What of canals? Rail-roads? Rail-road between Liverpool and Manchester? Roads? Bridges? What are bridges made of in England? What are the chief manufactures of England? What of the commerce? Ships? What of education in England? Universities? Schools? What is given in all the public and private schools? Is education expensive in England? What is thought of education generally? How are the poorer children instructed? What are circulated in the form of pamphlets? What is said of the mechanics and laborers? What is the extent of London?

seven miles in length, and five in width. The Thames passes through it, across which is one bridge of iron, and several of stone. An attempt has also been made to construct a tunnel, or road, under the river, so that persons, carts, and carriages, might pass beneath, while the river, with its thousands of boats, is flowing in its channel above their heads. This work is partly executed, but farther operations are at present suspended.

The eastern portion of London is called the city, where the greatest part of the business is transacted. This quarter is irregularly built; the streets are crooked, and many of them dark, narrow, and filthy. They are, however, full of people during the hours of business, and some of them are so thronged, that it is almost impossible to pass through them. Some of the remoter parts are occupied by people of such desperate character, that a person risks his life by going among them. The western part of the city, called Westminster, is better built, and the streets are broader.

The west end of the town is generally inhabited by wealthy people; the streets are regular, and the houses, though plain, and destitute of ornament externally, are within costly and magnificent. Among the public buildings, Westminster abbey, an ancient but sublime edifice, and St. Paul's cathedral, a noble modern building, are the most interesting. The parks, of which there are several near the city, consist of extensive grounds, ornamented with groves, and laid out with walks and avenues. These present views of palaces, and other costly edifices around them. They are often thronged with people, and thousands of the fashionable and the gay may be seen moving in all directions, giving an indescribable aspect of cheerfulness to the scene.

London is truly an astonishing place. Including the suburbs, it contains 1,200,000 people. It is the centre of an immense trade, and is by far the most commercial city in the world. There are also a great many institutions of a charitable and religious kind. One of these societies is devoted to the noble cause of distributing the Bible, and they have already circulated more than four millions of copies! There are several societies engaged in sending missionaries to various heathen lands, with the design of converting them to Christianity and civilisation.

Liverpool is the second city for commerce in England. A vast amount of cotton is sent from the United States to this port, which is used in the manufactories. Its trade with the United States and the West Indies is very great. Pop. 160,000. Manchester, 92 miles from Liverpool, is famous for the manufacture of cotton

---

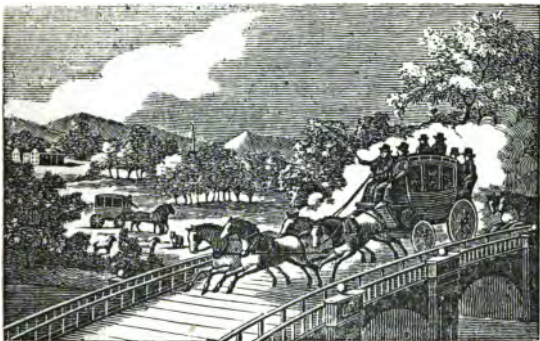
What river passes through it? What attempt has been made? What is the eastern part of London called? What is said of it? What of the western part of London? Public buildings? What are the parks? What is said of them? What is the population of London and the suburbs? What of its trade? Commerce? Societies? What is said of Liverpool? What is sent from the U. States to Liverpool? What of its trade? Population? For what is Manchester famous?

goods, calicoes, ginghams, chintzes, shawls, handkerchiefs, &c. The manufacturing establishments are generally in large buildings, with many windows, and at night, as you approach the town, it looks like an illuminated city. Pop. 134,000.

Birmingham is famous for the manufacture of locks, buttons, hinges, guns, swords, and other hardware. Leeds, Wakefield, Huddersfield, Norwich, and Exeter, are celebrated for the manufacture of woollens; Sheffield, for cutlery and files; Coventry for ribbons; Kidderminster for carpets; Nottingham and Leicester, for stockings; Gloucester, for pins; Worcester, for porcelain; Newcastle under Line, for its potteries.

Bristol had formerly an extensive trade with the United States and West Indies; Hull is known for its great amount of shipping; Portsmouth, as a naval station for government ships; Newcastle, as the centre of the grand coal-mines; Bath, as the most elegant city in England; York, as the second city in rank in the kingdom; Canterbury, for its antiquities, and its beautiful church; Oxford and Cambridge, for their universities.

When an American is travelling in England, he sees a multitude of objects which strike him as peculiar. He is surprised to see the women abroad in the open air, as freely as the men, many of them engaged in laborious occupations, which in New England are only pursued by men. The stage coaches, with twelve persons on the



outside; the admirable roads; the beautiful stone bridges; here and there the stately ruins of an ancient castle; the fine country seats,

What of the manufacturing establishments? Describe their appearance at night. For what is Birmingham famous? What places are celebrated for the manufacture of woollens? What of Sheffield? Coventry? Kidderminster? Nottingham and Leicester? Gloucester? Worcester? Newcastle under Line?

What of Bristol? What of Hull? Portsmouth? Newcastle? Which is the most elegant city in England? Which is the second city in rank in England? What is said of Canterbury? Oxford? Cambridge? What objects in England strike an American traveller as peculiar, and as differing from those of his own country? Describe the picture.

situated far back from the road, with a green velvet lawn in front, and an extensive park or forest spreading far over the landscape; the packs of twenty or thirty hounds, with several men on horse-back, peculiarly dressed, sweeping across the fields; these, and many other things, assure the traveller, that he is not in his own country, and that he is in no other than that England, of which he has been taught to read with the deepest interest from his infancy.

### 130. WALES.

*Map of Europe.* Where is Wales? Boundaries? Where is St. David's? St. Asaph's?

### 131. WALES, CONTINUED.

North Wales is a country of bleak mountains, generally destitute of trees, with dark ravines and deep valleys between. Some parts are highly picturesque, and there are spots which are finely cultivated. There are many beautiful, quiet villages, and some handsome country seats, and here and there a bustling town among the mountains. In South Wales, the country is hilly, but of a milder character than in North Wales. It is strewn over with habitations of all sorts, scattered, or in villages. The houses in Wales are white-washed, of the most brilliant whiteness, and almost every cottage has around it, its roses, honeysuckles and vines, with a neat walk to the door. Every thing shows that the people are happy and at ease. They are industrious, frugal and virtuous.



Wales is divided into 12 counties. Its mines of coal and iron are very productive. Its slate quarries are extensive, and slate is exported to the United States and various other countries. Wales

---

131. What is said of North Wales? South Wales? What of the houses in Wales? What is the character of the inhabitants? Describe the picture. How many counties has Wales? What of the mines? Slate quarries?

has few towns of note; the chief are Caernarvon, Swansea, and Cardigan.

### 132. SCOTLAND.

*Map of Europe.* Where is Scotland? Where is Murray frith? Frith of Forth? Where is the capital? Where is Edinburgh? Direction from London? Liverpool? Boston? From you? Where is Glasgow? Aberdeen? Paisley? Perth?

### 133. SCOTLAND, CONTINUED.

Scotland is divided into 33 counties; it is separated by the Grampian hills, or mountains, into two parts, called lowlands and highlands. The highlands are in the north and northwest. They consist chiefly of bleak mountains, almost wholly shorn of their forest trees, and covered with a low shrub, called heath or heather. They have a dreary aspect, and are useful only as pasture ground, for sheep and black cattle, a small breed valued for their flesh.

The mountains occasionally assume a grand, and, in some instances, a wild and rugged appearance; and the beautiful blue lakes, or lochs, and the little bright valleys, which lie low and still between them, often present delightful objects to the wanderer among these regions. As these mountains, lochs, and valleys, are woven



into the poetry and romances of Scott, Burns, and others, we have read of them from childhood, and associated them in our minds with all that is wild, pastoral and pleasing.

On the western coast are several islands, called the Hebrides. They contain many inhabitants, but these cannot speak English and are without education. They live by raising cattle, fishing,

---

What is said of the towns in Wales? What are the chief towns?

133. Into how many counties is Scotland divided? How is it divided into lowlands and highlands? Where are the highlands? What do they consist of? For what are they useful? What is said of the mountains, lakes, and valleys of the highlands? Describe the picture. What of the Hebrides?



and by killing sea fowl, and gathering their eggs from the rocks. To the north, are the Orkney and Shetland isles, where the inhabitants lead similar lives.

Of the mountains in Scotland, the Grampian chain is the loftiest. Its highest summit, Ben Nevis, is 4387 feet high, and is the most elevated mountain in the British isles. The Trosachs, at the outlet of Loch Katrine, an assemblage of "rocks, mounds, and knolls," are celebrated as being the scene of an interesting portion of Scott's "Lady of the Lake." Loch Lomond, the largest of the Scotch lakes, is 30 miles in length. It lies at the base of Ben Lomond, a lofty mountain, and is one of the most beautiful sheets of water in the world. On the eastern shore is a rocky cave, which was once the retreat of the famous Rob Roy.

The lowlands of Scotland are agreeably diversified with hills and plains. The latter are fertile and highly cultivated. The climate in the northern part of Scotland is very cold, and storms of snow, like those along the northern border of New England, sometimes visit it in winter. The western parts are subject to heavy rains, but in the southern portions, the climate is temperate.

The chief productions are coal, iron, lead, cattle, sheep, grain, and fish. The principal articles of manufacture are cottons, linens, woollens, and iron ware. There are several canals, the principal of which are the Caledonian canal, and the Forth and Clyde canal, both of which open a water communication across the country, from sea to sea.

There are four universities in Scotland; that of Edinburgh, which has great celebrity as a medical school; and those of Glasgow, Aberdeen, and St. Andrew's. Schools for the education of all classes are established throughout the country. The means of instruction in the Lowlands are very cheap and excellent, and knowledge is probably more generally diffused than in any other country. In the Highlands many of the people cannot speak English, and a large proportion are totally uneducated. The established religion of Scotland is that of Presbyterianism, which is the faith of a great majority of the people.

Edinburgh is one of the most interesting cities in the world. It is divided by a deep, narrow basin, once the bed of a lake, into the old and new town. The former is a crowded assemblage of antique buildings, placed upon a rugged steep hill. The streets are narrow, and some of the houses are eight, and even twelve, stories in height. They are filled with inhabitants, and at a little distance, an observer

---

Orkneys? Shetland Isles? What are the loftiest mountains in Scotland? What is the height of Ben Nevis? What are the Trosachs? What is said of Loch Lomond? Where was once the retreat of the famous Rob Roy? What of the lowlands of Scotland? What of the climate of the northern parts of Scotland? The western? Southern? What are the productions? Manufactures? What of canals? What are the four universities in Scotland? What of schools? Means of instruction? Knowledge? People of the Highlands? What is the established religion of Scotland? What is said of Edinburgh? How is it divided? Describe the old town.

might fancy it a vast bee hive, with its busy and bustling inhabitants, thronging its archways, roads, and avenues. The new town is regularly laid out, and built of freestone. It consists chiefly of the residences of the rich. It is very elegant, and has the freshness of recent construction. The contrast which it bears to the old town increases the beauty of the one, while it adds to the curious interest with which we regard the other.

At a little distance from the city, are Salisbury craig, and Arthur's seat. The latter is a high rocky mountain, which lifts its head far above the smoke and noise of the town, and seems to be gazing down with an inquisitive look upon the busy inhabitants. Near the foot of this mountain, is the supposed birth-place of Jeanie Deans, the heroine of the tale of the Heart of Mid Lothian.

Edinburgh is not remarkable for trade or manufactures. It is the place where the courts, which have jurisdiction over the whole country, hold their sessions. The assembly, consisting of clergymen and delegates from the various Presbyterian churches, also hold their annual meetings here. Edinburgh is the centre of learning and learned men, and is known abroad by its university, and the fame of its able and eloquent authors. Pop. 138,000.

Glasgow is the first city in Scotland for manufactures and commerce. Parts of it are handsomely laid out and well built; but its buildings are blackened by the smoke which proceeds from its manufacturing establishments. The cathedral is an ancient and imposing edifice, in the Gothic style. Population of Glasgow, 147,000. Paisley and Perth are famous for their manufactures of cotton and linen; Carron, for its iron works; Melrose, for its beautiful remains of an ancient abbey; Gretna Green, as the residence of a blacksmith, who marries runaway lovers from England; and Ayr, as the birth-place of the poet Burns.

### 134. IRELAND.

*Map of Europe.* Where is Ireland? Boundaries? What is the capital? Where is Dublin? Direction from London? Edinburgh? Boston? New York? From you? Where is Londonderry? Belfast? Galway? Limerick? Cork? Waterford? Kilkenny? Where is Cape Clear? Kinsale? What of the river Shannon?

### 135. IRELAND, CONTINUED.

Ireland is divided into four provinces, and these are subdivided into 32 counties. The surface of the country is moderately uneven, with few mountains. There are a great many peat bogs, or morasses, which supply the people with fuel, but are useless for other

---

The new town. Where is Salisbury craig? Describe Arthur's seat. Is Edinburgh remarkable for trade or manufactures? What is said of the city of Edinburgh? What is its population? What is the first city in Scotland for manufactures and commerce? What is said of Glasgow? Its population? For what are Paisley and Perth famous? What of Carron? Melrose? What is Gretna Green celebrated for? What is the birth-place of the poet Burns?

135. Into how many provinces is Ireland divided? Are these subdivided? What is the surface of the country in Ireland? What supply the people with fuel?

purposes. The climate is like that of England, though not quite as cold in winter, nor as hot in summer.

One of the chief productions is potatoes, which are excellent and abundant, and form the principal article of food for the poorer classes. Oats are extensively cultivated, and also constitute a great part of the food of the poor. Grass and flax are raised in great quantities; the latter is pulled before the seed is ripe, and therefore the people are partly supplied with seed from the United States. The principal manufactures are linen goods, which, with provisions, form the chief exports.

The Giants' causeway is an astonishing work of nature. It is on the north coast of the island, and consists of millions of perpendicular columns of stone, from 8 to 12 inches in diameter. These columns are generally seven sided, and are divided into lengths of about 18 inches; yet set upright one upon another, and so nicely fitted together, that a knife blade can scarcely be inserted at the joints. There are several acres of these columns, from 1 to 15 feet above the level of the sea. Part of them are covered at high tide. Near this place, the rocks along the shore rise to the height of several hundred feet, their fronts displaying, in one instance, irregular perpendicular columns, to the length of 30 yards.

Dublin is the chief city in Ireland. Some of its streets are truly magnificent, and its public edifices are numerous and beautiful. Its university is celebrated. The crowds of ragged and miserable wretches, who appear in every part of the city, however, tell a melancholy story of the poverty and distress which exist within and around it. The suburbs consist partly of streets of low mud hovels, through the turf roofs of which the smoke issues without a chimney. These are the abodes of thousands who are reduced to the most abject poverty. There are whole streets, too, within the city, occupied by the poor, which display the most heart-rending spectacles of sorrow, destitution and distress. Population of Dublin, 227,000. Cork is the chief commercial city in Ireland, and is the great mart of provisions for the country. Pop. 100,000. Limerick, Belfast, Waterford, and Galway are places of considerable trade, and the seats of extensive linen manufactures.

About four fifths of the Irish are Catholics. A great part of the land in Ireland is owned by large proprietors, who reside in England or other countries. They let their lands to men, who underlet them to the people on the hardest terms. The people are not only obliged to pay this excessive rent, but also to support their Catholic

---

What is the climate? What is the principal article of food? What are extensively cultivated? What is said of grass? Flax? What are the manufactures? Exports? Where is the Giants' causeway? Describe it. What is the chief city in Ireland? Describe Dublin. What of the suburbs? What of the poor in some of the streets in Dublin? What of Cork? Limerick? Belfast? Waterford? Galway? What part of the Irish population are Catholics? Who own a great part of the land in Ireland? To whom are these lands let? What of the people?

clergy, whom they love; they are also required by the government to pay one tenth part of their produce to the clergy of the church of England, whom they hate. After satisfying these various exactions, the people have little left to subsist upon; a few potatoes, and a small quantity of oat bread and milk, scarce sufficient to sustain life, is often the only reward of a family for a whole year's labor! The following picture represents an Irishman stripped by an officer of all his property; a scene not uncommon in this country.



The hard situation of the lower classes in Ireland has had the effect to degrade the people, who are naturally full of wit and acuteness. Children have seen their parents vainly struggling to rise above poverty, and attain ease and competence. They have therefore regarded poverty as their lot, and observing so many others to be in the same condition as themselves, have not raised their hopes beyond it. If a people thus situated are ignorant and vicious, and there is no doubt the lower classes in Ireland are so, we can easily trace the cause of it to their situation.

### 136. BRITISH EMPIRE—GENERAL VIEW.

*Map of Europe.* What sea between the British isles and the continent? What channel between England and France? Where are the Scilly isles? The isle of Wight? Isle of Man? Hebrides or Western Isles? Orkney? Shetland isles? Where is Land's End? What ocean are the British isles in?

### 137. BRITISH EMPIRE, CONTINUED.

The British empire consists of England, Wales, Scotland, and Ireland, and the adjacent islands. Its title is the United Kingdom

What is often their reward after a whole year's labor? Describe the picture. What effect has the hard situation of the lower Irish had upon them? What is said of the children? To what cause may the ignorance and vice of the Irish be attributed?

137. What does the British empire consist of? What is its title?

of Great Britain and Ireland. It has colonial possessions in every quarter of the globe—in Asia, in Oceanica, in Africa, in North America, in the West Indies, in South America, and in Europe.

The government of England is a limited monarchy. The king is hereditary; the people, having nothing to do with the choice of a king, take such a one as is born to them, good or bad. The king is not absolute, his power being checked by a parliament, which forms the legislative branch of the government. It consists of the house of lords, and the house of commons; the former is composed of peers who are hereditary; their titles and estates descending from the father to the eldest son. The commons are partly chosen by the people, though not in the equal and free manner in which we choose our officers in this country.

The king of England resides chiefly in London. He has several palaces there and in the neighborhood. He holds himself aloof from the common people, and is seen by them only as he chances to pass rapidly by in a coach, or on some occasion when he condescends to show himself in public. The persons whom he has chiefly about him are the nobility. Sometimes he holds levees, at which may be seen not only distinguished foreigners, but dukes, marquises, earls, viscounts and barons. These are the various ranks of the nobility, and most of the individuals are entitled to a seat in the house of lords.

The navy consists of about a thousand ships. About 200 of these are at present engaged in the service of the government, and employ 35,000 seamen. The naval force of this country is greater than that of all the rest of Europe. The army of England is extensive, and well trained. The bravery of her soldiers, and the skill and successful daring of her seamen, are proverbial.

The established religion is that of the church of England, or Episcopacy. All persons, of whatever religious creed, in England, Wales, and Ireland, are obliged to contribute to the support of this church. All other forms of worship are tolerated, and there are many Independents, Baptists, Methodists, Presbyterians, Quakers, and Unitarians. In Ireland, four fifths of the people are Catholics. In Scotland, Presbyterianism is established by law.

The government of Great Britain, in consequence of its various wars, has become involved in debt, to the prodigious amount of 800,000,000 pounds sterling, a sum equal to 3,500,000,000 of dollars. In order to pay the interest of this debt, and also to dis-

---

Where are its colonial possessions? What is the government of England? What is said of the king? His power? What does the legislature consist of? What of the house of lords? House of commons? Where does the king reside? What is said of him? Who may be seen at the king's levees? To what are they entitled? Of what does the navy consist? How many seamen are employed by the government? What is said of the naval force of England? The army? What are proverbial? What is the established religion in England? Who contribute to the support of the church? Are other religions tolerated? What is the religion of Ireland? Of Scotland? What is the amount of the debt in which Great Britain is involved? What is done in order to pay the interest of this debt?

charge the expenses of the government, very heavy taxes are laid, which often involve the country in great distress. Owing to the pressure of this debt and other causes, there are immense numbers of paupers. In the year 1815, they amounted, in England alone, to 1,000,000, which was about one-ninth part of the inhabitants.

### 138. FRANCE.

*Map of Europe.* In what direction must you travel to go from England to France? What part of the sea must you cross? Boundaries of France? What of the Seine? Loire? Garonne? Rhone? Saone? What is the capital? Where is Paris? Direction from London? Boston? New York? From where you are? Where is Rouen? Orleans? Nantes? Lyons? Bordeaux? Toulouse? Marseilles? Strasburg? Toulon? What bay on the coast of France? What gulf? What island in the Mediterranean, near the coast of France?

### 139. FRANCE, CONTINUED.

France is divided into 86 departments; most of which take their names from rivers within their boundaries. In the north, a considerable portion of the country is level. The central portions are undulating. In the southeast, there are mountains, where the country presents great diversity of surface. There are large tracts of land unfit for cultivation; yet, on the whole, France is a fruitful and beautiful country. The chief productions are vines, olives, and maize or Indian corn, in the south; and grain of various kinds, beans, potatoes, and fruits, in the north. The climate is very fine; more agreeable, less moist, and less changeable than in England. This country is celebrated for its manufactures of silk and wool, and for its various wines and brandy. These articles constitute its chief exports.

The principal rivers in France are the Loire, Garonne, Seine, Rhine, and Rhone. The latter is one of the most rapid rivers in Europe; its length is 500 miles. The Pyrenees, a range of mountains, divide France from Spain, and the Alps touch upon the southeast and separate it from Italy. The mount Jura chain divides it from Switzerland. The canal of Languedoc, the most celebrated in the country, is 148 miles long, and connects the Mediterranean sea with the bay of Biscay. There are several other useful and important canals. The island of Corsica in the Mediterranean, and some other small islands, belong to France.

The government is a limited monarchy, resembling that of England, though the king has less power. All religions are tolerated,

What is the consequence? What is the cause of the great number of paupers in Great Britain? What was the amount of them in 1815?

139. Into how many departments is France divided? From what do they take their names? What of the northern portions of the country? Central? Southeastern? Is all the land cultivated in France? What are the productions of the south? Of the north? What of the climate of France as compared with that of England? What is France celebrated for? What are its exports? What are the principal rivers in France? What of the Rhone? By what mountains is France separated from Spain? Italy? Switzerland? What of the canal of Languedoc? Are there any other canals? What islands belong to France? What is the government of France? What of religion? What sect is the most numerous?

but the Catholics are most numerous. There are colleges founded by the government in the principal towns. Scientific and literary associations are numerous. The National Institute of Paris is the most celebrated scientific association in the world. The common people in France, however, are uneducated. The French language is derived from the Latin, and being more generally spoken in Europe than any other, is that which travellers in various countries find most useful. It is peculiarly adapted to conversation, and a knowledge of it is an essential part of a finished education.

Paris is the most pleasing city in the world. It abounds in magnificent edifices, palaces, promenades, public gardens, fountains, and



places of amusement. The people have an air of peculiar cheerfulness and gaiety, and if a stranger chances to need information, the ready civility with which his request is attended to, is truly gratifying. The city is surrounded by a wall, and is entered through gates which are closed at night. The houses are for the most part from four to six stories high. They are built of freestone, obtained from quarries beneath the city. These vast excavations, called the catacombs, have been used as a depository of the bones of the dead, where they have been arranged in a fanciful manner. Paris is the chief residence of the king, and there the parliament meets. The king's library contains 400,000 volumes. The king's museum contains a most magnificent display of paintings and statuary. The king's gardens embrace the most extensive and complete collection of specimens in the animal, mineral, and vegetable kingdoms

---

What of colleges? Associations? What of the Institute of Paris? What of the common people? What of the French language? To what is it peculiarly adapted? Is a knowledge of it essential to a finished education? What is said of Paris? Describe the picture. Inhabitants? How is the city surrounded? How entered? What of the houses? What are the catacombs? Who resides at Paris? Where does the parliament meet?

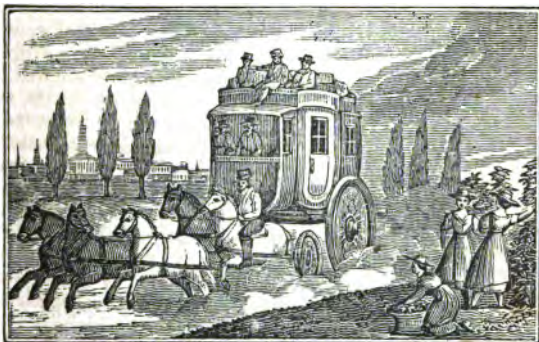
How many volumes does the king's library contain? Describe the king's museum. Gardens.

in the world. This gay city, which at first seems only made for pleasure and amusement, will be found on examination to contain within its walls some of the most scientific and profound scholars that any age has produced.

Paris sets the fashions for Europe, and in some measure for America. An immense trade is here carried on in articles of dress, by tailors and mantuamakers. Every week the female fashions are changed, and every month there is a new cut for male attire. Yet while they are so fickle in the metropolis, in many parts of France the fashion is unchangeable. People may at all times be seen in Paris from different parts of the kingdom, attired in the exact costumes of a century ago. Pop. of Paris, 890,000.

Besides Paris, there are many other large and celebrated towns in France. Lyons is renowned for its rich silk goods, and gold and silver stuffs; Pop. 160,000; Marseilles, as a seaport; Pop. 116,000; Bordeaux, for its wines; Pop. 94,000; Rouen, for its manufactures; Pop. 87,000; Montpellier, as the resort of invalids; Versailles for its palace; Pop. 30,000; Strasburg, for its cathedral, the spire of which is the loftiest artificial construction in the world; Pop. 50,000. Brest has a pop. of 26,000, and Toulon of 31,000. These two are naval stations.

The character of the French is the reverse of that of the English. The latter are reserved and haughty, the former are sociable and polite. The superior classes in France are very attentive to the exercises of dancing, fencing, and riding, in all which they excel, and their example is followed as much as possible by their inferiors. Politeness and good manners may be traced through all ranks. The



What is said of the scientific men in Paris? What trade is carried on in Paris? What of the fashions in Paris? In different parts of France? What other towns in France? For what is Lyons celebrated? What of Marseilles? Bordeaux? Rouen? Montpellier? Versailles? What of the cathedral of Strasburg? Brest and Toulon? What is the character of the French as compared with that of the English? Describe the employments and manners of the French.



civility of the men is emulated by the modest deportment of the women; and in fine evenings the streets and public places of the towns are filled with groups of both sexes, engaged in conversation, of which the French people are passionately fond.

The women of France take an active part in the concerns of life. At court, they are politicians; in the city, they are merchants and shopkeepers; in the country, they labor on the farms with the men. There is scarcely any operation in rural economy, in which they do not take a part: they may even be sometimes seen holding the plough in the field. They often perform long journeys alone, without the protection of men, and the discretion and energy of character which they display under such circumstances, is surprising. The lower classes of women never wear bonnets, and they may be seen at all times in the open air, with only a slight cap on their heads. The preceding cut exhibits a French diligence, and women at work at a vineyard.

#### 140. SPAIN.

*Map of Europe.* In what direction must you travel to go from France to Spain? What chain of mountains must you cross? Boundaries of Spain? What of the river Tagus? Duero? Minho? Guadiana? Guadalquivir? Ebro? What of the Pyrenees? The Cantabrian mountains? Sierra Morena? What bay north of Spain? What straits between the Atlantic and Mediterranean sea? What countries are separated by the straits of Gibraltar?

What islands in the Mediterranean, near to Spain? Where is cape Trafalgar? Cape Finis-terre? What is the capital? Where is Madrid? Direction from Paris? London? Boston? Washington? New York? From where you are? Where is Cadiz? Seville? Grenada? Salamanca? Toledo? Valencia? Talavera? Barcelona? Malaga? Saragossa? Tortosa? Carthage? Is Spain a peninsula? Where, then, is the isthmus?

#### 141. SPAIN, CONTINUED.

Spain is divided into 31 provinces, several of them being called kingdoms. There are many mountains in various parts of the country, and a great portion of the land is elevated. Its surface presents a beautiful variety of slopes, valleys, streams, and plains. In some parts, the scenery is wild and picturesque in a high degree. The climate is very mild and pleasant; the winter is gentle, and in summer the air is refreshed by sea breezes. Those parts watered by the rivers are fertile, but the soil is badly tilled, and large portions of the country are nearly uninhabited. The productions are wine, sugar, maize, wheat, rice, hemp, silk, olives, and various fruits, as oranges, lemons, &c. There are mines of copper, iron, and other metals.

There is no country more favored by nature than Spain, and industry might soon make it one of the richest and most productive portions of the globe. The manufactures are few; that of silk is the principal. The exports consist of silk; wool of a very fine quality, produced from the merino sheep, which are raised on the mountains; wines, figs, raisins, lemons, &c.

---

What is said of the women of France? Describe the picture.

141. How is Spain divided? What of the land in Spain? What does its surface present? What of the scenery? Climate? Soil? Productions? Mines? What is said of the country? Factures? Exports?

Montserrat, 20 miles from Barcelona, is a lofty mountain, near 4,000 feet high, of a very curious shape, on which is a famous monastery. This is a building where Catholics devote themselves to religion, and take a vow never to return and mingle in the affairs of the world. There are about 60 monks in the monastery of Montserrat, and higher up the mountain are 13 hermitages, which are buildings inhabited by hermits. These hermits are principally persons of distinction who have retired from the world. The Catholic church teaches that such seclusion is praiseworthy; and in Catholic countries, multitudes of men, called monks, or friars, and women, called nuns, are shut up in nunneries and monasteries, devoted to praying, fasting, penance, and various ceremonies. In Spain there are many of these institutions, and thousands are immured within their walls.

There are several universities in Spain, of which that of Salamanca is the most celebrated. Education, as well among the rich as the poor, is in a backward state. The government lends no aid, and the Catholic clergy, who have vast influence, oppose the diffusion of general knowledge.

The government of Spain is a despotism; a government in which the power is vested in the hands of one man. The king is absolute; he has generally exerted his power chiefly with a regard to his own pleasure, and with no enlightened view to the good of the people. The inquisition, a court which held its sittings in secret, and inflicted the most horrible tortures, was upheld in Spain for three centuries, but is now abolished.

The farther we pursue our inquiries into the state of different countries, the more evidence shall we gain, that the happiness or misery of a people depends mainly on the government. Spain is an instance of a great nation, occupying one of the most delightful regions on the earth, degraded, poor, ignorant and weak, through the bad influence of a bad government.

Madrid, the capital, and chief residence of the king, is 2,000 feet above the level of the sea, and is a magnificent city. Pop. 200,000. Cadiz, situated on the island of Leon, is the first commercial town in Spain. Pop. 70,000. Seville, on the Guadalquivir, was in ancient times the residence of the Gothic kings, and is said to have contained more than half a million of people. The population at present is 100,000. Gibraltar, a promontory, 1500 feet high, contains a fortress so strengthened by nature and art, as to be esteemed

---

Describe Montserrat. What is a monastery? What are hermitages? Who are the hermits who occupy them? What does the Catholic church teach? What is done in Catholic countries? In Spain? What is the most celebrated university in Spain? What of education? What influence have the Catholic clergy? How do they use it? What is the government of Spain? What is said of the king? What is the Inquisition? Upon what does the happiness or misery of a people mainly depend? What influence has a bad government had on Spain? What of Madrid? Cadiz? Seville? What is Gibraltar? What does it contain?

the most formidable in the world. This fortress belongs to Great Britain. Pop. of the town 12,000.

The language of Spain, a mixture of the Latin with Gothic and monkish dialects, is rich, stately, and sonorous. The people of Spain are of a swarthy complexion, and are as remarkable for gravity, and a sort of pensive dignity of deportment, as the French are for gaiety. In religion they are devoted Catholics, and pay great reverence to the priests. They are exceedingly polite, even



to the very lowest classes. Dancing is the favorite amusement, which is performed with great spirit and grace; it is practised in the country in the open air. Smoking is universal. A traveller remarks that it is as much a matter of course for smoke to come out of a Spaniard's mouth as out of a chimney.

Bull-fights are common in the large towns. People of all ranks and conditions crowd to these spectacles, and ladies of the highest rank are eager to witness these brutal exhibitions.

## 142. PORTUGAL.

*Map of Europe.* In what direction must you travel to go from Madrid to Lisbon? How is Portugal bounded? Describe the Tagus; Duero; Guadiana. What is the capital? Where is Lisbon? Direction from Paris? London? Boston? New York? From where you are?

## 143. PORTUGAL, CONTINUED.

This kingdom is divided into six provinces. The face of the country is diversified with mountains, valleys, and plains. The

---

To whom belong? What of the language of Spain? For what are the Spaniards remarkable? What is their religion? How do they treat their priests? Describe the picture. What of their politeness? What is the favorite amusement? What is said of smoking? What of bull-fights? Who attend them?

143. How is the kingdom of Portugal divided? Face of the country?

climate is fine; the soil fruitful, but badly cultivated; the productions are wines, honey, oranges, olives, figs, and other fruits.

Lisbon, the capital, has a fine harbor, and is one of the most commercial cities in Europe. It has a great trade in wines and fruits, with the United States, and England. A great part of the city was destroyed by an earthquake in 1755, but has been since rebuilt. Pop. 240,000. Oporto, the second city in the kingdom, gives name to the celebrated red wine called port, which is the favorite wine in England. Population 80,000.

In education, the Portuguese are even more backward than the Spaniards. They are devoted Catholics in religion. Their language is nearly the same as the Spanish. Their government is despotic.

The Portuguese have swarthy complexions, black hair, and dark eyes. The lower classes are more lively and industrious than the Spaniards. The fashion of dress with the women never changes. Milliners and fancy dress makers are almost unknown in Lisbon. Dancing is the favorite amusement. The peasantry live in miserable huts almost entirely without furniture; sit cross-legged on the ground without chairs, and feed on coarse bread and garlic. Beggars are numerous, and rather demand than beg. Grain is not threshed, but trodden out by the oxen; tailors sit at their work like shoemakers; and hair dressers appear at church on Sunday with a sword and a cockade! In visiting a person of any rank, it is necessary to wear a sword and a cocked hat, and go in a coach.

The following picture represents some Portuguese engaged in their favorite amusement.



Climate? Soil? Productions? What of Lisbon? What happened in 1755? What of Oporto? What of education in Portugal? What is the religion? What of the language? What of the government? Describe the Portuguese people. What of fashions? What is the favorite amusement? How do the peasantry live? What of beggars? What of the customs of the Portuguese? Describe the picture.

## 144. ITALY.

*Map of Europe.* Suppose you go in a ship from Lisbon to Naples, what ocean do you set out upon? What straits do you pass? What sea do you enter? What country do you pass on your right hand? What islands belonging to Spain do you pass on your left? Where is Sicily? Sardinia? Corsica? Lipari isles? Malta? Where is the gulf of Venice? Taranto?

How is Italy bounded? What range of mountains in Italy? In what direction does the range of the Apennines run? Where is mount Vesuvius? Etna? What of the river Po? Tiber? Where is Rome? Direction from Lisbon? Madrid? Paris? London? New York? Boston? From where you are? Where is Naples? Genoa? Florence? Turin? Leghorn? Taranto? Salerno? Bologna? St. Marino? Messina? Ravenna?

## 145. ITALY. SEPARATE COUNTRIES.

The peninsula of Italy is imagined to resemble a boot in shape. It was once the seat of a mighty empire, but is now divided among several governments.

Lombardy and Venice lie between the river Po on the south, and the Alps on the north, and belong to the dominions of the king of Austria. This territory is sometimes called Austrian Italy. Venice is the capital. Mantua, Milan, and Verona, are the principal places. Pop. about 4,000,000.

The kingdom of Sardinia embraces the island of Sardinia, and the northwestern portion of Italy bordering upon the Alps. Turin is the capital. Genoa, Nice, and Cagliari, are the principal places. Pop. about 4,000,000.

Modena, Lucca, and Parma are small territories called duchies, south of Austrian Italy. Modena is under the government of Duke Francis, of the house of Austria. Lucca and Parma are under the government of Marie Louise, wife of the celebrated Napoleon Bonaparte.

The grand-duchy of Tuscany is situated on the Mediterranean; the capital is Florence; Leghorn is one of the principal towns. It is under the sovereignty of Archduke Ferdinand of Austria. Pop. 1,300,000. The island of Elba, celebrated as the place of Bonaparte's temporary banishment, belongs to it.

The States of the Church lie partly on the gulf of Venice, and partly on the Mediterranean. Rome is the capital. Bologna, Ravenna, and Ancona, are the principal towns. Pop. 2,500,000. The pope reigns over the people of these territories as their sovereign. He resides at Rome, in a palace called the Vatican. Once, the power of the pope was more extensive than that of any king or emperor. His dominions are now reduced to the small territory which we are describing. He has authority however, in spiritual matters, over the members of the Catholic church in all countries.

---

145. What does the peninsula of Italy resemble? What was it once? How is it now divided? What of Lombardy and Venice? What are they sometimes called? What is the capital? What are the principal places in Austrian Italy? What is the population? What of the kingdom of Sardinia? Capital? Chief towns? Population? What of Modena? Lucca? Parma? What of the grand-duchy of Tuscany? Capital? Principal town? Under whose sovereignty is it? Population? What island belongs to it? For what is the island of Elba celebrated? Where are the States of the Church? Capital? Principal towns? Who is the sovereign? Where does he reside? What of the pope? His former and present power?

Most of the Catholics hold the opinion that the pope cannot err in religious matters, and submit implicitly to his ecclesiastical decrees.



They hold that he is the lawful successor of St. Peter, and that to him are committed the keeping of the keys of heaven. By virtue of authority thus derived, he is supposed to have the privilege of granting pardon for sin, and of giving indulgences, which remove the liability to punishment in a future state.

The republic of St. Marino occupies a mountain, and a surrounding district of forty miles, within the pope's territories. The people elect their magistrates, but are under the pope's protection. The inhabitants are a simple, industrious people, who have maintained their independence for a thousand years. Pop. 7,000.

The kingdom of Naples, or the two Sicilies, include all Italy south and west of the pope's dominions, together with the island of Sicily. Naples is the capital, Taranto, Palermo, Salerno, and Syracuse, are the principal towns. The population of Naples is 6,700,000. The government is despotic.

#### 146. ITALY. GENERAL VIEW.

A large portion of Italy is mountainous. Its scenery is beautiful, and greatly diversified. Austrian Italy consists principally of a fertile plain. A great part of the soil is fruitful, and under high cultivation, particularly on the north. It abounds in the richest productions—wine, corn, silk, oil, and various fruits. Its climate is the finest in Europe.

Mount Etna, on the island of Sicily, is one of the most celebrated volcanoes in the world. Its height is about two miles, and its

---

What do the Catholics believe? Describe the picture. Population of the States of the Church? What of the republic of St. Marino? Inhabitants? Population? What of the kingdom of Naples? Capital? Principal towns? Population? Government?

146. Face of the country in Italy? Soil? Productions? Climate? Describe mount Etna.

lava has been thrown to the distance of thirty miles. Large stones have been projected from its mouth 7,000 feet into the air. Its various eruptions have been the theme of wonder and astonishment for ages. The sides of this mountain are fertile, and the lower parts are occupied with towns and villages, which are constantly liable to be overwhelmed by the volcano. Vesuvius, within sight of the city of Naples, is another remarkable volcanic mountain, 4,000 feet high. Herculaneum and Pompeii, two ancient cities in the vicinity of Naples, were overwhelmed, in the year 79, by an eruption of this mountain, and remained buried beneath the lava for more than 1600 years. The lava has been partly removed, and whole streets, with various works of art, have been found in a remarkable state of preservation. Stromboli, a volcano of the Lipari isles, emits flames, which may be seen at night at the distance of 100 miles. It is sometimes called the lighthouse of the Mediterranean.

Naples, the largest city in Italy, is alike celebrated for the surpassing beauty of its bay, and the delightful scenery around it. On approaching the city, Vesuvius is in view in the back ground, while olive and orange groves, vineyards, villas, and villages, occupy the hills, which slope down to the water. The population of Naples is about 350,000. Rome is perhaps the most renowned spot on the globe. Though now reduced, it retains many features of its former greatness, and its gloomy ruins still testify to the splendor of its ancient edifices. St. Peter's church is esteemed the finest in the world. It has been finished about 200 years, and was 100 years in building. Its length is 720 feet, its height 500, its width 510. It is at least sixty times as large as the common meeting-houses in New England. The population of Rome is about 140,000.

Florence, situated on the river Arno, in a delightful valley, is accounted one of the most beautiful cities in the world. Genoa is celebrated for its beautiful bay, and the fine prospect exhibited on approaching it. It has been styled the city of a thousand palaces. Venice, built on a hundred islands at the head of the Adriatic sea, or gulf of Venice, was once a city of vast commerce. It has greatly declined, but it still abounds with costly edifices, and magnificent works of art. Pop. 110,000. Milan has one of the most beautiful churches in the world.

There are many other places in Italy worthy of note, either for their beauty, their works of art, their ruins, or their remarkable history. Remains of ancient temples, amphitheatres, triumphal arches, bridges, aqueducts, fountains, and roads, some of them evincing

---

Vesuvius. When and how were Herculaneum and Pompeii destroyed? What have been found on removing the lava? What of Stromboli? What is it sometimes called? Describe the city of Naples; Rome; St. Peter's church. Population of Rome? What of Florence? Genoa? Venice? Milan? Are there many other places worthy of note? What are found in various parts of Italy?

great taste and skill, and others evidently the fruit of vast labor, are found in various parts of this celebrated land.

In most of the large towns there are rich and valuable collections of paintings and sculpture, in which the artists of Italy have excelled all other nations. Attracted by its delightful climate, its interesting vestiges of antiquity, and its admirable works of art, hundreds of persons from various parts of Europe, annually visit it, and many foreigners select it as the place of their permanent abode. Yet Italy wears a melancholy aspect; the cities are thronged with beggars; society is deeply contaminated with vice; the buildings have a look of decay and dilapidation; and all around declares that this beautiful country languishes under the malady of a despotic government.

The language of Italy is derived originally from the Latin, and is the most elegant and melodious of modern languages. It is particularly adapted to vocal music, in which the Italians are acknowledged to excel all other nations. It is not uncommon to see persons in the streets who sing songs which are composed at the moment.



In their external deportment, the Italians have a grave solemnity of manner, which is sometimes thought to arise from natural gloominess of disposition; but they are nevertheless cheerful, and give themselves up with ardor to every pleasure. Under every form of government, they seem to acquiesce, and conceal their sentiments by a rigid silence. Duplicity is a striking characteristic of the people. They are Catholics, and pay great reverence to images, which are set up at the corners of all the streets. They mingle licentiousness and superstition in a remarkable degree.

---

What do most of the large towns contain? Why do so many foreigners visit Italy? What of the cities? Society? Buildings? What does all around declare? What of the language of Italy? To what is it particularly adapted? Describe the picture. What is the character of the Italians?



## 147. TURKEY IN EUROPE.

*Map of Europe.* Suppose you go from Naples to Constantinople, by water, in what sea do you make the voyage? What straits do you pass between Sicily and Italy? What cape do you pass at the southern point of Greece? What large island do you pass on the right? What group of islands do you pass? What straits do you go through between Asia Minor and Turkey?

What sea do you next pass through? How is Turkey in Europe bounded? What mountains in Turkey? What of the river Danube? The Pruth? Capital? Direction of Constantinople from Rome? Madrid? Paris? London? Boston? New York? From you? Where is Adrianople? Shumla? Sophia? Bucharest? Varna?

## 148. TURKEY IN EUROPE, CONTINUED.

The northern parts of Turkey are of a level character; toward the south, the country is greatly diversified with lofty mountains, hills and valleys. The southern border, lying along the sea, is generally level. The climate is delightful, and the soil fertile in a high degree. Great portions of the country are left uncultivated and unproductive, through the indolence of the people. Large quantities of grain, silk, wine, and fruits, are, however, produced. The principal manufactures are Turkey carpets, muslins, crapes, gauzes, brass, cannon, muskets, pistols, and swords. The exports include these articles, as well as wine, corn, oil, figs, currants, wool, camels' hair, &c.

The advantages of this country for agriculture and commerce, are unrivalled, but such is the influence of its capricious and cruel government, that the people feel little incitement to industry or enterprise. Education is at a very low ebb; literature, the arts, and sciences are totally neglected.

The Turks are believers in Mahomet, an Arabian, who lived about 1200 years ago. He called himself the Prophet of God, and,



148. What is the face of the country in the northern parts of Turkey? Southern? What is the climate? Soil? Productions? Manufactures? Exports? What of the country? People? What of education? In whom do the Turks believe? Who was Mahomet?

under the pretended influence of Divine inspiration, wrote a book, called the Koran, which is the foundation of Mahometan faith, as the Bible is the foundation of the Christian faith.

The government is despotic. The sovereign is called sultan, or grand seignor; his will alone is the law of the land, and he disposes of the lives and property of his subjects at pleasure. This power is sometimes exercised with atrocious cruelty. The prime minister of the sultan, the second officer in the government, is called the grand vizier. The court is sometimes called the Ottoman Porte, or the Sublime Porte. The present sultan, Mahmoud II., is deemed a wiser prince than his predecessors; he has adopted many European improvements, and discarded many of the absurd customs of his country. The preceding cut gives a picture of him.

Constantinople is the metropolis of the Turkish empire, and the residence of the sultan. It is beautifully situated on the west side of the Bosphorus, a strait, which connects the Black sea with the sea of Marmora. The city is surrounded by a wall for defence, and its harbor is one of the best in the world. The commerce of Constantinople is very extensive. It has 300 mosques, or Mahometan places of worship; St. Sophia is the most magnificent of them. The seraglio consists of a number of palaces and gardens, enclosed by a wall, and occupied by the sultan and the officers of the government. One part of the seraglio is called the harem, where the wives of the sultan, of which he has sometimes 300, are kept. This city, being built chiefly of wood, sometimes suffers greatly from fires, and it is visited almost every season by a disease called the plague, which is fatal to multitudes of people. The population is 500,000.

Adrianople, in the midst of a fertile region, has considerable trade. Population, 100,000. Bucharest is a large town; Belgrade is strongly fortified; Shumla, and Varna, are famous for events in which they had a part, during the late war with Russia.

The language of the Turks is a mixture of various dialects. They derive their origin from a branch of the Huns, a people who anciently inhabited Independent Tartary. They took possession of Constantinople about 400 years ago, which has ever since been the metropolis of the empire. The Turks are short, stout, and swarthy, with black eyes. They wear their beards unshaved, but shave their heads, except a lock upon the crown. They wear white turbans instead of hats, which they lay aside only to sleep. They wear loose robes instead of coats. Their appearance is dignified, graceful, and imposing. In character, the Turks are grave,

---

What of the Koran? What is the government? What is the sovereign called? What of his power? Who is the grand vizier? What is the court called? What of the present sultan? Describe the picture. What of Constantinople? How situated? How surrounded? What of its harbor? Commerce? Mosques? Seraglio? From what does Constantinople suffer? With what disease is it visited every season? Population? What of Adrianople? Bucharest? Belgrade? Shumla? Varna? What of the language of the Turks? From whom do they derive their origin? Describe the Turks. What is their character?

indolent, and addicted to jealousy, which leads them to acts of violence and cruelty. They are hospitable to strangers, and caravansaries, or public inns, are established by the government in almost every village, where travellers may be gratuitously entertained for three days. In religion, the Turks are intolerant; they call all who do not believe the Koran, infidels; and esteem it lawful to take their lives and property, if they refuse to be converted to the Mahometan faith. The Turks sit crosslegged, on cushions or sofas; eat without knives and forks; refuse wine, but intoxicate themselves with opium. Such are the indolent habits of the people, that even a carpenter sits at his work, and holds the board upright with his toes, while he saws it. Chess and draughts are their favorite amusements. They are fond of war, are dexterous horsemen, and in the first onset of battle, are daring even to rashness; but their courage is not patient, nor lasting.

#### 149. GREECE.

*Map of Europe.* Boundaries? What of the Morea? Of Negropont? Scio, or Chios? Samos? Patmos? What is the capital? Where is Napoli? Direction from Constantinople? Paris? London? Washington? New York? Boston? From where you are? Where is Corinth? Missolonghi? Athens? Larissa? What cluster of islands between Greece and Asia Minor?

#### 150. GREECE, CONTINUED.

Greece consists of a small peninsula projecting into the Mediterranean, together with numerous islands in its vicinity. This country, which, 3000 years ago, was the seat of one of the most



polished nations of antiquity, has been for centuries subjected to

What of caravansaries? What is the religion of Turkey? What are those esteemed who do not believe the Koran? What of the manners of the Turks? What of their indolence? Amusements? Courage?

150. Of what does Greece consist? What of this country?

the odious servitude of Turkey. Within a few years, the people have made a gallant, and successful effort for independence. The preceding engraving represents a Turk flying from the country pursued by a Greek.

The interior of Greece is greatly diversified with rugged mountains, and with fertile and picturesque vales. Along the shores, there are beautiful plains, the soil of which is fruitful, and the climate delightful. There are many inlets and bays, affording great facilities for commerce, and presenting strong inducements to navigation. In various parts of Greece, there still remain many interesting monuments of antiquity. The ruins of temples known to have been built 3000 years ago, exist at the present day. It is remarkable that these remains exhibit a style of architecture, common in that remote age, more truly chaste and beautiful, than has been since devised. After all the improvements of modern times, we are obliged to admit, that the ancient Greeks are our masters in this noble art.

Athens, one of the most celebrated cities of antiquity, and the birth-place of some of the most renowned orators, philosophers and generals of those remote ages, is now a small town of poor, mean houses, strangely contrasted with the sublime relics of its ancient splendor. Pop. 10,000. Corinth, formerly one of the most flourishing cities of Greece, now contains but 1,300 inhabitants.

The modern Greeks are of what is called the Greek church: this religion resembles the Catholic in many of its doctrines, rites and ceremonies. The people do not use images, but pictures, in worship; they are very superstitious, believing in dreams, omens, and prodigies. They have venerated caverns, sacred groves, consecrated springs, are great observers of fasts, and are kept in constant awe by their priests.

The Greeks are in character very unlike the Turks. They are lively, active, enterprising, and industrious; lovers of the arts, skillful, cunning, and deceitful in trade; they are fond of dress, delight in whatever is beautiful, are easy and eloquent in their speech, and warm and passionate in their feelings. The women are delicate and beautiful, and are exceedingly fond of jewels. The houses of the poorer Greeks are low, inconvenient mud cabins; the better houses are one story, of stone, with large gardens.

## 151. IONIAN REPUBLIC.

*Map of Europe.* Where are the Ionian isles? Direction of Zante from Constantinople? London? New York?

---

What have the people done within a few years? Describe the picture. Face of the country in the interior? On the shores? Soil? Climate? What of inlets and bays? What still remain in many parts of Greece? What is remarkable concerning architecture? What must we admit? Describe Athens; population; Corinth; population; religion of the modern Greeks; their usages; superstitions; observances. Who keep them in awe? Character of the Greeks? Women? Houses?

## 152. IONIAN REPUBLIC, CONTINUED.

The seven Ionian isles, Corfu, Cephalonia, Zante, St. Maura, Cerigo, Ithaca, and Paxu, form a small republic, under the protection of Great Britain. The people amount to about 175,000, and are chiefly Greeks and Italians.

They are sagacious and enterprising, and carry on considerable commerce in wine, olive oil, and distilled spirits, the fruits of their own industry. Their president is appointed by the king of England.

## 153. SWITZERLAND.

*Map of Europe.* In what direction is Switzerland from Greece? Boundaries? What lakes? What mountains between Switzerland and Italy? Capital? Direction of Berne from Constantinople? Athens? Rome? London? Madrid? Paris? New York? From you? Where is Geneva? Zurich?

## 154. SWITZERLAND, CONTINUED.

Switzerland is divided into 22 cantons; it is a country of lofty mountains, many of whose peaks are always crowned with snow. Between these mountains are deep and awful chasms, threatening precipices, wild and dark ravines, with here and there a quiet lake, and occasionally a peaceful and fertile valley. Switzerland is full of wonders, and is as much visited on account of its astonishing works of nature, as Italy is for its ruins and its productions of art.

The glaciers of Switzerland are vast masses of ice, which have been accumulating in the higher parts of the mountains for ages. Nothing can be more striking than their appearance from the valleys. Their shapes are often beautiful, sometimes presenting the image of a city of crystal, with its towers, spires, and turrets, glittering in the sun. The avalanches are heaps of snow and ice, which are piled up in winter, and, as spring approaches, are loosened from their lofty elevations; and, descending with awful violence, often bury the unwary traveller, and sometimes whole villages, beneath their prodigious masses. Parts of mountains have been undermined, and precipitated into the valleys.

It would seem that a country like this would be almost uninhabitable. But the Swiss have not only built towns and cities along the borders of their beautiful lakes, but they have planted villages in their narrow valleys, and even beneath the impending glaciers. The traveller, as he passes between the rugged mountains, may see houses and churches grouped together on their sides, one above another, apparently having no broader foundation than the points of cliffs upon which they seem suspended. Yet the people live

152. What are the seven Ionian isles? What do they form? Under whose protection are they? What of the people? Their character? Commerce? Who appoints their president?

154. How is Switzerland divided? Face of the country? Why is it much visited? Describe the glaciers; avalanches. What is the effect when an avalanche descends? Where have the Swiss placed their habitations? What of the people?

happily and cheerfully, and prefer their country to every other. They cultivate vineyards on the rocky slopes of the hills and mountains, and raise wheat and cattle to some extent. Their climate is about as cold as that of New England, and in the higher parts it is still colder. Among the mountains, great quantities of snow fall in winter, and the roads in many parts are impassable for several months.

The lake of Geneva, or lake Lemman, is one of the most beautiful pieces of water in the world: the lake of Constance is also celebrated for its beautiful scenery. Lakes Neufchatel, Lucerne, Zug, and Zurich, are the other lakes of Switzerland.

The Alps overspread the whole of the southern part of Switzerland. Mont Blanc is the most celebrated peak. It is always covered with snow, and is visible from almost all parts of Switzerland. When a traveller is in this country, this mountain seems to follow him every where; it never looks distant, but appears to approach, and peep over the hills and mountains, as if to watch his steps, and pry into his secrets. Both the Rhine and Rhone have their sources in the Alps.

There is a university at Geneva of considerable distinction; another at Basle; and colleges at Zurich, Berne, Lucerne, and Schaffhausen. The celebrated Pestalozzi established his school in this country, and his valuable ideas on education are extensively disseminated. The school of Fellenberg, at Hofwyl, five miles from Berne, has great celebrity, and is the model on which many other schools in Europe and America have been formed. Common education is universally attended to in Switzerland.

The Swiss are partly Catholics, and partly Calvinists and Unitarians. Their government is republican, each canton being independent; but for common safety they are united in a confederacy, governed by what is called a Diet, who meet at Berne. The sovereignty of Neufchatel belongs to the present king of Prussia, who appoints the governor.

Geneva is the most celebrated of the Swiss towns. It is delightfully situated at the southern point of the lake of Geneva. From the city is a sublime view of the distant Alps, their points covered with snow, mont Blanc towering above them all, and lifting its dazzling front over the clouds. The city is surrounded by a wall. Among its citizens are some of the most learned men in Europe. It was the birth-place of Rousseau, and the place where Calvin resided. Pop. 25,000.

---

Are they fond of their country? What is cultivated by them? What is the climate? What of snow? Roads? What of the lake of Geneva? Lake Constance? Neufchatel? Lucerne? Zug? Zurich? What of the Alps? What is the most celebrated peak? Describe mont Blanc. What of the Rhine? Rhone? What of universities? Colleges? What of Pestalozzi? The school of Fellenberg? Common education? What is the religion of the Swiss? What is the government? What of the canton of Neufchatel? What of Geneva? Where is it situated? What view is there to be seen from Geneva? How is it surrounded? What of learned men? What of Rousseau? Calvin? Population?

Berne is a pleasant, well built city; on entering it, a traveller is struck with its singular neatness and beauty. Basle is beautifully situated on the banks of the Rhine, and has a fine cathedral. It may be remembered as the place where the art of making paper was invented. Pop. 16,000. Lausanne, a large town on the lake of Geneva, has acquired a character for the politeness and charms of its society.

Several languages are spoken in Switzerland. On the German side, the people speak a dialect of the German; and French and Italian are used in the districts which border on France and Italy. The houses in the villages are generally built of wood. The people are frank, active, laborious, and brave, and devotedly attached to the liberty of their country. In many parts, the doors are left without locks, because there are no thieves. The dress of the people is very singular, but suited to their wild and picturesque country. Nothing can be more pleasing than to see the inhabitants, on a Sabbath morning, flocking down from the dizzy hills, and emerg-



ing from the dark ravines, to attend church. It is impossible not to be struck with the superior happiness of these self-governed mountaineers, to that of many weak and slavish nations, who inhabit a more prolific soil, but are yet subjects of despotism. It is proper to remark, however, that the freedom of Switzerland is restrained by the influence of monarchical institutions around it. There is a good deal of religious bigotry among the people; and in Berne and some other cantons, there have been recently some gross instances of persecution, on account of religious opinions.

---

What of Berne? Basle? Lausanne? What of the languages of Switzerland? Houses? Inhabitants? Dress of the people? What is a pleasing sight in Switzerland? Describe the picture. What of the happiness of Switzerland compared with that of other nations? What of liberty in Switzerland? Religious intolerance?

## 155. AUSTRIA.

*Map of Europe.* In what direction must you travel to go from Geneva to Vienna in Austria? How is Austria bounded? What mountains in Austria? What of the Danube? The Drave? Capital? Direction of Vienna from Constantinople? Paris? Rome? Madrid? London? Boston? From where you are? Where is Prague? Trieste? Presburg? Inspruck? Olmütz? Gratz?

## 156. AUSTRIA, CONTINUED.

The Austrian dominions consist of one third part of what was once called Germany; nearly one fourth part of Italy; the kingdom of Hungary; and a considerable portion of what once belonged to the kingdom of Poland. The surface of the country in the German districts, occupying the western and northern portions, is diversified, and in some parts mountainous. In Hungary, which embraces the eastern division, there are very extensive plains with some mountains. A considerable part of the soil is fertile and productive; a large part also is covered by mountains. The Italian part of Austria has been called the Garden of Europe, on account of its excellent cultivation and abundant fertility. The productions of Austria are various. Hungary produces gold, silver, copper, and iron, besides wine and cattle. Quicksilver, salt and coal, are produced in other parts of Austria.

There are universities at Vienna, Prague, and other places. The Roman Catholic religion prevails, and is established by law, but other religions are tolerated. The government is a monarchy, the sovereign being styled emperor. The different countries of which the empire is composed, in part retain their original laws; the power of the emperor is therefore more or less limited in the various provinces.

Vienna is the seat of the Austrian court, and possesses many marks of magnificence. It is the centre of considerable trade. Voluptuousness and dissipation prevail among the higher classes. Near the city is the Prater, a celebrated place of amusement, consisting of a grove, laid out with promenades and avenues: houses and cottages are scattered throughout this grove, occupied by sellers of coffee and lemonade, confectioners, musicians, rope-dancers, and jugglers. Pop. 310,000.

Trieste is an important seaport. Gratz is celebrated for its fortifications; Austerlitz for a famous battle in which Bonaparte was victorious. Buda was the former capital of Hungary, and is distinguished for its palaces and baths. Pop. 30,000. Schemnitz and Cremnitz are known for their mines, and Tokay is famous for producing a choice species of wine.

---

156. What does the Austrian empire embrace? Divisions? Face of the country in the German districts? Face of the country in Hungary? Soil? The Italian part of Austria? Productions of Austria? Of Hungary? What universities? What of religion? Government? Laws? Power of the emperor? What of Vienna? What is the Prater? How is it occupied? What of Trieste? Gratz? Austerlitz? Buda? Schemnitz and Cremnitz? Tokay?



The Austrian character partakes of the German outline, in which sincerity, industry, and a love of order are conspicuous. The Austrians have also patience and perseverance, favorable to mechanical inventions. They unite great physical vigor, with astonishing self-command, forbearance, and good nature. They possess a liveliness of character which distinguishes them in some degree from other German nations. Smoking is an almost universal practice, and



the pursuit of instrumental music, for which they have great genius, is common both in town and country. The preceding picture represents a company of musicians.

Hungary constitutes an important part of the Austrian empire. The Hungarians are a mixed race, descended from various nations. The ancient Huns were an Asiatic tribe, who are supposed to have inhabited Independent Tartary. Various other tribes of similar origin established themselves in different parts of Asia and Europe. The Turks are descendants of one of these branches, and the modern Hungarians of another. The latter are however mixed with Slavonians, Turks, Germans, and people called Zigduns, supposed to be the same with the Gypsies. The Gypsies are a wandering race of people, of a swarthy complexion, and are found in nearly all parts of Europe. They have no houses, nor villages, but roam from one country to another, making occasional pauses in the vicinity of settled places, and obtaining a livelihood, sometimes by theft and robbery, and sometimes by pretending to tell the fortunes of those who are so superstitious as to place confidence in them. On the next page is a picture of some gypsies.

The Hungarians are brave, sanguine, and revengeful, fond of arms, martial exercises, and hunting. The lower classes appear to

---

Character of the Austrians? What of smoking? Instrumental music? Describe the picture. What of Hungary? From whom are the Hungarians descended? Who were the ancient Huns? Descendants? Who are the Zigduns? Describe the Gypsies. Describe the lower classes. Character of the Hungarians? Lower classes?



be wretched, and work like slaves for the lords of the soil. Their houses are of clay; and intermingled with these humble dwellings, may be seen the marble palaces of the nobility, surrounded by gardens, fortresses and terraces, and decorated with fountains, grottoes, statues and pictures. The world does not perhaps exhibit a more striking contrast of excessive wealth with extreme poverty.

### 157. GERMANY.

*Map of Europe.* In what direction must you travel, to go from Vienna to Frankfurt? Boundaries? What of the Danube? Rhine? Elbe? Weser? Direction of Frankfurt from London? Paris? Madrid? Rome? Constantinople? New York? From where you are? Where is Hanover? Stutgard? Hamburg? Cologne? Munich? Gottingen?

### 158. GERMANY, CONTINUED.

Under the general title of Germany are included, first, about one third part of Austria, containing nearly all that portion which lies west of Vienna, and contiguous to Germany and Switzerland, as on the map of Europe; second, the greater part of Prussia, and also several provinces belonging to Prussia, lying on both sides of the Rhine, in the west of Germany; third, the kingdom of Bavaria; fourth, Wurtemberg; fifth, Hanover; sixth, Saxony; seventh, grand-dutchy of Baden; eighth, twenty-seven smaler states; and ninth, four free cities.

The Austrian part of Germany is included within the boundaries of Austria, on the map. The Prussian dominions in Germany are, first, the greater part of Prussia, as represented on the map, which will be described under Prussia; second, three provinces on both sides of the Rhine, included in Germany on the map. These three provinces embrace a beautiful and fruitful region; Munster, Co-

Houses? Palaces? Contrast of wealth and poverty.

158. What is included under the general title of Germany? What of the Austrian part of Germany? Of what do the Prussian dominions consist? What of the three provinces on both sides of the Rhine? Principal towns?

logne, and Aix-la-Chapelle are the chief towns. Cologne, on the Rhine, is famous for its cathedral; Aix-la-Chapelle for its mineral waters, and for a church, in which is the tomb of Charlemagne.

Bavaria is contiguous to Austria, and the Danube passes nearly through its centre. Parts are mountainous, but a considerable portion is diversified, and possesses a fertile soil. The prevailing religion is Roman Catholic. Education is liberally promoted by the sovereign, and is diffused among all classes. The government is a constitutional monarchy, and is administered with a due regard to the rights of the people. Munich, the capital, is a splendid city, and has the most extensive antiquarian museum in Germany. Pop. 75,000.

Wurtemberg lies in the southwest of Germany, contiguous to Bavaria. A branch of the Alpine chain of mountains, and a range called the Black Forest, occupy the western and northern portions. The rest of the country is diversified. It is one of the most fruitful and populous districts of Germany. The soil is highly cultivated. Stutgard is the capital, and possesses a magnificent palace. Pop. 24,000. The prevailing religion is Lutheran; the government is a limited monarchy. Education is extensively diffused, and the classics form a part of the studies in most of the schools.

The general surface of Hanover is level, or gently undulating. On the north there are extensive barrens. The Hartz mountains extend to the southern border; the valleys in this part are fertile. The middle and northern portions are well suited to pasturage. The climate is cold and variable. Hanover, the capital, has a superb palace, and various manufactures. Population, 26,000. Education is in a backward state; the religion is Lutheran. The government belongs to the king of England by inheritance. He governs it through a viceroy, who resides in the country.

Saxony joins Austria on the north, and is the smallest kingdom in Europe. The face of the country is diversified; the soil is fertile, and finely cultivated. It has mines of silver, tin, lead, and copper. Education is extensively diffused, and great advances have been made in literature and the arts. The religion of the royal family is the Catholic, but by far the greater part of the people are Lutherans. The government is a constitutional monarchy. Dresden, the capital, is a very fine city. Pop. 56,000. Leipsic is renowned for its semi-annual fair, at which there are immense numbers of books offered for sale. Pop. 40,000.

---

What of Cologne? Aix-la-Chapelle? Face of the country and soil of Bavaria? What of Munich? Religion of Bavaria? Education? Government? Population? Face of the country in Wurtemberg? Soil? Capital? Religion? Government? Population? Face of the country in Hanover? Climate? Capital? Population? Education? Religion? To whom does the government belong? Through whom is it governed? What of Saxony? Face of the country? Soil? Mines? What of the people? Literature and the arts? Language? Religion of the royal family? Of the people? Government? Capital of Saxony? Population? What of Leipsic? Population?

The grand-dutchy of Baden occupies the southwestern corner of Germany, between Wurtemberg and France, and presents a diversified surface. The soil is tolerably good; the chief object of the people is the raising of cattle. The inhabitants are generally Lutherans. The government is a constitutional monarchy, at the head of which is a grand duke. He resides at Carlsruhe, a beautiful town, regularly laid out in the form of a spread fan. Pop. 20,000. Mannheim is one of the most beautiful cities in Germany. Pop. 21,000. Heidelberg is distinguished for its university. At this latter place is an immense tun or hogshead, upon the head of which there is space for 30 persons to dance at the same time.

The twenty-seven smaller states in Germany are of different degrees of importance; none of them are of great extent. Luxemburg belongs to the Netherlands; Holstein and Lauenburg, to Denmark. The rest are dutchies, principalities, and electorates, about equal in extent to a New England county, and ruled by various princes, who administer the government, and claim the allegiance of the people, by the right of inheritance.

The four free cities of Germany are Frankfort, Bremen, Hamburg, and Lubec. Frankfort is situated on the Maine. It is the seat of the German Diet, and is celebrated for its semi-annual fairs, which attract the merchants from all parts of Europe. It is nearly surrounded by a beautiful promenade, built on the ruins of its ancient walls. Bremen has considerable commerce, particularly with the United States. Hamburg has extensive manufactures, and is one of the most important commercial towns in Europe. Lubec is a place of some trade.

### 159. GERMANY. GENERAL VIEW.

Germany is often spoken of under two divisions, north and south. The separation is formed by a chain of mountains giving to the southern portion, Austrian Germany, Bavaria, Wurtemberg, and Baden. This division is bounded on the south by the Alps, and consists of diversified plains, traversed by ranges of mountains. The soil is various, though generally fertile, and tolerably well cultivated. In the north of Germany, there are very extensive heaths and marshes, and the soil is on the whole inferior. Agriculture is also more backward.

Germany embraces 39 independent states, united by what is styled the Germanic Confederation, the object of which is to provide for mutual safety and defence. The agents of the several

---

Where is the grand-dutchy of Baden? Surface? Soil? What is the chief object of the people? Religion? Government? Where does the grand-duke reside? What of Carlsruhe? What of Mannheim? Heidelberg? What of the 27 smaller states of Germany? What are the four free cities of Germany? What of Frankfort? Bremen? Hamburg? Lubec?

159. How is Germany often spoken of? How is the separation, formed? What of the southern portion of Germany? Upper Germany? What does Germany embrace? How are the states united?

powers, consisting of 17 plenipotentiaries and 70 deputies, hold their sittings at Frankfort, and are called the Diet of Germany.

The various governments of Germany, though many of them are despotic, are of a mild character, and are administered with more or less regard to the happiness of the people. There are exceptions, in which the rulers make severe and cruel exactions of their subjects, for the purpose of maintaining themselves in profligate habits.

In the cities of Germany, the people generally imitate the dress of England and France, though Vienna in some cases dictates in matters of fashion. In the country there are many very grotesque costumes. The people are characterized by travellers, as 'inveterate smokers, profuse talkers, and prolific writers.' The basis of the German character is made up of rectitude, frankness, frugality and persevering industry. They excel in many manufactures, and in the arts of turnery, horology and architecture. In every species



of literature, which depends upon careful investigation and vast accumulation of knowledge, they take the lead of all other nations. In all the considerable towns, the people hold frequent fairs, at which all kinds of merchandise are exhibited for sale in the open air. They are generally attended with much festivity.

## 160. PRUSSIA.

*Map of Europe.* In what direction must you travel, to go from Frankfort to Berlin? Boundaries of Prussia? What of the Elbe? Oder? Vistula? What is the capital? Direction of Berlin from Paris? London? Rome? Constantinople? Boston? From where you are? Where is Dantzic? Konigsburg? Posen? Breslau? Colberg? Stettin? Magdeburg?

Where do the plenipotentiaries and deputies meet? What are they called? What of the governments of Germany? Do the rulers ever make severe and cruel exactions of their subjects? What of dress in the cities of Germany? In the country? What is said of the people? Character? In what do they excel? Describe the picture. In what do the Germans take the lead of all other nations?

## 161. PRUSSIA, CONTINUED.

Prussia consists of two divisions—first, of Prussia, as represented on the map of Europe; and second, of the provinces of Westphalia, Clevesburg, and the Lower Rhine. These three provinces have been mentioned under the head of the German States. The eastern division of Prussia consists of seven provinces—East Prussia, West Prussia, Brandenburg, Pomerania, Posen, Sillesia, and Saxony.

Prussia is in general a level country, with many lakes, rivers and marshes. The soil is various. In some parts it is fertile, but there are large tracts unfit for cultivation. The winters are severe, and in summer the heat is very great. Grain and cattle are the chief productions.

There are numerous universities; and education is making rapid advances. Two thirds of the people are Protestants, the rest Catholics. The government is a nearly absolute monarchy. The present king, in his own right, holds the sovereignty of Neufchatel in Switzerland.

Berlin, the capital, is a magnificent city, and the seat of the court. It is remarkable for its splendid edifices, its numerous literary institutions, and in particular for its university. Population, 236,000. Dantzic has an extensive commerce, and is one of



the wealthiest cities in Europe. Pop. 62,000. Cologne, the principal town in the Prussian territories on the Rhine, has been mentioned under Germany.

The general language of Prussia is German. The people are

---

161. Of how many divisions does Prussia consist? What of Westphalia? Clevesburg? Lower Rhine? What are the seven provinces? Face of the country in Prussia? Soil? Winters? Summer? Productions? What of universities? Education? Religion? Government? What of Berlin? Population? What of Dantzic? Describe the picture Population? What of Cologne? What is the language of Prussia?

brave, industrious, and fond of military parade. The wives and daughters of the peasants assist them in performing all the labors of the field, beside attending to the duties of the house. The preceding picture represents a scene in Prussia.

## 162. POLAND.

*Map of Europe.* In what direction must you travel to go from Berlin to Warsaw? Where is Poland? What is the capital? Direction of Warsaw from London? Berlin? Vienna? Rome? Constantinople? Boston? From where you are?

## 163. POLAND, CONTINUED.

Poland, once a powerful kingdom, was divided between Russia, Prussia, and Austria, and in 1795 ceased to be an independent na-



tion. The greater part was taken by Russia, and now forms a division of that vast empire; large territories, however, were appropriated by the kings of Prussia and Austria, and constitute portions of those countries. Poland retains its ancient name, but it is blotted from the list of independent nations.

Warsaw, the capital, is a walled town of great strength; its streets exhibit what is so common in the ill-governed parts of Europe—spectacles of excessive wealth, contrasted with distressing poverty. Near Cracow, are the most celebrated salt-mines in the world.

The nobles of Poland possess vast estates; they inhabit magnificent houses, and live in great pomp, surrounded by dependants and retainers. The peasants are a wretched order of beings, apparently diminished in stature, and debased in intellect by long-endured slavery.

What of the inhabitants? Peasants?

163. What of Poland? What took place in 1795? Describe the picture. What of the kings of Prussia and Austria? What does Poland retain? Is it an independent nation? What of Warsaw?

## 164. RUSSIA IN EUROPE.

*Map of Europe.* In what direction do you travel from Warsaw to St. Petersburg in Russia? Boundaries of Russia? What of the Don? Dnieper? Dwina? Volga? Dniester? Bog? Duna? Ural? Where is the Baltic sea? White sea? Black sea? What lakes in the northern part of Russia? What peninsula in the Black sea? What is the capital? Direction of Petersburg from Vienna? Rome? Constantinople? Berlin? Paris? Madrid? London? Bern? Where is Moscow? Cherson? Novogorod? Astrachan? Pultowa? Sarepta? Orenburg? Oronstadt? Archangel?

## 165. RUSSIA IN EUROPE, CONTINUED.

The face of the country in this vast territory is generally level, and consists chiefly of immense plains, covered in many parts with forests. In the northern division, the soil is barren; in the southern, it is tolerably fertile. In the north, the climate is cold, and in winter extremely severe; in the south, it is mild. Various kinds of grain are produced in large quantities, and there are mines of silver, copper, and iron.

The commerce of Russia is extensive; it is carried on chiefly through the Baltic, White, Caspian, and Black seas. Agriculture is imperfect. The raising of cattle is the chief object of the husbandman. Hemp is produced and manufactured to such an extent, as to constitute an important article of trade with foreign countries. Furs, leather, hides and tallow are the other exports.

The common people who are remote from the large towns, particularly those engaged in agriculture, are nearly in a barbarous state; a great portion can neither read nor write. In the larger towns, provision is made for the education of young men of the better classes, and in St. Petersburg there are many individuals of extensive learning. There are many foreign artisans in Russia, who have brought with them to their adopted country, the knowledge of many arts and manufactures. On the whole, the condition of Russia, as to education, civilisation, and refinement, though behind the rest of Europe, is advancing.

The established religion is that of the Greek church; three-fourths are of this faith, and one-fourth of the inhabitants are Catholics, Jews, Mahometans and Pagans. All religions are tolerated. The government is despotic, and is administered by an emperor.

St. Petersburg, built under Peter the Great, is the seat of the court. It surpasses every other city in Europe for the general splendor of its streets and edifices. Pop. 320,000. Moscow, the ancient capital, was burnt in 1812, by the Russians, to prevent its being an asylum during the winter for Bonaparte and his army, who had invaded the country. This measure obliged the French to fly, and

---

165. What of the face of the country in Russia? Soil? Climate in the north? South? Productions? Mines? How is the commerce of Russia carried on? Chief object of the husbandman? What of hemp? Other exports? What of the common people? What of education in large towns? St. Petersburg? What of artisans? Condition of Russia? What of religion? Government? What of St. Petersburg? Moscow?



hundreds of thousands perished in the snow! The population of Moscow is about 250,000.

Odessa, on the Black sea, is an important seaport. Archangel is the most northern town in Europe of any considerable size.

The superior classes in Russia bear a general resemblance to the same ranks in other European countries. The nobles and rich men possess the lands, and keep the peasants, or laborers, in a slavish and abject state, while they themselves live in dissipation and luxu-



ry. The tenants are transferred with the land they occupy when it is sold, in the same manner as the crops, or the buildings that may be upon it. The houses of the peasants are built of rough logs of wood; their outer garment is a sheep-skin wrapper, fastened with a girdle: the beard on the chin and throat is sometimes allowed to grow, as a defence against the excessive cold. The warm bath is in universal use; singing and bell-ringing are favorite amusements; dancing is never omitted when the people are inclined to be merry. A singular amusement is that of sliding and skating very swiftly down artificial slopes of ice.

The Finns, occupying the country at the head of the gulf of Finland, are now subject to Russia. They are a peculiar people, with light flaxen hair. They are thinly scattered over the territory, and some of them live in cabins so rude, as to resemble an accidental pile of wood.

The Cossacks, who inhabit the banks of the river Don, in the southeastern part of Russia, are a barbarous people, possessing a singularly bold and warlike character. The soldiers are mounted on swift horses, and hurl a long spear with deadly effect upon the enemy.

---

Odessa? Archangel? What of the superior classes in Russia? Nobles? Rich men? Describe the picture. Tenants? Houses of peasants? Dress? What is allowed as a defence against cold? What of the warm bath? Amusements? What country do the Finns occupy? What of the Finns? Their cabins? What of the Cossacks?

## 166. LAPLAND.

*Map of Europe* What is the most northern country in Europe? Where is Lapland? Boundaries? In what direction must you travel to go from Petersburg to Kola? What of the Aunis river? Where is Kola? Oumba? Ulea?

## 167. LAPLAND, CONTINUED.

Lapland is a cold, desolate region, in Europe, lying between the Arctic ocean on the north, the White sea on the east, the gulf of Bothnia on the south, and the Atlantic on the west. The eastern portion is nominally the territory of Russia, the western belongs to Norway, and the southern to Sweden. But such is the rigor of the climate, the sterility of the soil, the poverty and fewness of the people, that they are left to themselves without the interference of government. Their country is rough, mountainous, and dreary. Vegetation is scanty, and agriculture is but little attended to; grain is produced with difficulty.

The reindeer is the chief support of the inhabitants. They feed on its flesh and milk, use its skin for clothing, and its sinews for twine and thread. It is also employed for draught, and travels with a man on a sledge, at the rate of 70 or 80 miles a day. Some of the people have herds of 3 or 400. The inhabitants also feed on the flesh of bears and other wild animals, and along the coasts the seal is as useful to them as to the Greenlanders.

The Laplanders are of the same race as the inhabitants of the frozen regions of North America, and live in a similar manner.



They have no towns, but dwell in small villages, thinly scattered over the country. Their huts are built of stones and sods, and do not exceed six feet in height, and eight or ten feet in diameter.

167. Where is Lapland situated? What of the eastern portion? Western? Southern? What of the climate? Soil? What of the people? Face of the country? Vegetation? Agriculture? Grain? On what do the people feed? What of the seal? Describe the uses of the reindeer. What of the Laplanders? Describe the picture. Their towns? Huts?

They resemble a baker's oven in shape. A hole in the top serves both for window and chimney. The people are exceedingly attached to their country, and are said to prefer it to every other. This doubtless arises from ignorance, and the force of habit. Their religion is a mixture of Christianity and paganism. They are exceedingly superstitious, and have many customs of an absurd and barbarous character.

### 168. NORWAY.

*Map of Europe.* Where is Norway? What mountains between Norway and Sweden? What of the Glomma river? What is the capital? Where is Bergen? In what direction is it from Vienna? London? Paris? Madrid? Rome? Constantinople? Frankfort? From you? Where is Christiana? Drontheim? Konsburg? Frederickshall? Christiansand?

### 169. NORWAY, CONTINUED.

Norway is a part of the Swedish dominions, but it has a government and laws of its own, which regulate its internal affairs. It is the most mountainous country in Europe, except Switzerland. Some of the mountains are covered with perpetual snow. The soil is, in general, barren, and unsusceptible of cultivation, and the country has a dreary aspect. The climate is subject to great extremes. In winter the cold is severe, in summer the heat is excessive. On the sea-coast, it is much milder



The chief resources of the people are in their fisheries, their mines of iron, copper, and silver, and in their herds of cattle. The country abounds in rivers, which rush from the mountains with the rapidity of torrents. Near the coast, in the North Sea, is a terrific whirlpool, called the Maelstrom, which sometimes draws in ships,

What is said of the people? Religion? Customs?

169. What of Norway? Face of the country? Mountains? Soil? Aspect of the country? Climate? In winter? Summer? On the sea-coast? Describe the picture. What are the chief resources of the people? What of the rivers? Describe the Maelstrom.

and dashes them on the rocks beneath. Whales and other animals, also, are sometimes forced into it.

The Norwegians are tolerably well instructed in most branches of common education; their religion is Lutheran. Bergen is the capital, and has a good harbor and considerable commerce.

The peasants live in huts of earth, covered over with grass, which gives them the appearance of hillocks. The interior is however comfortable and well provided. They make their own articles of clothing. The people are frank, brave, and independent; they are temperate and contented, and, breathing a pure air, live to a great age. A hundred years is not an uncommon, nor a surprising degree of longevity. The nobility and merchants of Norway are said to have sumptuous and luxurious habits, strongly contrasted with the frugal simplicity of the common people. The preceding picture represents a scene in Norway.

## 170. SWEDEN.

*Map of Europe.* Where is Sweden? In which direction would you travel, to go from Bergen to Stockholm? Suppose you go in a vessel, what waters will you sail upon? What of the Dal river? What two lakes in the southern part of Sweden? What is the capital? Where is Stockholm? In what direction is Stockholm from Berlin? St. Petersburg? Warsaw? Vienna? Rome? Paris? Madrid? London? Where is Carlsrona? Tornea? Umea? Pitea? Upsal? Gottenburg? Calmar? Malmo? Fahlun?

## 171. SWEDEN, CONTINUED.

Though bounded on the west and north by mountains, Sweden is a very level country, with numerous lakes and rivers. It is generally barren; the southern parts are most fertile. A great part of the country is covered with pine forests, and is unfit for cultivation. From these forests, the people obtain timber, pitch, tar, and turpentine for exportation. Sweden has also mines of iron and copper. Large amounts of the former are exported from Sweden to the United States.

Liberal views prevail in Sweden in respect to education. Almost every considerable town has a school, supported at the public expense. The university of Upsal has great celebrity; the common people are well educated, and in science, many individuals have acquired fame. In religion, the Swedes are Lutherans. Their government is a limited monarchy.

Stockholm, the capital, is built upon hills, between seven small rocky islands and two peninsulas. Its situation is very romantic. The palace of the king is one of the most beautiful in Europe. The population is about 80,000. Gottenburgh has an extensive trade. Pop. 20,000.

---

What of education? Religion? What of Bergen? Houses of peasants? Clothing? Character of the people? Longevity? Nobility? Merchants?

171. Face of the country in Sweden? Soil? Cultivation? What are obtained from the pine forests for exportation? What of mines? What is exported to the United States? Education in Sweden? Schools? University? Education of the common people? Science? Religion? Government? On what is Stockholm built? Situation? Palace of the king?

The Swedes are described as possessing light flaxen hair, and a ruddy countenance, with faces expressive of good humor. It is their custom to celebrate with dancing and other ceremonies the



month of May, in token of their joy at the return of spring. They are remarkably clean in their habits, and the common people are well dressed in coarse blue cloth of their own manufacture. They make their own houses, clothes and furniture. In the streets of Stockholm may occasionally be seen individuals of the Dalecarlian race, who inhabit the remote mountains, preserve their primitive manners, and defy all attempts to deprive them of their independence. These people retain the peculiar dress of their country, which is said to have undergone no change for centuries.

## 172. DENMARK.

*Map of Europe.* Where is Denmark? Boundaries? What is the capital? Where is Copenhagen? Direction from Rome? Bergen? Berlin? Constantinople? Vienna? Berne? Madrid? Where is Kiel? Where is the island of Funen? Zealand? Sylt? Heligoland?

## 173. DENMARK, CONTINUED.

The kingdom of Denmark includes a peninsula between the North sea and the Baltic, and several adjacent islands. Iceland and the Faroe islands in the Atlantic ocean, the dutchies of Holstein and Lauenburg in Germany, Greenland in North America, and the islands of St. Croix and St. Thomas in the West Indies, belong to Denmark. The peninsula is level, with a sandy, fertile soil. The northern part is covered with forests. It is well cultivated in the south; wheat is the staple production. Much of the

What of Gottenburg? What of the Swedes? Common people? Describe the picture. Dalecarlian race? Their manners? Independence? Dress?

173. What does the kingdom of Denmark include? What belong to Denmark? Face of the country? Soil? In the north? South? Productions?

land is well suited to pasturage. Denmark is a commercial country; its principal exports are grain and cattle.

The government is despotic, but wisdom and moderation have long characterized the measures of the court; and the Danes boast, justly, of the superiority of their laws. The established religion is Lutheran, but full toleration is allowed to persons of other persuasions.

Education is an object of primary importance with the government, and parochial schools are established, in which the children of the poor are taught the rudiments of their native language, at the public expense. Science and literature have long been cherished in Denmark, which has produced some celebrated men in literature and the arts.

Copenhagen, the metropolis, and the residence of the court, has an extensive commerce, and is one of the finest cities in the northern part of Europe. Its university is on a large scale, and is liberally endowed. Its botanic garden is justly celebrated. Elsinore, situated at a narrow passage of the sea, is known as the place where all ships which trade to the Baltic are obliged to pay a heavy



toll. The money received at this place pays a large portion of the expenses of the Danish government.

The Danes are represented as having florid complexions, with hair inclining to yellow or red. The superior classes are fond of magnificence and show, and the peasants exhibit a neatness in their dress which seems to surpass their condition. Excess in the use of strong liquors is said to be characteristic of this people.

---

To what is much of the country suited? What of commerce? Exports? What of the government of Denmark? Laws? Religion? Education? Schools? Science and literature? What of Copenhagen? Its university? Botanic gardens? What of Elsinore? Describe the picture. Money received at Elsinore? What of the Danes? Superior classes? Peasants? Characteristic of the people?

## 174. NETHERLANDS AND BELGIUM.

*Map of Europe.* Where are the Netherlands? In what direction do you go from Vienna to Amsterdam? Boundaries? Where is the Zuyder Zee? What of the Rhine? Ems? What is the capital of the Netherlands? What is the capital of Belgium? *Ans.* Brussels. Where is Amsterdam? Direction from St. Petersburg? Paris? Constantinople? Rome? Madrid? Dublin? Stockholm? Bergen? London? Where is Ghent? Antwerp? Waterloo? Liege? Brussels? Hague?

## 175. NETHERLANDS AND BELGIUM, CONTINUED.

The kingdom of the Netherlands formerly consisted of 18 provinces. Nine of these were in the north, and embraced the country formerly called Holland: eight were in the south, and were called Belgium. Luxemburg, a small state in Germany, also belonged to this country.

The kingdom has been recently divided into two independent states. The eight Belgic provinces now constitute the kingdom of Belgium; the ten other provinces form the present kingdom of Holland, and though these countries are thus politically separated, we shall describe the whole together.

Along the sea-coast, the land is low, flat and sandy. Holland has the appearance of an extensive marsh that has been drained. Much of the surface is below the level of the sea, which is kept from overflowing the land by dykes, constructed with immense labor, along the shore.

The Belgic provinces are finely diversified with hills and valleys. Nearly all parts of Holland are finely cultivated. Canals are almost as common as roads in other countries. In winter, people



175. How was the kingdom of the Netherlands divided? What of the northern provinces? Southern? What state in Germany belonged to the Netherlands? How has the kingdom been recently divided? Face of the country along the sea-coast? In that part called Holland? What of Dykes? Belgic provinces? Cultivation in Holland? Canals? Their use?



travel upon them with skates. The commerce of the Netherlands is extensive, though it has greatly declined.

There are excellent universities at Louvain and Leyden. Great attention is paid to education. The language is a dialect of the German, called Low Dutch. In Holland the people are Calvinists; in the Belgic provinces, they are devoted Catholics. The government of both countries is that of limited monarchy.

Amsterdam, situated on the Zuyder Zee, was once reckoned as second only to London for commerce, but several causes have operated to diminish its trade. The whole city is built on piles driven into the earth, in the margin of the sea. The houses are built of brick or stone, and are very neat; the city has many handsome public buildings. The Stadt House stands on 14,000 piles, and is esteemed one of the finest edifices in the world.

Brussels is the capital of Belgium; and the Hague is the residence of the king of the Netherlands. Antwerp, an old town, has considerable manufactures, and a celebrated Gothic church, in which are some of the finest paintings of Rubens. Rotterdam is a rich commercial city, with an excellent harbor. Ghent, Leyden, Leige, Ostend, Bruges, Tournay, and Luxemburg, are all large and important places. Waterloo will be ever memorable for the great battle in which Bonaparte met his final overthrow.

A stranger in Holland is struck with the extreme cleanliness and decorum of the towns and villages, as well as the private abodes. The furniture of the latter affords a striking proof of the mistress's regard to neatness. The beds are covered with the finest linen, the rooms are adorned with pictures, and the yards and gardens with flowers. The characteristics of the Dutch are patience, ingenuity, and perseverance. The love of money is the ruling passion. Smoking tobacco is practised by both sexes at all hours; and as they are said to be ever ruminating on ways and means to get money, they are represented as very unsociable.

## 176. EUROPE. GENERAL VIEW.

*Map of Europe. Map of Atlantic Ocean.* How is Europe bounded? Tell the situation and direction of the following ranges of mountains:—The Alps? Apennines? Pyrenees? Carpathian? Dofrafield? Ural? Mount Hæmus? Where is cape Spartivento? Ortegall? North? Matapan? Clear? St. Vincent? Finisterre? Trafalgar? What great peninsula in the southwest of Europe? What nine seas in and around Europe? What six gulfs? What bay? What straits between Spain and Africa? Between Sardinia and Corsica? Between Italy and Sicily? Describe the Danube; Rhine; Weser; Elbe; Don; Dnieper; Dwina; Guadalquivir; Vistula; Volga. *Here let the pupil answer questions on Table No. 15. in the Atlas.*

What part of North America is in the same latitude as France and Austria? What country in America is in the same latitude as Spain? What islands in the Mediterranean are nearly in the same latitude as Philadelphia? What large towns in Spain are nearly in the same latitude

---

Describe the picture. What of commerce? Universities? Education? Language? Religion in Holland? In the Belgic provinces? Government? What of Amsterdam? How is it built? What of the houses? What of Brussels and the Hague? Antwerp? Rotterdam? What other large places? What of Waterloo? What does a stranger observe in Holland? Characteristics of the Dutch? Ruling passion? Smoking? How are they represented?



as New York? What famous city in Italy is in the same latitude as Hartford? What large city in France is nearly in the same latitude as the north part of Newfoundland? How many degrees of longitude between Paris and Boston? How many degrees east of Washington is Vienna? What part of North America is in the same latitude as England? Scotland? Sweden? Norway?

### 177. EUROPE, CONTINUED.

Europe contains the following sovereignties:—Sweden and Russia, in the north; Portugal, Spain, Italian States, Turkey and Greece in the south; Great Britain and Ireland, France, Netherlands, Belgium, Denmark, Germany, Austria, Prussia, and Switzerland, in the middle. The length of Europe, from the most western part of Portugal to the Uralian mountains on the east, is 3,300 miles; the breadth, from North cape in Lapland to the southern extremity of Greece, is 2,350 miles; square miles, 3,300,000. The extent of Europe is less than one fourth that of Asia, and less than one half that of the Russian empire alone. The population is estimated at 200,000,000.

Norway and Sweden are mountainous. The countries included in the three southern peninsulas, viz. Spain, Italy, and Turkey, are also traversed by mountain ranges. The same description applies to a large portion of Hungary and the southern part of Germany, nearly the whole of Switzerland, and the southeastern part of France. All the northern and western parts of France are hilly. The rest of continental Europe, comprising the Netherlands, Denmark, the northern part of Germany, Prussia, and Russia, consists chiefly of plains.

The principal ranges of mountains are the Scandinavian or Dofrafield range, the Pyrenees, Alps, Apennines, and Carpathian mountains. The Scandinavian chain commences at the southern extremity of Norway, and, running north, soon becomes the boundary between Sweden and Norway. The Pyrenees run in an easterly direction from the southern part of the bay of Biscay to the Mediterranean, forming the boundary between France and Spain. The Alps, the loftiest mountains in Europe, form the western boundary of Italy, separating it from France, Switzerland, and Germany. The Apennines commence near the Mediterranean, at the southwestern extremity, and, pursuing an easterly course around the gulf of Genoa, turn to the southeast, and pass in that direction to the southern extremity of Italy. The Carpathian mountains encircle Hungary on three sides, separating it from Germany on the northwest, from Galicia on the northeast, and from Turkey on the southeast. At the southern extremity of the range, a branch proceeds in a southerly direction across the Danube, to the centre

---

177. What sovereignties in the north of Europe? What in the south? What in the middle? Here let the pupil answer questions on Table No. 16, in the *Atlas*. What is the length of Europe? Breadth? Square miles? Extent? Population? Face of the country in Norway and Sweden? Spain, Italy and Turkey? What of Hungary? Germany? Switzerland? France? What portion consists chiefly of plains? Ranges of mountains? Describe the several ranges.

of European Turkey, connecting the Carpathian mountains with the great eastern branch of the Alps.

The climate of Europe is affected by various circumstances, rendering some parts more temperate, and others colder or warmer than might be expected from their latitude. The eastern portion of Europe, including two-thirds of Russia in Europe, is rendered colder by the winds which sweep over it, chilled by the immense masses of snow and ice embosomed in the mountains of central Asia. The southern parts of Europe are rendered warmer by the hot winds which visit them from the burning deserts and plains of Africa. The extremes both of heat and cold are diminished in those countries which border upon the Atlantic, by the constant action of the sea air. These appear to be the three great causes, which modify the climate of Europe, and render it so different in some parts, from what it is in others of the same latitude; and so different from the climate of those portions of America, which lie in the same parallels.

There is another fact to be taken into consideration, in comparing the climate of the Atlantic part of Europe, with that of the Atlantic part of North America. In Greenland, and the adjacent regions, there are immense masses of snow and ice, which accumulate from year to year, or are broken up, in the form of icebergs, sometimes reaching the tropics before they are melted. On the contrary, on the borders of Europe, such accumulations do not take place. The gulfs of Norway are almost always open, while the coast of Greenland, exactly opposite, is frequently rendered inaccessible, from fixed, or floating barriers of ice.

These considerations will be sufficient to account for most of the contrasts, which we observe between our own climate, and that of the Atlantic parts of Europe. The climate of England, being surrounded by the sea, is rendered by the sea air much more temperate. The winters in that country are less extreme than those of the southern parts of New England. Newfoundland, also, surrounded by the sea, and farther south than England, swept by the winds which come from the icy regions of the north, and the adjacent countries, experiences a winter so intense, as almost to render it uninhabitable. Spain, Italy, and Turkey in Europe, illustrate the influence of the warm winds of Africa. Situated in the latitude of Massachusetts and New York, they produce oranges, lemons, figs and grapes, which, in our country, are the products of regions at least 12 degrees farther south. The difference of the climate between the eastern and western parts of Europe in the same latitude, is shown by the fact, that at Moscow, which is in the latitude

---

What of the climate in the eastern part of Europe? In the southern parts? In the countries on the Atlantic? What of accumulations of ice in the northern regions of America? What effect has this ice upon the climate of North America? Is the sea frozen on the northern coasts of Europe, as on the opposite coasts of America? What keeps the sea open? Climate of England? Winters in England? Climate of Newfoundland? What of the climate of Spain, Italy, and Turkey in Europe?

of Edinburgh, the winter is so inclement, as to render every precaution necessary to guard against it, while at the latter place, it is not more severe than at Boston.

### 178. EUROPE. GENERAL VIEW CONTINUED.

Europe is not naturally a fertile portion of the earth, yet, owing to the general skill and industry of its inhabitants, it produces the necessaries of life in sufficient abundance. The treasures of other countries are made its own, by means of its active commerce. It is too cold to produce spices, but these are brought from the Asiatic isles. Diamonds are not found in its mountains, but they are obtained from Brazil and India. Whatever luxury its soil or its climate may deny them, the inhabitants collect from the other quarters of the globe.

Christianity, in its various forms, is spread almost over the whole of Europe. The religion of the Greek church prevails in Greece, Russia, and a part of Turkey and Hungary. The number of its members in Europe, is 50,000,000. The Roman Catholic religion is established in Spain, Portugal, and Italy. Nine-tenths of France, four-fifths of Ireland, part of the Netherlands, one half of Germany and Switzerland, and three-fourths of Hungary and Poland, together with some individuals in England, and Turkey, submit to its dogmas. The whole number of Catholics in Europe may be estimated at 98 millions. The Protestant religion is divided into various sects. The Lutherans predominate in Sweden, Denmark, parts of Germany, Holland and Scotland. The English church is almost exclusively confined to England. The total number of Protestants in Europe, including several minor sects, as Quakers, Unitarians, Moravians, Baptists, and Methodists, is about 44 millions.

The Mahometans in Europe may amount to four or five millions. These are composed almost entirely of Turks and Tartars. Along the borders of Asia, there are some wandering tribes, who, with the Laplanders, may amount to half a million of idolaters. The Jews are scattered in every country in Europe except Norway and Spain, but are only numerous in Poland, Turkey, Germany, and Holland. Their whole number does not exceed three millions.

The governments of Europe have undergone a great change within the last 40 years. Those that exist at the present day may be divided into two sorts—such as are governed by absolute princes, according to fixed laws, and a system of taxation seldom subject

---

Climate of Moscow? Edinburgh?

178. What of the fertility of Europe? What advantages does it derive from its commerce? What of spices? Diamonds? What is said as to luxuries? What of Christianity in Europe? The Greek church? Roman Catholic religion? The Protestant? Lutherans? English church? Number of Protestants in Europe? Number of Mahometans? Idolaters? Jews? Governments of Europe within the last 40 years? How may the existing governments of Europe be divided?

to change; and those that are governed by a limited monarchy, and by representative assemblies, who make laws, and regulate taxation. Of the former kind we may mention Russia, Austria, Prussia, Naples, Spain, Sardinia, the States of the Church, or Pope's dominions, Tuscany, Denmark, and the dutchy of Hesse, in Germany. Of the latter kind are France, the Netherlands, Belgium, the kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, Sweden including Norway, the kingdoms of Bavaria, Wurtemberg, Hanover, Saxony and the grand dutchy of Baden.

It appears that a limited or constitutional monarchy is the most common form of government in Europe. It may be remarked, too, that in Russia, Spain, Austria, Prussia, and other governments, nominally despotic, custom, the force of public opinion, and the fear of insurrection, restrain the sovereigns of these countries, and have in a limited degree the same effect as a representative branch, to protect the people from oppression. Turkey is the only strictly despotic government in Europe; the only one in which the will of the sovereign is the supreme law of the land, and in which the lives, consciences, and property of the people, are completely subject to his disposal.

Switzerland is the only free government in Europe; for San Marino, the Ionian Isles, and the free towns of Germany, acknowledge the protection of other governments; it may be observed also, that Switzerland, surrounded by powerful monarchies, has but a nominal independence, allowed only so far as may please the leagued sovereigns of Europe. Thus, while unrestrained despotism is confined to narrow limits, freedom is scarcely enjoyed by a single peo-



What states are governed by absolute princes? Which countries by limited monarchies? What is the most common form of government in Europe? By what are the despotic princes of Europe restrained? What is strictly the only despotic government in Europe? What is the only free government in Europe? What of unrestrained despotism in Europe? What of freedom? Describe the picture.

ple among the 200 millions of Europe. Though the spectacle of a people groaning beneath the selfish tyranny of their kings, is less common than it once was, yet Russia, Poland, Hungary, and parts of Spain, Prussia, and other countries, exhibit nations divided for the most part into the lords and slaves; the former living in palaces, and indulging in every species of luxury; while the latter dwell in huts, and suffer all the miseries of slavery and poverty. In all the countries of Europe except Switzerland, Scotland, and Holland, we see the excessively rich, mingled with the wretchedly poor. That equality, which is so common among us, is not to be found in Europe. The palace and the cottage, the coach and the beggar, are presented to the traveller in the same view, in whatever part of Europe he may be.

One striking difference between the state of society in Europe and our country, is visible in the different situations assigned to the female sex. In our country, the duties of women, in the higher as well as the lower classes, are confined to domestic affairs. In Europe, it is otherwise: women of the higher classes interest themselves in politics, and often exert a powerful influence. In the middling and lower ranks, they engage in business, and may often be seen employed in the most laborious occupations. In England, particularly in the manufacturing towns, they may be seen carrying heavy burdens, driving horses with carts, shovelling coal, &c. In all parts of Europe, women labor with men in the fields; in parts of Italy, they are harnessed to the plough which their husbands direct; in Holland, the wife rows the boat, while her husband sits smoking at his ease in the stern; in Germany, women carry vegetables to market to the distance of 10 miles, in great baskets, placed on their heads.

### 179. EUROPE. GENERAL VIEW CONTINUED.

The 200 millions of people that inhabit Europe, submit to 59 reigning families, composed of nearly 1200 individuals, including the younger branches. These individuals receive from the various governments, beside their private incomes, which are immense, the annual sum of about 50 millions of dollars; the whole of which is expended in maintaining the splendor of their courts. The nobility of Europe were once distinguished for courage and illustrious birth. The nobility of the present day are, with some honorable exceptions, favorites of the sovereigns, and spend their lives in dis-

---

Do the people in Europe suffer as much from tyranny as formerly? In what countries are the people divided into lords and slaves? How do the higher classes live in these countries? Lower classes? In what parts of Europe are the excessively rich mingled with the miserably poor? Is the equality common in our country to be met with in Europe? What are presented to the traveller in most parts of Europe? To what are the duties of women confined in America? What of women in Europe?

179. How many reigning families in Europe? How many persons do they consist of? How much do they annually receive, beside their private incomes? How do they spend this vast sum? What of the ancient nobility of Europe? The present?

sipation, folly, and vice. The intelligent middling classes of Europe, whose education is equal, if not superior to that of the nobles, it is supposed, do not exceed three millions. The number of professed authors in Germany, France, and England alone, amount to 15,000. The number who obtain their living by manufactures is estimated at 16 millions. The agriculturists are supposed to embrace two-thirds of the whole population. The soldiers engaged in the service of the various governments, amount to about two millions, one hundredth part of the total population.

One of the most remarkable distinctions between our own and the European governments, is the union in the latter of civil with religious matters. For the purpose of increasing their power, the sovereigns establish some particular form of worship, the ministers of which are, directly or indirectly, paid by the crown. Thus dependent, these ministers necessarily become attached to the cause of their sovereign, and are therefore his sure and zealous supporters. Possessing a powerful influence over the minds of the people, through the dignity of their office, their general intelligence, and the nature of their intercourse with them, they become the most efficient pillars of the government, which it is their supposed duty and certain interest, to sustain. It is this powerful combination of the church and the state, that has enabled the despotic rulers of Europe so long to keep their subjects imprisoned by their slavish



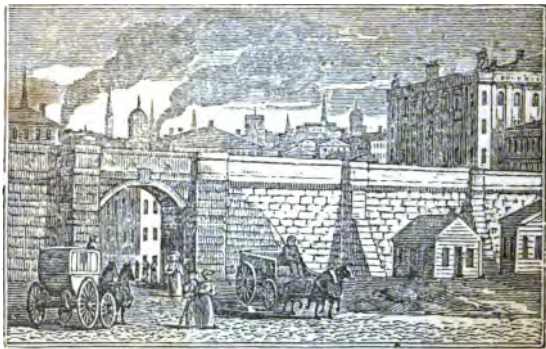
institutions. The preceding picture represents a priest rendering homage to a king.

The great cities of Europe surpass our own in the extent of their population, and in a display of public buildings. The pride or poli-

---

How many of the educated middling classes in Europe? The number of authors in Germany, France, and England? Number of manufacturers? Agriculturists? Soldiers? What do the sovereigns of Europe do to increase their power? What of the ministers of the established churches in Europe? What of the combination of church and state? Describe the picture. What of the great cities in Europe?

cy of most of the European princes has led them to establish in their cities, universities, hospitals, museums, libraries and other institutions, the buildings for which are usually magnificent. The churches, being generally built by the governments, are numerous, and many of them very costly. Beside these, in the great capitals, as London, Paris, and others, there are several splendid palaces, occupied by the royal families. Most of these towns are embellished with parks or gardens, which are laid out with walks, ornamented with trees, and refreshed with fountains. The great cities on the continent are usually surrounded by walls, which are employed for defence in time of war, and the gates by which they are entered,



being under the direction of the government, render it easy to watch and control the people in time of peace.

### 180. EUROPE. GENERAL VIEW CONTINUED.

The present languages of Europe may be referred to four stocks—the Gothic, or Teutonic, the Celtic, Slavonic, and Latin. The English, German, Dutch, Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, and Icelandic, are of Gothic origin. The Gaelic is spoken by the Highlanders of Scotland; the Irish is still spoken in some parts of Ireland; and the Cimbric is spoken in Wales, and the southeastern part of Ireland. These three are of Celtic origin. The languages of Russia, Poland, Bohemia, and parts of Hungary, are dialects of the Slavonic language. The Portuguese, Spanish, Italian and French are derived from the Latin.

The Portuguese language so nearly resembles the Spanish, that

---

What have most of the European princes done? What of churches? Palaces? What of most of the large towns in Europe? Cities? Describe the picture. *Here let the pupil answer questions on table No. 14, in the Atlas.*

180. What of the languages in Europe? Which are of Gothic origin? Which Celtic? Slavonic? Latin? What of the Portuguese and Spanish languages?

the inhabitants of the two countries can mutually understand each other. The Italian is esteemed the most melodious language of Europe, and seems peculiarly adapted to vocal music. The French is suited to conversation, and is more spoken than any other of the European languages. The Gothic language is that of the Goths, the ancient inhabitants of the northern part of Europe; the Celtic, that of the Celts, an Asiatic tribe, who introduced their language at an early period into a part of France and Britain; the Slavonic, that of the Sarmatians, who occupied the countries bounded on the south by the Danube and the Black sea; the Latin, that of ancient Rome.

Though Europe was the latest portion of the eastern continent to receive the light of science, yet it must now be regarded as the centre of civilisation, refinement and the arts. Though small in extent compared with Asia and Africa, not on the whole fertile by nature, neither abounding in animals, nor the precious metals, yet it is now the richest, and most productive portion of the earth. It has grown rich on the treasures of other countries; it has brought the silkworm from India, fine wool from Africa, the peach from Persia, the orange from China, and the potato from America. Such is the power of human skill and industry, that a barren, rugged and wild region, which nature had covered only with forests, has been completely changed by its inhabitants.

Europe, in which the beaver, a few centuries ago, built its habitation in security, on the banks of solitary rivers, has become the seat of powerful empires. Its fields yield rich harvests, its commerce brings the luxuries of every climate, its cities are adorned with palaces, it is the lawgiver of the world; and, with the exception of our own country, it extends its sway over the rest of the earth. Already has one whole continent been peopled by its colonies. A large portion of Asia is under its dominion, and Africa cannot long resist the efforts which are making, to let in the light upon her dark and hidden regions.

## 181. ALGIERS. MOROCCO. TUNIS. TRIPOLI.

*Maps of Europe, Atlantic Ocean, Africa.* Describe the route by water from Amsterdam to Algiers. Direction of Algiers from London? From Stockholm? Vienna? Berlin? Rome? Madrid? Constantinople? Direction of Algiers from England? Mouth of the Amazon? Cape Horn? From Boston? Washington? New York? From where you are?

Boundaries of Algiers? What is the capital? What part of Europe is near to Algiers? Boundaries of Morocco? Capital? Boundaries of Tunis? Capital? Boundaries of Tripoli? Capital? What is the general name of these four portions of Africa—Algiers, Morocco, Tunis, and Tripoli?

---

The Italian? The French? The Gothic? The Celtic? Slavonic? Latin? How must Europe be regarded? What of the present state of Europe? How has it grown rich? What articles has it brought from various countries? What change has been effected by human skill and industry? What has Europe become? What of the agriculture, commerce, cities and power of Europe? What continent has been peopled from Europe? What of Asia, Africa?





Barca is principally a desert; it is subject to Tripoli. Derne, the capital, was taken in 1805, by Gen. Eaton, with a small body of American and African troops, who crossed the desert from Egypt.

### 183. GENERAL VIEW OF THE BARBARY STATES.

A chain of mountains, whose tops are covered with perpetual snow, crosses the territory of the Barbary states, nearly from east to west. Between these mountains, which are called the Atlas range, and the sea, is a tract of level, well-watered and fertile land, from 50 to 200 miles in width. South of the mountains, and between them and the great desert, which stretches over a vast extent, is another tract, dry and sandy, yet very prolific in a species of fruit called dates.

The climate of these countries is delightful. On the coast, a mild, spring-like breeze prevails nearly the whole year; but the plague is sometimes introduced from Constantinople, and makes great ravages. The earth is very fruitful, where it is watered by rivers. In winter, violent showers are frequent. In January, the meadows are already adorned with verdure; and in April and May, the whole country is covered with flowers. Vegetation is vigorous and exuberant. Barley is the most important production. Wheat and other grain are extensively cultivated. The Indian fig-tree is used for hedges; and the vine, whose trunk is often as large as a common-sized tree, stretches itself in beautiful windings from one tree to another. Well-cultivated olive gardens are every where seen. Pomegranates, oranges, and melons abound. The cypress, the cedar, and the almond-tree grow every where. In all directions, bushes of white roses are seen, from which the ottar is extracted. The sugar-cane, the palm-tree and the lotus are common.

Among the domestic animals, we may notice the camel, and sheep with immense fat tails, which are esteemed a great delicacy. Wild boars and other game are abundant in the forests. In the interior, are apes, jackals, hyænas, lions, panthers, and various kinds of antelopes. Ostriches are found in the desert.

In the mountains, silver, copper, iron, lead and antimony are found. Salt is abundant. Salt springs are more numerous than fresh, and all the lakes are nearly as salt as the ocean.

There is considerable commerce between these states and various European countries on the Mediterranean. Morocco exports morocco leather, corn, wool, goatskins, &c. Tripoli exports oil,

---

What of Barca? By whom was Derne taken in 1805?

183. What crosses the Barbary states from east to west? Land between the mountains and the sea? South of the mountains? Climate on the coast? What of the plague? Soil? What of the country in January, April, and May? Vegetation? Productions? What of the fig? Vine? Olive gardens? Other fruits? Trees? What are seen every where? What are common? Domestic animals? What are abundant in the forests? What in the interior? In the desert? What are found in the mountains? What of springs? Lakes? Commercial Exports of Morocco? Exports of Tripoli?

wax, honey, salt, dates, ostrich feathers, &c. There is also considerable trade, by means of caravans, with the interior of Africa.

These states, particularly Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli, were formerly engaged in piracy. In their piratical expeditions they exhibited the utmost courage and fierceness. Their captives were generally subjected to the most galling slavery.

The Barbary states are inhabited by several races: First, the Moors, whose complexion is nearly as dark as the American Indians; they live principally in the towns and cultivated plains. They are jealous, unsociable, dissembling, incapable of love or friendship, and so idle, that they will sit whole days with their legs crossed, gazing at the passers by. They seldom laugh, have few amusements, and think it a crime to possess a book. They are devoted Mahometans, and hate and despise the Jews and Christians heartily.



The next class are the Jews, of whom there are great numbers. These people are much despised, taxed, and abused, yet the indolent Moors allow them to engross almost every species of lucrative trade and commerce. They coin the money, manufacture ornaments of all kinds, and transact the greater part of the business. Many of them acquire immense wealth, which they carefully conceal, lest the rapacious rulers should rob them of it.

There are some Turks in these states. They are principally soldiers, and in Algiers they formerly determined what individual should fill the office of dey.

The most numerous race in Barbary is that of the Arabs. This people resemble the Moors; but while the latter settle in towns and villages, the Arabs generally lead a wandering life in the country, and are sometimes called Bedouins. They are large, muscular,

and handsome, with piercing black eyes. They have teeth as white as ivory, and shining black hair. In this part of Africa, their complexion is brown; in more southern latitudes, it is much darker. They live in tribes of from 10 to 100 families, and make use of tents for shelter, instead of houses, so that they may easily remove from place to place. They are governed by one of their own number, called a sheik, and pay a reluctant tribute to the head government. Their business is war, and their wealth plunder. Wo to those who fall within the power of these robbers!

The next class are called Berbers, who are descendants of the original inhabitants of the country, and dwell in the mountains, generally in small villages, though they have some towns. They are wild, athletic, and well-formed, and bear with ease; hunger and every species of hardship. They are expert marksmen, and are, for the most part, inhuman and faithless robbers. Jealous of their liberty, they are only subject to their sovereign in name, and usually carry on war with the troops employed in collecting the taxes due to the government. Some of them are shepherds, and inhabit caves on the mountains.

Besides these several races, there are many negroes in Barbary;—most of them, however, are slaves that have been taken by the Arabs in the interior.

#### 184. DESERT OF SAHARA.

*Map of Africa.* In what direction from the Barbary states is the great desert of Africa? How is this desert bounded? Where is Fezzan? Mourzouk? Bilma? The Mooselmins? The Labdessehas? Mongearts? Tuaricks? Wadelims? What countries lie along the southern border of the great desert? Where is cape Blanco? Cape Bojador?

#### 185. DESERT OF SAHARA, CONTINUED.

The Great Desert of the north of Africa seems to be table land somewhat raised above the level of the sea. It is covered with moving sands, and here and there contains rocky heights and valleys. In the latter, the water collects and nourishes some thorny shrubs, ferns, and grass. Along the shore of the Atlantic ocean, there are mountains, but in no continued chain. For a great part of the year, the dry, heated air of the desert has the appearance of a reddish vapor, and the horizon looks like the fire of a series of volcanoes. An aromatic plant resembling thyme, acacias, and other thorny shrubs, nettles, and brambles, constitute the ordinary vegetation of the desert. A grove of date and palm-trees is sometimes, though but rarely, seen. Forests of gum-trees grow on the extreme margin of the desert, towards Senegambia. Some monkeys and a

---

Berbers. What of negroes?

185. What does the Great Desert appear to be? With what is it covered? What does it contain? What are nourished by the water in the valleys? What of the mountains on the shore of the Atlantic ocean? Air of the desert? Horizon? Vegetation? What are rarely seen? What of gum-trees? What animals support themselves on the vegetation of the desert?

few antelopes support themselves on the scanty vegetation. The ostrich also lives here, in numerous flocks, feeding on lizards and snails, together with some coarse plants. Lions, panthers, and serpents, add to the horrors of these frightful solitudes.

Scattered over this vast desert, there are occasional fertile spots, where there is water; these are called *oases*. They serve as resting-places for the caravans; and are the temporary residence of the Arab tribes, with their families and flocks. These people not only inhabit the more fertile plains around the desert, but roam over the vast bosom of the desert itself, making occasional halts of days and weeks, and removing for pasturage or plunder, as the case may require. Men, women and children, horses and other animals, live crowded together, under the same cover. They subsist on millet, maize, dates, gum, and the milk of their camels and cows: they are temperate and abstemious, to an astonishing degree. They have cattle with humps on their backs, and horses whose fleetness is equal to that of the ostrich. They have some arts among them, such as weaving cloth of hair, making leather, converting the skins of wild animals to various uses, besides manufacturing ornaments of gold and silver. They have itinerant goldsmiths, who make bracelets and other trinkets.



The caravans which cross the desert consist usually of several hundreds, and sometimes several thousands of camels, with as many men. The camels are loaded with merchandise, belonging to the merchants, who, for safety against the Arabs, and the other dangers of the desert, unite themselves with these expeditions. These caravans cross the country in various directions, and perform on this sea of sand the business accomplished by ships on the ocean. By means

What of the ostrich? Other animals? What are the oases? Their use? What of the Arabs? How do they live? On what subsist? Their character? Cattle? Horses? Arts? Describe the picture. Describe the caravans. What of caravans? What business do they perform?

of these, the whole trade of the interior of Africa is carried on with the various places on the coast.

In crossing the desert, the heat being excessive, the caravans often travel in the night, and are guided by the stars. They do not proceed in a straight line, but from one oasis to another, making halts at these places for rest and refreshment. Not only is there danger to the caravans from the Arabs, but the simoom or shoom, a dreadful burning wind, sometimes sweeps over the desert with such power, that it raises and rolls before it vast waves of red sand, resembling the billows of the ocean. The scorching heat of this wind often dries up the water of the caravans, which is carried in leather bottles for the merchants, the camels, and their drivers. In 1805, a caravan of 2000 persons and 1800 camels, not finding water at the usual resting-places, died of thirst, both men and animals.

Being forbidden by their religion the use of inebriating liquors, the merchants of the caravans know no other drink than water. Their dress is simple, and their food consists of dates and barley meal. Fortified by their frugality, and sustained by the prospect of returning to their homes, they sing as they trudge along, and when the camels seem ready to drop down with fatigue, they cheer the toiling brutes with the greater animation of their songs. Having pitched their tents, they join in prayer; supper succeeds; and when this is finished, they sit down in a ring, and converse and recite stories, till their eyes are closed in sleep.

This immense desert, which stretches from the Atlantic ocean to the confines of Egypt and Nubia, is about 3000 miles in length, and 800 in width. It appears to be nearly separated into two parts by the fertile district of Fezzan. That portion of the desert which lies west of Fezzan, is called Sahara, and is about 2000 miles in extent.

Fezzan is represented as a cultivated region, 300 miles in length by 200 in width, and contains about 100 towns and villages. It consists of an extensive valley, bounded on all sides, except on the west, by irregular mountains; The heat of summer is here intense; in winter, cold bleak winds prevail. The sultan, who resides at Mourzouk, is subject to the bashaw of Tripoli.

Fezzan derives its importance from its situation, which renders it a depot for the immense trade between the Barbary states and the central portions of Africa; by means of caravans, it maintains a regular and extensive trade with Bornou, and other portions of Central Africa. The goods sent to the southward from Fezzan, consist of fire-arms, powder, sabres, knives, paper, tobacco, &c.;

---

Why do they travel in the night? How do they proceed? What dangers do they experience? Consequence of the heat of the simoom? What happened in 1805? What are the merchants of the caravans forbidden by their religion? What of their drink? Dress? Food? Describe the journey of a caravan over the desert. What follows after pitching their tents? Extent of the desert? Division? What of the portion lying west of Fezzan? What of Fezzan? What are the goods sent from Fezzan to the south?

the articles returned are gold dust, copper, tigers' skins, civet, dried skins and slaves in large numbers. The principal town is Mourzouk, at which the English have a consul.

The Great Desert, both on the east and west of Fezzan, is inhabited by wandering tribes. The people called Mooselmins live to the north of Bojador. They remain by their fields in seed time and harvest, but wander in all directions, with their cattle, the rest of the year; having previously deposited their grain in the earth, they return to these stores as frequently as they have need. Their government is republican, and their chiefs are elected annually. Their country is populous, and they are better clothed and more prosperous than the Moroccans. They excel in breaking and managing their horses, which are among the finest in the world.

The Mongearts are a ferocious people, living between cape Blanco and cape Bojador. They allure vessels to the shore by signals, and then take possession of the crew and their stores. The Wadelims and Labdessebas, who live near cape Blanco, are described as monsters of cruelty, by a Frenchman who had the misfortune to suffer shipwreck on their coasts.

The Tuaricks are spread over the southern part of the desert, along the border of Soudan or Nigritia. They are constantly engaged in robbery, and from Bornou to Tombuctoo, the negro inhabitants of the villages are continually exposed to their ravages.

## 186. COUNTRIES OF CENTRAL AFRICA.

*Map of Europe.* Where is the country called Nigritia? In what direction must you travel to go from Tripoli to Tombuctoo, stopping at Mourzouk? What do you cross? How would you expect to travel? What of the river Niger? What lake in Bornou?

Where is Bornou? Darfoor? Houssa? Bergoo? Bamharra? Yaoor? The country of the Foulahs? Where is Tombuctoo? Direction from Morocco? Algiers? Tunis? New York? New England? From you? Where is Kouka? Kashna? Sackatoo? Segoo? Kano? Wara? Babalia? Lari? Jenne?

## 187. COUNTRIES OF CENTRAL AFRICA, CONTINUED.

The interior of Africa is imperfectly known. Various attempts have been made by European travellers to explore these regions. One of the most enterprising of these, Mungo Park, lost his life in a second expedition to this country. Denham, Clapperton and Landers, have lately succeeded in penetrating into the country, and their accounts give us certain knowledge of parts of Soudan or Nigritia; but south of the mountains of the Moon, there is a vast country called Ethiopia, which remains wholly unexplored.

Bornou is the most powerful of the Nigritian kingdoms. The

---

What are returned from the south to Fezzan? What of Mourzouk? How is the desert inhabited? Where do the Mooselmins live? What of them? Their government? Chiefs? Country? In what do they excel? Where do the Mongearts live? What of them? What people live near cape Blanco? How are they described?

187 Is the interior of Africa well known? What attempts have been made? What of Mungo Park? Messrs. Denham Clapperton and Landers? What knowledge do we gain from their accounts? What of Ethiopia? What of Bornou?

country is level, well watered, and fertile; but little grain is produced. Cotton and the indigo plant grow wild, and are the most valuable productions. Indian corn is also in extensive use. The domestic animals are dogs, sheep, goats, cows, and herds of oxen. Horses are bred, and domestic fowls are common and cheap. Bees are so numerous as in some places to obstruct the passage of travellers. Lake Tchad abounds in water fowl, many of the species being unknown in Europe. The waters are sweet, and filled with fish. Game and wild animals are abundant. Reptiles are numerous. Major Denham gives the following interesting account of his first visit to this lake:—

“By sunrise I was on the border of the lake armed with my gun. Flocks of geese and wild ducks of a most beautiful plumage were quietly feeding very near to me. My purpose of firing upon them was almost shaken. As I moved towards them, they only changed their places a little to the right or left, and appeared to have no idea that I meant them any harm.

“All this was so really new, that I hesitated to abuse the confidence with which they regarded me, and very quietly sat down to contemplate the scene before me. Pelicans and cranes four or five feet high, gray, variegated, and white, were scarcely so many yards from my side. Immense spoonbills of a snowy whiteness, widgeon, teal, yellow-legged plover, and a hundred species of unknown water fowl, were sporting before me.”

The people of Bornou are negroes, but large numbers of Arabs called Shouas have settled among them. Kouka is the capital, and the residence of the sheik. At this place, Messrs. Denham and Clapperton saw several thousand cavalry, whose bodies were defended with a covering of iron mail. At the market of this town, at least 15,000 persons were assembled. The articles at the market were various and abundant, and were brought on bullocks. The government of Bornou is in the hands of a sheik; the laws are arbitrary, and strictly executed.

There are thirteen principal towns; they are generally well built, and surrounded with walls of earth, 30 to 40 feet high, and 20 feet thick. The religion is generally Mahometan, and the customs of the people barbarous.

East of Bornou, there are several tribes; and bordering on Abyssinia and Nubia, is the kingdom of Darfoor. This country is watered by the river Bahr el Aliad, which is said to flow into the Nile. It is governed by a sultan, or sovereign, who is despotic. The elephant, rhinoceros, giraffe or camelopard, buffaloes, wild

---

Face of the country? Soil? Productions? What are the domestic animals? What of horses and fowls? Bees? What of lake Tchad? With what is it filled? What of game? Wild animals? Reptiles? What of the people of Bornou? Shouas? What of Kouka? What did Messrs. D. and C. see there? Describe the market at Kouka. Government of Bornou? Laws? Towns? Religion? Customs of the people? What of tribes east of Bornou? Where is the kingdom of Darfoor? How is it watered? Government? What animals are common?



boars and antelopes are common here. The people cultivate millet, by digging holes in the ground, and covering the seed with their feet; bestowing upon it no other labor till harvest. Wheat is cultivated, and rice grows spontaneously, in such quantities as to be little prized. Cobbe, the capital, has 6,000 inhabitants; and there are many other towns. The customs of the people are barbarous; in character they are cowardly, thievish, and deceitful.

Houssa lies west of Bornou, and is a populous and powerful kingdom. The face of the country is diversified, highly cultivated, and as neatly fenced as in England. The villages are thickly scattered over the country, which is represented as in the highest degree pleasing and beautiful. Kano is the metropolis of the kingdom. It is 15 miles in circuit, and surrounded by a wall 30 feet high. The markets are supplied with every luxury. Half the inhabitants are slaves. Boxing matches are frequent, and attract great crowds of spectators.

The Felatahs, a race of people differing from the negroes, seem to spread over a considerable part of Nigritia. In some places, they are mingled with the other inhabitants; in others, there are towns wholly or chiefly inhabited by them. They are said to be a remarkably handsome people, of a copper color. Sackatoo is their capital, and is a very populous city, laid out in regular, well-built streets; it has two large mosques, and two large markets. The sultan resides here. At this place Capt. Clapperton died, on a second expedition to the country. This kingdom, which is of modern origin, seems to be extensive and powerful, holding several others in subjection. Yaoor is one of its tributaries.



How is millet cultivated? What of Wheat? Rice? What of Cobbe? Other towns? Customs of the people in Darfoor? Where is Houssa? Face of the country? What of the villages? What of Kano? Markets? Inhabitants? Boxing matches? What of the Felatahs? What of Sackatoo? Buildings? Where does the sultan reside? Is the kingdom of the Felatahs extensive? What of Yaoor?

Tombuctoo is an extensive country, inhabited principally by negroes. The climate is salubrious, and the soil is in some parts fertile, in others sandy and barren. Various kinds of grain are cultivated. Indigo and coffee grow spontaneously in the fertile parts. In the Niger, crocodiles and the hippopotamus are bred, and huge elephants repose under trees of extraordinary size and beauty. While Mungo Park was travelling on the banks of the Niger, his attendant was seized by a crocodile; the picture on the preceding page represents this adventure.

The city of Tombuctoo has been generally supposed to be one of the largest in Africa; but M. Caillié, a French traveller, who professes to have reached that city, and spent some time there, gives a very different account of it. He describes it as situated in a vast sandy plain, about eight miles south of the river Djoliba or Niger. The country around it is exceedingly barren, and the people rely wholly upon supplies which are received from the adjacent districts.

The city forms a sort of triangle, about three miles in circuit, and contains not more than 12,000 inhabitants. The houses are low, and generally built of brick. The streets are clean, and the inhabitants dress with considerable neatness. The king is represented as a mild prince, much beloved by the people.

The inhabitants are negroes, and profess the Mahometan religion. The city is resorted to by caravans from Morocco and other parts of Africa. Its trade is considerable, but has been very much diminished by the constant dangers to which caravans are exposed from the Tuaricks. There are many Moorish merchants in the city; some of them remain till they have made their fortunes, and then return to their own country.

Bambarra is a large kingdom, which is traversed from west to east by the Niger, and is generally very fertile. The inhabitants are Moors and Negroes. By the account of M. Caillié, it appears that this kingdom is less extensive than when Mungo Park travelled in it. Jenne, the former capital of Bambarra, has been the seat of a new empire, formed by a Foulah or Felatah prince, named Lejo Ahmadon. He has recently built a new capital, called El-Landou-Lillahi.

Between Bambarra and Senegambia, there are other nations, of whom we have but little exact information. It is probable that in their general characteristics they resemble those we have described. In looking back upon this portion of Africa, embracing the various countries south of the Great Desert, between Senegambia on the west, and Nubia and Abyssinia on the east, we see a vast and fer-

---

How is Tombuctoo inhabited? Climate? Soil? Productions? Animals? Describe the picture. How is Tombuctoo described by M. Caillié? Number of inhabitants? Houses? Streets? King? What of the people? Trade? Merchants? What of Bambarra? Soil? Inhabitants? What of Jenne? Foulah prince? What of other nations? What do we see on looking back on these countries?

tile region, occupied by a confused assemblage of nations, consisting of negroes, Moors and Arabs, living in a state of barbarism, but differing in character, and exhibiting different degrees of advancement towards civilisation. Among them all, the means of subsistence are abundant, the government despotic, and the religion Mahometan.

### 188. SENEGAMBIA.

*Map of Atlantic Ocean.* In what direction is Senegambia from New England? Florida? Mexico? Colombia? The mouth of the Amazon? Cape Horn? Which is the nearest part of Africa to South America? How far from Cape Verde to Cape St. Roque?

*Map of Africa.* In what part of Africa is Senegambia? Boundaries of Senegambia? What of the Senegal river? Gambia? Grande? Niger? What capes on the coast? What islands? What is the capital? Direction of Teemboo from Algiers? Kouka? Mourzouk? Tombuctou? Fez?

### 189. SENEGAMBIA, CONTINUED.

Senegambia is an extensive country, of a diversified surface. Near the sources of the Senegal there are mountains. The banks of this river, 140 miles from the sea, are highly picturesque. A voyage up the stream would be one of the most delightful in the world, were it not for the unwholesomeness of the air, the hideous aspect of the crocodiles, and the bellowing of the hippopotami. A



large portion of the surface is occupied by immense alluvial tracts. The climate is probably the hottest in the world, owing to the easterly winds which are heated by sweeping across the burning surface of Africa. It is a very unhealthy country, particularly to Europeans; yet the French, Portuguese, and English have some

What of the means of subsistence? Government? Religion?

189. What of Senegambia? What of mountains? What of the river Senegal? Describe the picture. How is a large portion of the surface occupied? Climate? Why is it hot? Is the country healthy? Who have settlements on the coast?

settlements on the coast; these obtain large quantities of wax, ivory, gold, and gum arabic. The latter exudes from the acacia-tree, of which there are large forests on the borders of the desert.

The wild animals are elephants, monkeys, antelopes, hippopotami, spotted hyenas, jackals, crocodiles, and camelopards. The domestic animals are camels, buffaloes, asses, sheep, goats and cattle. Parroquets in flocks are seen among the trees. Gold is found on the coast.

Senegambia is occupied by various tribes, of whom we have very imperfect accounts. They are all negroes, but marked with various distinctions of person, character, and manners. They generally live under petty sovereigns, whose government has no great stability. In general, they are an amiable race, yet ignorant, barbarous, and degraded. Among these various nations, the Foulahs or Felatahs, Yalofs, and Mandingoes are the most numerous.

The Foulahs are widely diffused over Africa; large numbers of them live about the sources of the Gambia and Rio Grande. They seem to be a mixture of the Berber and negro race. Their dispositions are mild, and they have a turn for agriculture. They are Mahometans, but not very strict observers of the injunctions of their faith.

The Yalofs occupy a country little known, between the Senegal and Gambia; they are the handsomest negroes of western Africa; have woolly hair, thick lips, and are very black, with regular features. In character they are mild, hospitable, and faithful. Their religion is a mixture of Mahometanism and idolatry. They are governed by an emperor, who lives at Hickarker; the government is regular and well administered. The people manufacture cotton goods. Several states have separated from the Yalof empire, and have independent governments.

The Mandingoes are spread over the country near the sources of the Niger, and extend eastward to Bambarra. They are said to be the most numerous people in western Africa. Many of them are merchants, who trade in all the adjoining districts. They are gentle, cheerful, credulous and inquisitive.

## 190. SIERRA LEONE.

*Map of Africa.* Where is Sierra Leone? What of the Rio Grande? What island near Sierra Leone? Where is Freetown? Direction from Cairo? Morocco? Kouka? Tombuctoo?

## 191. SIERRA LEONE, CONTINUED.

The English settlement on the coast of Sierra Leone was form-

---

What is obtained by the settlers? What of acacia-trees? Wild animals in Senegambia? Domestic? Birds? Gold? How is Senegambia occupied? What of the inhabitants? Which are the most numerous? What of the Foulahs? How are the greater part of them governed? Religion? What of the Yalofs? Where is the country of the Mandingoes? What of them?

191. What settlement on the coast of Sierra Leone?

ed for the express purpose of endeavoring to civilize the Africans. In this quarter, the English have made the greatest exertions to diminish the trade in slaves, which has been carried on here for so many years. Yet it appears that the whole line of coast from Benguela to the mouth of the Senegal, swarms with slave ships, and that there are not less than 300 engaged in this wicked traffic.

The slaves procured by these ships are generally obtained of the petty sovereigns along the coast, who sell criminals and captives taken in war. Such is the avarice of these despots, that they will resort to the grossest injustice and cruelty to gratify it. Since the establishment of this traffic, every crime is punished by selling the offender to a slave dealer, and when this resource fails, they will sometimes hunt down the inhabitants of a whole village, like a flock of deer. Some make an armed resistance; others fly to the woods, and to the dens of lions and panthers, scarcely so merciless as their pursuers. In this way, whole districts have been depopulated, and nations destroyed along the coast.

One of the principal objects of the settlement of Sierra Leone has been accomplished. It now contains about 17,000 inhabitants, principally negroes; the colony is in a flourishing condition, and attests the capacity of this people to live happily in a state of civilisation. There are numerous schools, where all the children are taught to read and write; and there are churches, where the people assemble on the Sabbath for worship. Freetown is the principal town. Population, 4,000.

Not less than 10,000 liberated slaves, from the slave ships captured by the British cruisers, were in the colony in 1821. The



For what purpose was it formed? What have the English done here? What is the case, notwithstanding their exertions? How are slaves procured by the slave ships? What of the avarice of the petty sovereigns? What is the consequence of the establishment of this traffic in slaves? How many inhabitants does Sierra Leone contain? What of the colony? Schools? Churches? Population of Freetown? How many liberated slaves were in the colony in 1821?

landing of these cargoes is often a very affecting scene. The poor creatures, delivered from the hold of a slave ship, faint and emaciated by harsh treatment and disease, when received with kindness and sympathy by the inhabitants, among whom perhaps they recognise a brother, a sister, or a countryman, are overwhelmed with feelings which they find it difficult to express.

## 192. LIBERIA.

*Map of Africa.* Where is Liberia? Boundaries? What of the river Mesurado? What two capes on the coast? What two towns in Liberia? Direction of Monrovia from Algiers? Tombuctoo? Boston? New York? From where you are?

## 193. LIBERIA, CONTINUED.

In 1820, a colony was established here by the American Colonization Society, whose object was to aid in the gradual extinction of slavery in the United States, and to furnish an asylum for such of an abused race as may be willing to leave a country, in which they must always be a degraded class of beings. The colony consists of negroes from the United States, either free blacks or emancipated slaves. Since its establishment, it has received several accessions. The number of inhabitants is about 1700. Every necessary provision is made for education, and religious instruction.

The climate is fine, and the soil in the highest degree prolific. Many discouraging circumstances have contributed to retard the progress of the colony, but on the whole its condition is flourishing, and affords a fair prospect of realizing the benevolent design of its establishment.

## 194. GUINEA.

*Map of Africa.* Where is Guinea? Boundaries? What mountains in Guinea? What of the Formosa river? Lagos? Gaboon? What two gulfs in Guinea? What capes in Guinea? Where are Fernando Po, Princes, Annabon, and St. Thomas islands? Where is Coomassie? Direction from Monrovia? Tombuctoo? Tunis? Tripoli? Sierra Leone? Where is Biafra? Abomey? Benin? Popo?

## 195. GUINEA, CONTINUED.

The English seamen have divided this country into the Grain coast, Ivory coast, Gold coast, and Slave coast, according to the various objects of trade at the respective places. The region called Grain coast appears now to be partly embraced within the limits of Liberia. The Aminas, a nation who have plenty of gold, occupy the interior, back of the Ivory coast, and extend in a northern direction to a distance of fourteen days' journey. The people on the coast are represented as a warlike race, of an unsociable disposition, and,

---

Describe the picture. Describe the landing of the slaves.

193. Who made an establishment in Liberia in 1820? Its object? Of what does the colony consist? Has it received any accession? Number of inhabitants? What provision is made? Climate? Soil? What of the progress of the colony? Its condition?

195. How is Guinea divided? Where is the Grain coast? Who occupy the interior of Guinea? What of the people on the coast?

according to report, they eat human flesh. The Portuguese call them the Bad People. Elephants' tusks are sold here, weighing two hundred pounds.

To the east is the Gold coast, which derives its name from its great trade in Gold dust. The English, French, Dutch, Portuguese, and Danes, all have trading settlements here. In the interior is Ashantee, which seems to be a powerful kingdom, and one that has made greater advances in civilisation than any other on this coast. Coomassie is the capital; it possesses a palace of some magnificence, and 40,000 inhabitants. It has constant intercourse with Tombuctoo and other places on the Niger.

The Slave coast was once the resort of vessels that traded in slaves. This traffic induced the inhabitants to make war upon each



other, to obtain captives, who were sold to the traders. The country was formerly thickly inhabited, by people who excelled most other Africans in civilisation and the arts. But they have been conquered by the king of Dahomey, and a fatal check has been put to their prosperity. This king, who raised himself from insignificance by his conquests, can bring a great force into the field. His villages are large and populous. Abomey, his capital, has 24,000 inhabitants. His guard consists of 800 or 1000 women armed with muskets or javelins. Mr. Dalzel found the road to the king's cottage strewn with human skulls.

East of Dahomey is Benin, the king of which can bring 100,000 men into the field. The city of Benin, the capital, is a large place; the streets are fifteen feet broad, and the houses are low and neat.

---

What are they called by the Portuguese? What of elephants' tusks? To what circumstance does the Gold coast owe its name? What people have settlements there? What of Ashantee? Capital? What vessels once resorted to the Slave coast? Describe the picture. What was the consequence? How was the country formerly inhabited? Who conquered them? What of the king of Dahomey? What is his capital? Guard? Where is Benin? What of the king? What of the city of Benin?

The palace of the king is a vast structure defended by walls. In the market may be seen dog's flesh, roasted monkeys, bats, rats, and lizards. Biafra is a country lying east of Benin, of which little is known.

The face of the country in Guinea is very various. The heat is extreme, and the climate very fatal to Europeans. The forests are as dense as those of Guiana or Brazil. The animals are similar to those of Senegambia.

## 196. LOANGO. CONGO. ANGOLA. BENGUELA.

*Map of Africa.* Where are Loango, Congo, Angola and Benguela? Boundaries? What of the river Congo or Zaire? Coanza? Where is cape Ledo? What mountains in southern Guinea? What bay in southern Guinea? Where is St. Salvador? Direction from Morocco? Algiers? Mourzouk? Sackatoo? Sierra Leone? New York? From you? Where is Banza Loango? Loanda San Paulo? Malembo? St. Philippe?

## 197. LOANGO, CONGO, ANGOLA, BENGUELA, CONTINUED.

The country of Loango, having been drained of its inhabitants by the slave trade, is far less populous than formerly. It is reputed to be extremely unhealthy to Europeans. Banza Loango, the capital, has long, straight, clean streets, and about 1500 inhabitants, who are tolerably industrious. The face of the country in Loango is diversified with mountains and plains. It is a considerable market for slaves, who are brought from various countries in the interior.

The country of Congo is extremely fertile, and produces two crops in a year. Besides palm-trees, which are very fine, there are forests of the jasmine and wild cinnamon-trees, in great numbers. Hogs, sheep, birds, fowls, fish, and the tortoises are abundant. The little labor requisite to procure subsistence, in a climate where every thing is produced spontaneously, falls to the lot of the women. The Portuguese missionaries have obtained considerable influence here, which seems not to have been used for the moral improvement of the people. They are generally idolaters, indolent and superstitious, but cheerful, and, like all negroes, fond of dancing. The capital, called by the Portuguese St. Salvador, is situated on a high mountain in the interior. This is the residence of the king; the streets are wide, and planted with palm-trees. The houses are white-washed within and without. This city is represented as salubrious and beautiful in a high degree. Pop. 18,000.

Angola is a mountainous country, and little cultivated. Fresh water is scarce. Salt, wax and honey are the principal productions

---

Palace of the king? Market? What of Biafra? Face of the country in Guinea? Heat? Climate? Forests? Animals?

197. What of the country of Loango? Population? Is it unhealthy to Europeans? What of Banza Loango? Inhabitants? Face of the country in Loango? What of slaves? What of the soil of Congo? Crops? Trees? Animals? Upon whom does the labor fall in Congo? What of Portuguese missionaries? Character of the people? What of St. Salvador? Population? What of Angola? Productions?



of the country. The Portuguese settlements exercise considerable authority here.

Loando San Paulo is the capital of the Portuguese settlements in the west of Africa; the saints' days are here celebrated with great pomp.

Benguela, although equally subject to the Portuguese government, retains the title of kingdom and some insignificant privileges. Its interior is hilly and rugged, and shelters great numbers of elephants, rhinoceroses, zebras, and antelopes. In some of the provinces, the people are dressed in serpents' skins.

Such is the brief description afforded by travellers of these four kingdoms of southern Guinea. The soil, generally rich and fertile, returns a ready and ample harvest for the slight labor bestowed upon it by the people. A considerable part of the land is however unfit for cultivation. The mountains abound in various kinds of marble. Salt and iron mines are common. Nature, in the fertile parts all life and activity, presents to the eye a luxuriance which no description can exceed. Lilies white as snow, entire groves of tulips, tube roses and hyacinths, are seen in every direction, beside multitudes of plants unknown in other regions. Groves of mangrove, sandalwood and cedars cover the borders of the rivers. Crocodiles are found in all the rivers; lizards as large as crocodiles live on the land, and pursue sheep and other animals. The boa, a monstrous serpent, 25 or 30 feet long, darts from the trees on men and animals,



and crushes them in his folds. Of the feathered tribe, there are the ostrich, pheasant, peacock, and multitudes of gaudy parrots. It is said there is not a horse to be seen in the whole of Congo!

---

Portuguese settlements? What of Loando San Paulo? Benguela? Face of the country in Benguela? Animals? People in some provinces? Soil of southern Guinea? In what do the mountains abound? What mines are common? What does nature present? Flowers? Plants? Trees? What of crocodiles? Lizards? The boa? Describe the picture. Ostrich? Birds?

The natives of southern Guinea appear to be inferior in understanding to many other African tribes; their instincts and sentiments are gross; their passions fierce; and their manners, customs, and general mode of life, approach so near to those of mere animals, that no wonder they should have imagined that monkeys belonged to their own species.

### 198. CIMBEBAS.

*Map of Africa.* Where is Cimbebas? Direction from England? New England? From you? Boundaries? Where is N. W. point? What two capes in Cimbebas? What bay?

### 199. CIMBEBAS, CONTINUED.

The coast of Cimbebas is but little known; it is of dangerous access, and is scarcely inhabited. The English expedition, sent here to select a place to which criminals might be transported, found no spot that was not too bad for even such a purpose.

Water that can be drank is very rare, and traces of verdure are to be seen only here and there. Behind this inhospitable region, toward the interior, is said to be a wandering horde of savages, called Cimbebas. Horned cattle constitute the riches of these wanderers. Those who have 2 or 300 head of cattle are not considered rich. Theft is punished very severely. The people are clothed with ox hides, and have great decency in their external appearance. They seem to be superstitious, and are probably idolaters.

### 200. COUNTRY OF THE HOTTENTOTS.

*Map of Africa.* How is the country of the Hottentots bounded? What of the Yellow river? Orange? Zak? Where is Lagoa bay? Where is the country of the Namaquas? The Koranas? What mountains in the interior?

### 201. COUNTRY OF THE HOTTENTOTS, CONTINUED.

Between the country of the Cimbebas and Cape Colony, there is an extensive tract, extending eastward to Caffraria, and northward to the 21st degree of latitude, which seems to be inhabited by various tribes, known under the general name of Hottentots.

On the coast are the Namaquas. In their country, along the banks of the Orange river, are many elephants, lions and camelpards. The Koranas occupy a central country of great extent, which is rich in pasturage. They show in their buildings and dress some tendency to civilisation. The Boschmen, or Bushmen, a tribe of Hottentots, inhabit the mountainous country north of Cape Colony. These people appear to be in the last extreme of degra-

---

What of the natives of southern Guinea? Instincts? Manners? Mode of life?

199. What of Cimbebas? For what purpose did the English send to Cimbebas? What of water? Verdure? Horde of savages? What constitutes their riches? What of those who have 2 or 300 cattle? How is theft punished? Clothing of the people? Their religion?

201. Describe the country of the Hottentots. Tribes? Animals on the banks of the Orange river? What of the Koranas? Where do the Bushmen reside? What of this tribe?

dation to which human nature can descend. There are various tribes of Hottentots living upon the borders of the colony, and others spreading over the interior



Those who live near the colony seem to have experienced the fate of the North American Indians—a debasement of character by contact with civilized society, and a gradual diminution of their numbers. Among some of the tribes, particularly the Namaquas, the missionaries have exercised the happiest influence. The Hottentots at the several missionary stations now cultivate the fields, own large numbers of cattle, exercise various trades, and contribute liberally to the support of religious and charitable institutions, exhibiting a striking proof of the power of Christianity to elevate men from the lowest point of intellectual and moral depression.

There is a great diversity of character among the different tribes of the Hottentots. The Boschmen are tall and excessively lean, possessing a wild, unsteady, sinister expression of countenance. The natural yellow color of their skin is observable only under their eyes, where the tears excited by the smoke of the fire, round which they love to sit, sometimes wipe off the coat of soot and ashes which covers the whole body. The sting of the scorpion, very dangerous in this country to every other person, has no effect on these savages. They lead a most deplorable life. Arrayed with a bow and quiver full of arrows, they wander over the country alone or in small parties. They subsist on roots, berries, ant-eggs, grasshoppers, mice, toads, and lizards. They always use poisoned arrows in war.

The Koranas are of a mild character, living in villages consisting

---

Other tribes? What of those who live near the colony? Describe the picture. Where have the missionaries exerted a beneficial influence? What of the Hottentots at the missionary stations? What of the character of the various tribes of Hottentots? Describe the Boschmen. What of the sting of the scorpion? What of their mode of life? Subsistence? Arrows? Character of the Koranas? Mode of living?

of small, half-round huts; these are made of a frame-work of sticks, covered with matting, and are disposed in a circle, within which the cattle are placed at night for safety against the lions and other wild beasts. The colonial Hottentots have a feminine appearance, with a complexion, when not concealed by grease and dirt, of a yellowish brown. They are fond of trinkets, and are indolent and dull; but harmless, honest, faithful and affectionate.

In the interior, the tribes possess many cattle, and some of them seem to enjoy a tolerable existence. Covered by the skin of the sheep, the antelope or the lion, besmeared with grease of a black or red color, and armed with a short club, the savage Hottentot, singing and dancing, wanders about in the midst of the herds which form his riches.

## 202. COLONY OF THE CAPE.

*Map of Africa.* Where is the Colony of the Cape? Boundaries? What of Zak river? What three bays in Cape Colony? What two capes in Cape Colony? What is the capital? Where is Cape Town? Direction from St. Salvador? Morocco? Algiers? Tunis? Mourzouk? Sackatoo? Boston? From where you are?

## 203. COLONY OF THE CAPE, CONTINUED.

The southern point of Africa was discovered by the Portuguese navigators, a few years before the discovery of America. Cape Town was founded in 1652, and peopled by criminals exiled from Holland, and by unfortunate Frenchmen who fled from religious persecution. The Dutch settlers, reducing the Hottentots to slavery, or driving them beyond the mountains, extended the Cape settlement to nearly its present limits. It was captured by the English, and is now their most important possession in Africa. Its extent is nearly equal to that of the island of Great Britain. Its population, in 1822, was 120,000.

The people are descendants of English, Germans, French, and Dutch, chiefly the latter. On the east, west, and south, the country is washed by the ocean; on the north it is bounded by a range of mountains. Several ranges, one rising above the other, divide the country into successive terraces of different elevations, between which lie belts of fertile land and vast barren plains. The Table mountain, near Cape Town, is a stupendous mass of naked rock, rising almost perpendicularly about 4000 feet in height. The soil is various, but not generally fertile. The cultivation is imperfect, and the inhabitants depend principally on pasturage.

Lions, tigers, wolves, hyænas, buffaloes, and jackals, are nume-

---

What of the colonial Hottentots? Tribes of the interior? Appearance and modes of life of the savage Hottentots?

203. When was the southern point of Africa discovered? When was Cape Town founded? How peopled? What of the Dutch settlers? To whom does the cape settlement now belong? Its extent? Population? From whom are the people descended? Boundaries of the country? Face of the country? What of Table mountain? Soil? Cultivation? Dependence of the inhabitants? What animals are numerous near the settlement?

rous in the vicinity of the settlements. In more remote parts are the elephant, rhinoceros, zebra, wild ass, and herds of antelopes, some of which contain 10,000. The ostrich is common; vultures, eagles and kites inhabit the mountains. Cape Town is the capital; it has a population of 18,000 inhabitants, nearly half of them slaves. The society is wholly of a commercial character. The principal export is Cape wine, made of grapes which were first introduced here by the French settlers.

This colony is important to Great Britain, as a connecting link between that country and her East Indian possessions. The fleets going to India stop here for refreshment. Mahometanism prevails extensively among the negroes, particularly the slaves, from an aversion of their masters to have them become Christians. The



Dutch settlers, who live in the interior, are called boors, and possess large numbers of Hottentot slaves; yet they are indolent and stupid, exhibiting the utmost wretchedness in the midst of plenty. The preceding picture represents a scene among these boors.

## 204. CAFFRARIA.

*Map of Africa.* Where is Caffraria? Direction from you? Boundaries? Where is Port Natal?

## 205. CAFFRARIA, CONTINUED.

Under the name of Caffres, are several hordes of savages, occupying the south-eastern coast of Africa. They inhabit a country which, till lately, has been little known. Along the shore, the country is marshy, but very fertile. It abounds in shrubs and flowers, many

In more remote parts? What is common? What birds inhabit the mountains? What of Cape Town? Principal export? Why is this colony important to Great Britain? Religion? What people are called boors? Describe the picture. Character of the boors?

205. Who are the Caffres? Where do they live? What of the country along the shore?

of them exceedingly beautiful. In the interior are ranges of mountains running parallel to the shore. Numerous rivers, with steep banks, traverse these mountains, and find their way across the level country to the sea.

The Caffres appear to be either a distinct race, or a mixture of the Negro and Arab. They are a handsome, vigorous people, of an iron gray complexion, with frizzled, but not woolly hair.

Capt. Rose, who recently travelled among the Caffres, gives the following description:—"The chief is generally distinguished from his followers, by a covering of tiger's skin. When he stands surrounded by his armed attendants, wrapped in their dark cloaks, it forms a most imposing sight. Their figures are the noblest my eye ever gazed upon; their movements the most graceful; their attitudes the proudest. I have watched a group of Caffres as they stood around me, and marked their soft, pleasing manners, and mild eyes, and wondered they could ever be savage. But when the discourse suddenly turned upon war, their eyes assumed a vindictive glare, and their lips curved with stern vengeance."

This interesting people have experienced the fate of all other savages, whose country has been wrested from them by European settlers. They have been shot like wild beasts, and, at a recent date, many of their villages have been burned, their cattle carried off, and their women and children left to perish by famine.

The Caffres are of simple habits, dress in sheep-skins, use no salt, have no other drink than water, and live chiefly on milk in the form of curd. Their dwellings are low, circular cabins, constructed by the women. Cattle are of the first importance, and are the chief objects of affection to a Caffre. Their cows are said to possess




---

What of mountains? Rivers? What of the Caffres? How does Capt. Rose describe them? How have they suffered? Habits? Dress? Subsistence? Dwellings? What are the chief objects of affection to a Caffre? What of their cows?

uncommon docility, and to follow their masters like dogs. The common amusement of the Caffres is a dance, very rugular, stiff, and ridiculous. War and hunting are the favorite pursuits of the men. They have elephant hunts, which are laborious and dangerous. They also have lion hunts. In these they encircle the animal, and gradually approach him; he leaps upon one of the party, who immediately throws himself on the ground, covering his body with his shield. The others at this instant spring upon the lion, and pierce him with their spears. The women generally accompany these expeditions.

## 206. COUNTRIES BETWEEN CAFFRARIA AND ABYSSINIA.

*Map of Africa.* Boundaries of Monomotapa? Mozambique? Zanguebar? Ajan? Adel? Where is Madagascar? What straits between Adel and Arabia? What capes along the coast from Caffraria to Abyssinia? What channel between Mozambique and Madagascar? What of the Zambese river? What mountains in Mozambique? What islands along the coast? Where is the town of Mozambique? Sofala? Magaloxa? Berbera? What direction are they from Algiers? Morocco? Tripoli? St. Salvador? Boston? From where you are?

## 207. COUNTRIES BETWEEN CAFFRARIA AND ABYSSINIA, CONTINUED.

Between Caffraria and Mozambique, the country along the coast is inhabited by various tribes. Sofala, extending 150 miles along the shore, is occupied by a people resembling the Caffres. The capital is a town of the same name. The Portuguese maintain a fort here, but the town is a mere village, composed chiefly of huts. The country is thinly inhabited, and traversed by vast herds of elephants; ivory affords a staple article of commerce. Gold



What is their favorite amusement? Pursuits of the men? What of elephant hunts? Describe a lion hunt. Describe the picture.

207. How is the country between Caffraria and Mozambique inhabited? How is Sofala occupied? Where is the Portuguese fort? How is the country inhabited? Traversed? What is a staple article of commerce? What of gold dust?

dust is also obtained and exported in considerable quantities. Some learned men suppose Sofala to be the Ophir of the Scriptures, to which Solomon sent ships for gold.

Behind Sofala is the country of Monomotapa. The ruins of ancient edifices declare this to have been once the seat of a civilized and numerous people. The present king is one of the most powerful princes in Africa. The people are said to go nearly naked, are superstitious, and are believers in magic and enchantments. The country abounds in rice, maize, fruits, and wild beasts, common to southern Africa. There are mines in which gold is found imbedded in rocks.

The coast of Mozambique every where presents dangerous reefs and shoals, interspersed with a great number of small islands. The city of Mozambique is a Portuguese town, situated on an island. It is the principal town belonging to the Portuguese settlements on this coast. The trade in gold, ivory and slaves was formerly very extensive, but has now much declined. Pop. 3,000. The interior of this country is occupied by powerful negro tribes, who detest the Portuguese, and sometimes extend their ravages to the immediate vicinity of the city of Mozambique.

The coast of Zanguebar is inhabited by savages. The interior is almost wholly unknown. Considerable trade is carried on with these people, principally through the Moors, who reside on the islands along the coast. The king is a negro, and receives much respect. He is however under the control of a Moorish vizier, sent by the powerful sheik of the island of Zanzibar. The country is described as possessing a burning climate, and sandy deserts;—as filled with crocodiles, leopards of a large size, innumerable elephants, and multitudes of other wild animals.

The eastern coast of Ajan presents to the eye of the navigator only a desolate mass of rocks and sands, where occasionally a wandering ostrich may be seen. The northern portion produces abundance of all sorts of provision, from which it derives considerable commerce.

Adel is the principal kingdom on this coast. It is ruled by a king, who assumes the title of Iman. The inhabitants have an olive complexion, with long hair, and do not in the least resemble the Caffres. The interior is ranged by tribes of Bedouin Arabs.

## 208. ABYSSINIA.

*Map of Africa.* Where is Abyssinia? Boundaries? What streams are in the northern

---

Describe the picture. What do some learned men suppose? Where is Monomotapa? What do its ruins declare? What of the present king? People? In what does the country abound? What of mines? What does the coast of Mozambique present? What of the city of Mozambique? What of trade? Population? How is the interior of the country occupied? How is the coast of Zanguebar inhabited? What of the interior? How is trade carried on with the people? What of the king? Under whose control is he? How is Zanguebar described? What of the eastern coast of Ajan? The northern portions? What of the kingdom of Adel? Inhabitants? How is the interior occupied?



part? What lake in Abyssinia? What is the capital? Where is Gondar? Direction from Cape Town? Mourzouk? Coomassie? Morocco? Tunis? New York? From you? Where is Axum? Zeila?

### 209. ABYSSINIA, CONTINUED.

Abyssinia, the ancient Ethiopia, is in-length about 770 miles; in width, 550. The number of inhabitants is from four to five millions, the greater part of whom are of Arabian extraction, mixed with Jews, Turks, and negroes. The country south and west is partly occupied by barbarous tribes, the names of which have scarcely reached us.

Abyssinia is a country of mountains intersected by deep and extensive valleys. The climate varies with the surface, but in general it is temperate and healthy. The soil is productive, where it



can be cultivated. It abounds in the wild animals common to Africa, and of birds there is an immense variety. The government is despotic and irregular. The Gala, a savage nation, are now in possession of Gondar, the capital, with the adjacent districts. The inhabitants are in a barbarous state; many of their customs are savage and brutal. The religion consists of a collection of traditions, doctrines and ceremonies, derived partly from the Jewish and Christian faith. The people boast that their country is the Sheba of the scriptures. It is rich in gold, iron, grain, and fruits. Commerce is in the hands of Jews, Armenians, and Turks.

Gondar, according to the report of a native, equals Grand Cairo in extent and population. This, however, is doubtless exaggerated. It contains 100 churches, nominally Christian; it is but meanly built, and the houses are chiefly of clay.

---

209. Extent of Abyssinia? Number of inhabitants? What of them? How is the country south and west inhabited? Face of the country in Abyssinia? Climate? Soil? Animals? Describe the picture; birds; government. What nation possesses Gondar and the adjacent countries? What of the inhabitants of Abyssinia? Customs? Religion? What do the people boast? In what is the country rich? What of the commerce? What of Gondar?

# 210. NUBIA.

*Map of Africa.* Where is Nubia? Boundaries? What two countries in Nubia? What of the river Nile, and its branches? Where is Sennar? Direction from Tunis? Tripoli? Tombuctoo? Boston? Where is Massua? Shandy? Dongola? Suakem? Moscho? Chigg. e?

## 211. NUBIA, CONTINUED.

Nubia is an extensive region of mountains and deserts, the boundaries of which are vague and uncertain. It is inhabited by numerous tribes of wandering Arabs, each governed by its petty chief. From January to April, it is scorched up with insupportable heat. The burning sands render travelling impracticable, except by night.



The traveller often finds no water to allay his thirst, for the murderous Arabs lie in ambush near the few springs the country contains. On the banks of the Nile, a high degree of fertility rewards the labors of those who cultivate the soil. The southern parts are watered by several rivers, and wear a fertile aspect.

The country now called Sennar was the central seat of the empire of ancient Ethiopia, and still contains many vestiges of antiquity. The government is despotic; the religion Mahometan, tinged with some pagan and Christian rites. The city of Sennar is the capital. It is a commercial place, surrounded by a narrow district of great fertility. In this city is the palace of the king, the magnificence of which announces a great sovereign for this country.

Dongola is a kingdom of which we have little recent information. The capital is a city of the same name. It is a rich and commercial place. The palace of the king, like that of all the sovereigns of Africa, is a vast cottage. The inhabitants export slaves, gold dust,

211. What of Nubia? How is it inhabited? Climate from January to April? What of the burning sands? Travellers? Describe the picture. What of the banks of the Nile? Southern parts of the country? What of Sennar? Government? Religion? City of Sennar? Palace of the king? What of Dongola? Capital? What is the palace of the king? What do the inhabitants of Dongola export?

ivory, and ostrich feathers. Persons of rank here go bare-headed. The religion is Mahometan. The people are extremely ignorant and dissolute.

On the borders of Egypt in Nubia, along the banks of the Nile, there are numerous monuments of ancient art, such as temples, obelisks, and statues. Some of these monuments are Egyptian, and others Grecian; and are incontestable evidences that these regions were inhabited, ages since, by a people of astonishing taste, skill and power.

## 212. EGYPT.

*Map of Africa.* Where is Egypt? Boundaries? In what direction from New England? From where you are? What of the Nile? What is the capital? Where is Cairo? Direction from Gondar? Sierra Leone? Tombuctoo? Cape Town? Boston? From you? Where is Alexandria? Thebes? Rosetta? Siout? Cosseir?

## 213. EGYPT, CONTINUED.

Having passed around the maritime borders of Africa, and visited the numerous tribes that dwell along its coasts, we arrive at Egypt. If we could enjoy the privilege of visiting this renowned land, we should see evidences on every hand of its ancient power and grandeur. We should also discover that oppression, misery, distrust, and discord, hold possession of a country so well fitted to become the abode of happiness and prosperity.

Egypt is divided into Upper, Middle, and Lower. Upper Egypt includes the southern portion bordering on Nubia. Lower Egypt embraces a small tract on the Mediterranean sea. Middle Egypt lies between the two. The Nile, in passing through Upper and Middle Egypt, for a distance of about 500 miles, flows between two parallel ranges of mountains, affording a valley of 15 to 25 miles in width. The Nile enters the Mediterranean by two principal mouths. The regions east and west of the mountains which enclose the Nile, consist of deserts. The climate of Egypt is excessively hot, and the country is never visited by rain; thunder and lightning are unknown. The simoom, a terrible wind, sometimes comes from the desert, and, on account of its heat and dryness, threatens the extinction of animal life. The plague is also generated here, and spreads its ravages into various other countries. The soil is in the highest degree prolific in Lower Egypt where it is inundated by the Nile. In Upper Egypt the land is watered from the Nile, by artificial streams distributed over its surface. The productions are various kinds of grain, and fruits in great abundance and perfection.

---

What of persons of rank? Religion? People? What may be seen on the borders of Egypt in Nubia? What do these monuments prove?

213. What should we see on visiting Egypt? What should we discover? How is Egypt divided? What does Upper Egypt include? Lower Egypt? Middle Egypt? Between what does the Nile flow? How enter the Mediterranean? Regions east and west of the mountains? Climate? Rain? Thunder and Lightning? Describe the simoom. What of the plague? Soil in Lower Egypt? Upper Egypt? Productions?



Egypt abounds in the most remarkable antiquities. The pyramids are perhaps the most astonishing monuments of human labor. That of Cheops, which is the largest, is 499 feet high, with a square base of 693 feet extent, consisting chiefly of a solid mass of masonry. There are extensive catacombs existing in various places, from which mummies, or embalmed bodies, are obtained; some of these were deposited 3 or 4000 years ago. At Thebes, in Upper Egypt, are remains, which are calculated to fill the beholder with astonishment. Almost the whole extent of eight miles along the river, is covered with magnificent portals, obelisks decorated with sculpture, forests of columns, and long avenues of colossal statues. One of the temples is a mile and a half in circumference. It has 12 principal entrances; the body of the temple consists of a prodigious hall or portico; the roof is supported by 134 columns. Four beautiful obelisks mark the entrance to the shrine, a place of sacrifice, which contains three apartments built entirely of granite. The temple of Luxor probably surpasses in beauty and splendor all the other ruins of Egypt. In front are two of the finest obelisks in the world; they are of rose-colored marble, 100 feet in height. But the objects which most attract attention, are the sculptures, which cover the whole of the northern front. They contain, on a great scale, a representation of a victory gained by one of the ancient kings of Egypt, over his Asiatic enemies. The number of human figures introduced amounts to 1,500; 500 on foot, and 1,000 in chariots. Such are some of the remains of a city, which perished long before the records of authentic history begin. Its story is recorded only in the dim lights of poetry and tradition, which might

---

Describe the picture. In what does Egypt abound? What of the pyramids? Extent of the largest? What are obtained from the Catacombs? Remains at Thebes? With what is the country along the river covered? Describe one of the temples. Temple of Luxor? Remarks on Thebes.

be suspected of fable, did not these mighty witnesses remain to attest their veracity.

Cairo, in Middle Egypt, is the most populous city in Africa. It contains 259,000 inhabitants, and is surrounded by a wall of stone. It has three or four beautiful gates, built by the Mamelukes, uniting a simple style of architecture with an air of grandeur and magnificence. The streets are narrow, unpaved, and gloomy, the houses having the appearance of so many prisons. The sombre aspect of the city is a little relieved by several large irregular squares, and many handsome mosques. The number of the latter is said to be 300.

Alexandria, in Lower Egypt, is built on a low sandy strip of land, formed by the sea. Its ancient glory is still attested by the extensive ruins by which it is surrounded. It is divided into the old and new town; the latter is much the most extensive. An immense accumulation of ruins, mostly buried in the sand, Pompey's pillar, Cleopatra's needles, the cisterns, the catacombs, and columns, some entire, and some broken, scattered here and there, are the sad remains of this once rich and splendid city. Pompey's pillar is a very remarkable monument, and 95 feet high. Cleopatra's needles are two obelisks, one thrown down and the other standing; 58 1-2 feet long, and seven feet broad, on each side, at the base. They are composed each of a single block of granite, covered with hieroglyphics. The catacombs are very extraordinary monuments. They begin at the extremity of the old city, and extend a considerable distance along the coast, forming what was anciently called the *City of the Dead*. They consist of grottoes cut in rocks: each one that has been opened has been found to contain three coffins. The population of Alexandria is supposed to be 20,000.

There are several other towns in Egypt of notoriety. Among them are Damietta and Rosetta. Egypt is subject to Turkey, and is governed by a pacha in the name of the Porte. The religion is Mahometan. The present pacha seems to possess a degree of intelligence and public spirit superior to his predecessors. He has introduced many European arts, and the hope may fairly be admitted, that the condition of this miserable country may be essentially improved.

The present inhabitants of Egypt are Copts and Arabs, Turks and Jews. The former are the original inhabitants of the country, profess Christianity, and, being the only persons who can read and write, transact the business. The Arabs are of two classes; first, the husbandmen and artisans; and second, the Bedouins or Arabs of the desert, who live in rocks, or sequestered places, where water can

---

What of Cairo? Its gates? Streets? Houses? What of the squares and mosques? Where is Alexandria? How is its ancient glory attested? How is it divided? Remains of the city? Pompey's pillar? Cleopatra's needles? Catacombs? Population of Alexandria? Other towns? Government of Egypt? Religion? Present pacha? Inhabitants of Egypt? What of the Copts? Arabs? Describe the Bedouins.

be obtained: they sometimes unite in tribes, and live in low, smoky tents, which they shift from the desert to the banks of the river, and back again, as suits their convenience. These people are in general robbers, and are terrible to travellers and peaceful husbandmen. The Turks and Jews in Egypt are numerous in the cities. The Mamelukes were formerly the ruling people. They consisted chiefly of Georgian and Circassian slaves, who became soldiers and domineered over the country. They were all horsemen, had a very martial appearance, and were the most desperate fighters in the world. These soldiers have been expelled the country.

#### 214. AFRICAN ISLANDS.

*Map of Africa, and Map of Atlantic Ocean.* Tell where the following islands are situated, with their direction from New York, cape Horn, and Cairo; namely, the Azores; Madeiras; Canaries; cape Verd islands; islands of the gulf of Guinea; St. Helena; Ascension; St. Matthew's; Madagascar; Mauritius; Bourbon; Comoro isles; and Socotra.

#### 215. AFRICAN ISLANDS, CONTINUED.

The islands which surround Africa, and are usually classed with it, are the Azores or Western Isles, Madeiras, Canaries, Cape Verd islands, islands of the gulf of Guinea, St. Helena, Ascension, St. Matthew's, on the west; Madagascar, Mauritius, Bourbon, Comoro isles, and Socotra on the east, with some others of less note. These islands are, the greater part of them, in the possession of various European powers.



The Azores, sometimes called the Western Islands, are situated in the Atlantic ocean, at from 900 to 1300 miles from the coast of Portugal, to which country they belong. The most important of the Azores are St. Michael, Fayal, and Terceira. The capital of

Character? What of the Mamelukes? What of Turks and Jews?

215. What are the African islands? Describe the picture. What of the Azores?

Terceira is Angra; of St. Michael, Ponta Del Gada. The climate of these islands is delightful, and the soil in general fertile, abounding in corn, grapes, oranges, lemons, and other fruits.

The Madeira isles, also belonging to Portugal, consist of a group, of which Madeira and Porto Santo are the most important. They lie about 400 miles from the coast of Morocco. They enjoy a perpetual spring, and their climate is truly delightful. The principal island, Madeira, is 120 miles in circumference, and contains about 100,000 inhabitants; its chief town is Funchal. This island is celebrated for its wine, which is exported to all parts of the world.

The Canary islands, belonging to Spain, consist of a considerable group, about 150 miles west of Morocco. Their chief products are wheat, barley, sugar-cane, wines, fruits and silk. Hence come the beautiful birds called Canary birds. These islands are 13 in number, but only seven of them are inhabited; namely, Palma, Ferro, Gomera, Teneriffe, Canary, Forteventura, and Lancerota. The most remarkable island is Teneriffe, famous for its lofty peak, or mountain, which is visible at a vast distance. It is covered with snow a great part of the year, and is 12,500 feet in height. This island is volcanic, and subject to earthquakes, and in 1704 an earthquake destroyed several towns and many thousands of the inhabitants. The capital of the Canaries is Palma, in the island properly called Canary. The inhabitants of the whole amount to about 160,000, of whom nearly half reside in Teneriffe.

The cape Verd islands, belonging to Portugal, are about 16 in number, but some of them are barren rocks, and unworthy of notice. They lie 390 miles west of cape Verd. The chief island is St. Jago, which is about 160 miles in circumference. They are noted for their trade in salt; hence they are denominated by the Dutch, the Salt islands. Their climate is hot and unhealthy. Porto Praya is the chief town.

The islands in the gulf of Guinea consist of Fernando Po, Prince's island, St. Thomas, and Annabon. The three latter are claimed by Portugal, which has settlements upon them. Of Fernando Po, the sovereignty remains with its native chiefs. The people are rude, but hospitable. The new British settlement named Clarence is on the north side of this island, which abounds in rich tropical productions.

St. Helena is 1200 miles from Africa, and about 1800 from South America. It is 10 miles long and 7 broad, and presents to the sea, throughout its whole extent, nothing but an immense wall of perpendicular rock, from 600 to 1200 feet in height, seeming like a castle in the midst of the ocean. It was selected by the conquerors of Napoleon Bonaparte for his place of imprisonment, and here, in 1821, that remarkable individual died. It is also frequently resorted to as a place of refreshment, by ships returning from India.

---

The Madeira isles? What of the Canary islands? Describe Teneriffe. What of the cape Verd islands? What of the islands in the gulf of Guinea? What of St. Helena?

**Ascension** is a small island, situated to the northwest of **St. Helena**. It is entirely barren, and uninhabited, but is frequented by home-bound ships on account of its excellent harbor, and the fish, sea fowl, and turtle which it affords. **St. Matthew's** lies north of **Ascension** island, nearly under the equator.

**Madagascar** is the third island in size on the globe. Its length is 900 miles, and its width 240; it is nearly twice as extensive as the whole of Great Britain and Ireland. Few islands are more pleasant and fertile than **Madagascar**. It is diversified with a pleasing variety of mountains, hills, valleys, woods and open plains, watered by numerous rivers, and the air is rendered cool and healthy by constant breezes from the sea. Its population is estimated at 4,000,000. It is divided into several kingdoms, and is inhabited by people of different complexions. Some of them are nearly white, some tawny, and some black. Those of a light, and those of a tawny complexion are descended from the Arabs. Many of them are Mahometans, and the remainder, pagans; but they have neither mosques nor temples, and entertain a very imperfect notion of the religions they profess.

The French placed a colony here in 1642, but the natives drove them out in 1657, and have ever since retained the sole possession. Nearly all the tropical vegetables grow here spontaneously, or may be successfully cultivated. It abounds in corn, cattle, fowl, fruits, precious stones, iron, copper and tin.

**Mauritius**, or the Isle of France, now belonging to Great Britain, is a considerable island of the Indian ocean, lying 560 miles east of **Madagascar**. It is about 350 miles in circumference. Its capital is Port Louis. The general object of cultivation is indigo, of which four or five crops are produced in a year. The air of this island is salubrious, but the soil is not very fertile, and it is much annoyed by hurricanes. It has an excellent harbor, which renders it important as a place of call on the voyage to India, and as a station for privateers and cruisers in time of war. It is well fortified, and carries on considerable trade.

**Bourbon**, belonging to France, is about 60 miles in length and 45 in breadth, and lies about 400 miles east of **Madagascar**. It is very fertile, and is particularly noted for its excellent coffee and tobacco.

The Comoro islands form a considerable cluster in the channel of Mozambique, about midway between **Madagascar** and the continent of Africa. The chief island is Joanna, which affords plenty of provisions, and such fruits as are common to the torrid zone; hence it is usual for the East Indian ships bound for Bombay, to put in here for refreshments. The inhabitants are a kind of negroes, of the Mahometan faith, and entertain seamen with hospitality.

---

What of **Ascension** island? Length of **Madagascar**? Width? Extent? Face of the country? Population? Inhabitants? History? What of **Mauritius**? Describe the island of **Bourbon**. What of the Comoro islands?



The island of Socotra is fertile, populous, and of considerable extent. The inhabitants, who came originally from Arabia, are Mahometans.

## 216. AFRICA. GENERAL VIEW.

*Map of Africa, and Map of Atlantic Ocean.* How is Africa bounded? Which is the most northern part of Africa? The most eastern? Southern? Western? What lakes in Africa? Where is lake Tchad? Dembea? Maravi? What islands near the western coast of Africa? In what direction are the Azores from where you are? The Canaries? Cape Verd islands? St. Matthew's? Ascension? St. Helena? Which is the most southern of these islands? The most northern? The most western? The most eastern? What islands on the eastern coast of Africa? Which is the largest? In which direction is Madagascar from cape Verd? Cape of Good Hope? From Boston? From you? Cape St. Roque? From England?

What capes on the northern coast of Africa? Eastern? Southern? Western? Where is cape Anbra? Cape St. Mary? What deserts in Africa? Where are the Atlas mountains? In what direction do they lie? Where are the mountains of the Moon? Their direction? Where are the Kong mountains? Where are the Lupata mountains? Their direction? What river empties into the Mediterranean? What rivers flow into the Indian ocean? Into the Atlantic? Describe the Nile; Zambese; Yellow; Orange; Ooanza; Congo, or Zaire; Formosa; Mesurado; Grande; Gambia; Senegal.

What countries along the northern coast of Africa? Along the eastern coast? The southern? The western? What countries in the central parts of Africa? In what direction is Tunis from Cairo? Tripoli from Cairo? Algiers? Morocco? Sackatoo? Mourzoak? Fez? Tombuctoo? Cape Town? Sofala? Gondar? Mozambique? St. Salvador? Cobbe?

## 217. AFRICA. GENERAL VIEW CONTINUED.

Though Africa has been known for 3,000 years, yet a large portion of its geography is to this day involved in doubt and mystery. It was from the African shores that the Egyptian colonies, in the most remote ages, brought to Europe, then inhabited by savage nations, the first germs of civilisation. At the present day, Africa is the latest portion of the world to permit its territories to be explored, and to receive from enlightened nations a knowledge of the arts of civilized life.

The cause of our ignorance in respect to Africa, and particularly its interior, may be found in its form. It is a vast peninsula, 5,000 miles in length, and 4,600 in breadth, and contains 13,000,000 square miles, an extent about four times as great as that of Europe. Yet Africa has few long or navigable rivers, and no gulfs or inlets, which open a way into its immense internal regions. America, Asia, and Europe, by means of their great rivers, their seas, bays, and gulfs, may be penetrated with ease and safety; but Africa can only be traversed by land; and, its borders being occupied, for the most part, by savage and hostile tribes, and ferocious wild beasts, it is inaccessible to the researches of travellers, and remains to this day, throughout a great part of its interior, utterly unknown.

The outline of this country is marked by four great promontories: Cape Serra, in the north, projects into the Mediterranean; cape

---

What of the island of Socotra?

217. Why is the world so ignorant of the geography of Africa? What is Africa? Length? Breadth? Extent? Four great promontories in Africa?

Verd points due west into the Atlantic; cape Guardafui points towards the rising sun; the cape of Good Hope makes a long excursion toward the Southern ocean. On three remarkable points, Africa comes close up to the rest of the old continent. In the north-west, the narrow strait of Gibraltar divides it from Europe; in the east, Arabia is separated from it by the strait of Babelmandel; in the northeast, the low sandy isthmus of Suez connects it with Asia.

In some parts excessively parched, in others marshy, or flooded, the surface of Africa presents strange irregularities. The vast plains, which occupy the greater part of its extent, are covered with sand and gravel with a mixture of sea shells, and seem like the basins of seas that have evaporated and left them dry. Such is the famous Desert of Sahara, where the sands, moving like the surges of the ocean, are said to have swallowed up entire tribes. Amid the deserts, there are springs, which burst forth and create spots of verdure, called Oases. Surrounded by the level sands, these seem like islands in the sea. They are fancifully described by an ancient writer, as marking the desert as the spots of the leopard mark the skin of that animal. Other plains in this country, of a marshy nature, and filled with stagnant lakes, emit effluvia the most destructive to human life, or breed disgusting reptiles and formidable animals of large size.

The mountains of Africa are more distinguished for their breadth, than their height. The chain of mount Atlas, on the north, running through the Barbary states, extends more than half across the continent. This chain divides the country, which lies between the Desert of Sahara and the Mediterranean sea, into two nearly equal portions. That portion which lies to the north of these mountains, from 50 to 200 miles in width, is exceedingly fertile, and forms the cultivated part of the Barbary states. Between these mountains and the desert on the south, the country is dry and sandy, but is said to produce dates in such abundance as to be called "the country of Dates," in the language of the inhabitants. That part of this range of mountains which forms the eastern boundary of Morocco, is by far the highest, and reaches an elevation of more than 13,000 feet, and, though in the latitude of Georgia, the peaks are covered with perpetual snow. This range of mountains, inhabited principally by the Berbers, is intersected by deep, but fertile valleys, filled with villages and gardens, and in winter, when New England is buried in snow, these are clothed with the most beautiful verdure. The rivers which flow from these mountains, though small, are numerous; those which descend the northern declivity empty into the Mediterranean; those on the south are lost in the sands of the desert.

---

At what three points does Africa come up to the eastern continent? What of the surface of Africa? What of the mountains of Africa? Describe the Atlas chain. What of the Kong mountains? Mountains of the Moon?

The central mountains of Africa are the mountains of the Moon on the east, and the Kong mountains on the west. The former give rise to the Nile and other rivers. Amid the latter are the sources of the Senegal, the Gambia, and the Niger.

Along the borders of the Red sea is the Troglodytic chain of mountains, resembling Atlas in its wild and broken cliffs. These, though very imposing to the eye of the traveller, are of very moderate elevation. They terminate in Abyssinia, and are supposed to connect the northern or Atlas range with the central ranges of Africa. The Lupata chain, of which but little is known, extends from cape Guardafui to the cape of Good Hope, where it terminates in high barren plains and steep mountains with flat summits, one of which has received the significant name of Table mountain. Between the Kong mountains and the cape of Good Hope, there are some elevations, but the country is little known, except along the margin of the Atlantic, and no considerable ranges of mountains appear yet to have been discovered.

Africa contains a great number of rivers which never reach the sea. Some of them are considerable, and the Niger was long supposed to be one of these, but it has been recently ascertained that it empties into the Atlantic ocean in the bay of Benin.

Besides the Niger and the Nile, the other principal rivers of Africa are the Senegal, Gambia, Grande, Congo, or Zaire, Coanza, Orange, all of which flow into the Atlantic, and the Kiska, Sofala, and Cuama, which flow into the Indian ocean. One of the peculiar characteristics of the rivers of Africa is the periodical swellings, by which they overflow the countries through which they pass, and particularly those round their mouths. These risings regularly take place every season, and are remarkable for the great body of water which they bring down, and the quantity of mud they deposit. The rainy season commences in April, and continues till September. The heavens, before heated like a flame, now seem transformed into fountains of water; the copious floods which they pour down, collect on the level table lands of the interior, where they form immense sheets of water, or temporary lakes; these lakes soon overflow, and suddenly send down into the rivers, previously much swollen, an enormous volume of water impregnated with the soft earth over which it has for sometime stagnated.

The character of high fertility has long been attached to a large portion of the Barbary states; it is equally certain that in other parts of Africa, vegetation displays great vigor and magnificence. The inhabitants find abundant food at a very trifling expense of labor. The corn-stalks bend under their load of ears, the vine attains

---

What of the Troglodytic chain? What of the Lupata chain? What of the western border of Africa between the Kong mountains and the cape of Good Hope? What of rivers in Africa? What of the Niger? What of the principal rivers of Africa, beside the Niger and the Nile? What is one of the peculiarities of the rivers of Africa? What of the rainy season? Describe the effects of the rains. What of the fertility of the soil in Africa? Productions?

*Let the pupil here be examined in Table No. 18, in the Atlas*

a gigantic size, melons and pumpkins acquire enormous bulk; millet and holcus, a species of grain which is the common food over two-thirds of Africa, though badly cultivated, return a crop of two hundred fold, and the date-tree, which furnishes an important article of food, is able to withstand the fiery winds of the desert. The forests of mount Atlas are equal to the finest of Italy and Spain. Those of the Cape coast embrace many elegant trees. In the whole of Nigritia, Senegambia, and Guinea, together with some parts of the eastern coast, are to be found the same thick forests as in America. On the contrary, where the surface is marshy, arid, or sandy, that is, over one-half of Africa, the scanty vegetation consists only of tufts of saline plants, thorny shrubs, and impenetrable thickets.

The animal kingdom presents still greater variety. The African lion is the only lion worthy of the name. The elephant and rhinoceros, though inferior in size to those of Asia, have more agility, and perhaps more ferocity. The unwieldy hippopotamus inhabits the south; the majestic giraffe roams from the Niger to the Cape;



the zebra, the most beautiful of the asinine race, as well as the giraffe, and hippopotamus, is peculiar to Africa. Numerous varieties of the antelope inhabit the plains, and are sometimes seen in flocks of ten thousand, around whose skirts the lion is prowling for his prey. Africa abounds in monstrous apes and disgusting baboons. The ostrich is found in Africa and Arabia alone.

## 218. AFRICA, GENERAL VIEW CONTINUED.

The inhabitants of Africa appear to consist chiefly of three races;

---

What of forests? What of the vegetation of one half of Africa? What of animals in Africa? Describe the picture.

*Let the pupil here be examined in Tables No. 17 and 18, in the Atlas*

first, the Moors, Arabs and Berbers, who, though in some respects dissimilar, seem to have sprung from the same general stock; second, the negroes, who occupy the middle and western portions of Africa, south of the Senegal; the third race is that of the Caffres, who occupy the eastern coast. There are some others, who appear not to belong to either of these, as the Nubians, Abyssinians, Felatahs or Foulahs, who have probably sprung from a mixture of Asiatic and African nations; and the Hottentots and some other tribes, whose origin is not known. The character of the Moors, as sketched in our description of Barbary, is that of the most bigoted, cruel, and sanguinary of the human race. Their gloomy and morose disposition is strongly impressed on their cities, the narrow and dirty streets of which are formed by houses without windows, presenting on either side only a mass of dead wall. Implacable in their hatred towards Christians, and restrained by no principle of justice or humanity, they have, in former times, gratified both their malice and avarice by their systematic piracy against the ships of all Christian nations who refuse to pay them tribute.

We have before had frequent occasion to mention the Arabs. When settled in towns, they generally pass for Moors. The Caffres have also been described as a tall, well formed, muscular race, gentle in temper, living partly by agriculture, partly by their flocks, and partly by hunting, possessing some traits of cultivation, yet marked with many of the brutal customs of the savage state.

The most numerous people of Africa, and those which seem peculiarly identified with the country, are the negroes. The physical properties of the countries they inhabit perpetuate, in all these tribes, that indolent levity and childish carelessness, which seem innate qualities in the negro race. Twenty days' work in a year are sufficient to secure their crops of rice, millet, and other products requisite for their frugal fare. Their gross taste is not disgusted with the flesh of the elephant, even when full of vermin. They feed on the eggs of the crocodile, and on his musky flesh; monkeys are generally used for food; roasted dogs even figure as an exquisite treat at their feasts.

Little labor is required for providing their dress; cotton grows beneath their feet without culture. This is easily wrought into stuffs by their females, who dye them in indigo, which is also spontaneously produced. A negro's cabin costs equally little care; some trunks of trees united in the form of a cone, covered with a little straw or a few palm leaves, constitute the only building he requires. The following picture represents a negro village.

---

218. What are the three principal races of Africa? What tribes appear not to belong to either of these three classes? What is the character of the Moors? What of the Arabs? What of the Caffres? What is the most numerous race in Africa? What effect has the soil and climate upon this race? How many days' labor in a year is necessary to secure their crops? What of the food of the negroes? What of their dress? Houses? What kind of life does the negro lead? Describe the picture.



Such is the negro. Having few wants, and those easily satisfied, he lives a life of indolence and gaiety. A remarkable proof of this indolence is found in the fact, that he has never tamed the elephant, so capable of being rendered useful to man. A stranger to our feelings of ambition, he looks on life as a brief interval which he is bound to enjoy to the utmost. He waits for sunset to begin the giddy dance, which is kept up the whole night, animated by the ivory trumpet, and the beating of drums, mingled with the cadence of various guitars and harps.

The religion of the negroes seems to consist in the belief of two principles, one of good, and the other of evil. Whatever strikes his irregular imagination, becomes his fetish, or the idol of his worship. He adores, and in difficulties consults, a tree, an egg, a rock, a fish-bone, a date-stone, or a blade of grass. In Whidah, near the Slave coast, a serpent is regarded as the god of war, of agriculture, and of fertility. It is fed in a species of temple, and attended by an order of priests. Every new king brings rich presents to the serpent. In Benin, a lizard is the object of public worship; in Dahomey, a leopard. Near cape Mesurado, they worship the lion, and some negroes fashion their fetishes into an imitation of the human frame.

## 219. ARABIA.

*Map of Asia.* In what part of Asia is Arabia? How is Arabia bounded? Where is mount Sinai? In what direction did the children of Israel travel, to go from Egypt to mount Sinai? What sea did they cross? Can you go by land from Egypt to Arabia? What isthmus would you cross? What isthmus unites Asia to Africa? What capes on the southern coast of Arabia? Where is the Persian gulf? Gulf of Ormus? What of the river Euphrates?

What is the capital? Direction of Mecca from Cairo? Algiers? Cape of Good Hope? Senegambia? London? St. Petersburg? Rome? Vienna? Boston? From where you

---

What remarkable proof of the indolence of the negro? How does the negro regard life? What of his amusements? What of the religion of the negroes? What of religion in Whidah? In Benin? Near cape Mesurado?

are? About how many degrees of longitude between Washington and Mecca? About how many degrees of latitude between Boston and Mecca? Direction of Mecca from Cape Horn? Lima? Mexico? Cuba? Greenland? For answers to the sixteen preceding questions, see *Map of Atlantic Ocean*. Where is Medina? Mocha? Comfidah? Saade? Lobein? Sana? Keshin? Hasec? Lahsa? Bassora? Helleh? Daraic? Yemama?

## 220. ARABIA, CONTINUED.

Bidding adieu to Africa, let us embark on the Red sea for Asia. This sea, which derives its name from the color of the earth along its shores, we shall find to be from 50 to 200 miles in width. We shall learn that the navigation of it is dangerous from coral rocks that lie beneath its surface. We shall also recollect, that it was this sea whose waters were divided at the command of the prophet, to give a safe passage for the Jewish nation in their flight from Pharaoh and the Egyptian army.

As we arrive upon the opposite shore, let us recollect, that we are now in that part of Asia called Arabia; a country often mentioned in the Scriptures, and, though 5 or 6,000 miles from our own country, rendered familiar to us by the early history of the Jewish nation recorded in the five books of Moses.

Arabia is an extensive country, lying between the Red sea and the Persian gulf. It is about 1,400 miles from north to south, and 1,200 from east to west, and is supposed to contain 10,000,000 inhabitants. It is divided into Arabia Petræa, or the Stony, on the east; Felix, or the Happy, on the west; and Deserta, or the Desert, on the north. The borders alone of this great peninsula enjoy the advantages of fertility and commerce.

A considerable portion of this country lies under the torrid zone, and the air, in many places, is excessively dry and hot, and sometimes very unhealthy. The winds are sultry and poisonous, and frequently prove fatal to those who breathe them. This air, or fiery wind, is called by the Arabs, Samiel, or Simoom.

The heat of the climate of Arabia is greatly increased by the nature of the soil, which, for the most part, consists of barren, rocky mountains, or sandy deserts of prodigious extent; across these there is no path; so that the caravans, in consequence of the excessive heat, being obliged to travel in the night, are generally guided by the stars, and sometimes by the compass. These immense sands are frequently agitated by sudden winds, when they roll along in compact masses, and often bury whole caravans under them.

Arabia Petræa, or the Stony, is so called from the number of granite rocks which are scattered over it. This division is of but small extent; it borders on the northern part of the Red sea, and

---

220. What of the Red sea? How far is Arabia from our country? How has it been rendered familiar to us? Where is Arabia? Extent? Population? How is it divided? What of its borders? Where does a considerable portion of Arabia lie? What of the air in many places? In the north? What of the Samiel, or Simoom? How is the heat of the climate in Arabia increased? Face of the country? How are caravans guided across the desert? What of the sands? What gives name to Arabia Petræa, or the Stony? Extent of this division?

is that district which lies between Egypt and Palestine, or the Holy Land. Arabia Petræa was originally inhabited by the Edomites, the descendants of Esau, who gave it the name of Edom. After them it was possessed by the Midianites, and the Ishmaelites, descendants of Abraham. In this country are the celebrated mountains of Sinai and Horeb, mentioned in the Scriptures. It was from mount Sinai, that God was pleased, in an awful manner, to deliver to Moses his law to the Israelites, embraced in the ten commandments. Sinai is also the name of the desert, or wilderness, which lies at the foot of this mountain, and from which it derives its name.

From Sinai may be seen mount Horeb, where Moses kept the flocks of Jethro, his father-in-law. On these mountains are many chapels and cells possessed by Greek and Latin monks who pretend to show the very spots where every miracle or transaction recorded in scripture happened. At the foot of mount Horeb, is a beautiful plain, about nine miles in length and three in breadth, where the Israelites encamped on their journey from Egypt to the Holy Land.

Arabia Deserta, or the Desert, comprises the whole of the north-eastern part of Arabia, and is so called from its interior being a vast desert of dry and barren sand. In this district was situated the land of Uz, mentioned in Scripture as the country of Job.

Arabia Felix, or the Happy, comprises the southwest part, and is noted for the fertility of its soil, and the number of its inhabitants. It abounds also in fragrant spices and rich perfumes, and is generally celebrated for its fine fruits, coffee and dates.

In the description of Africa, we have frequently met with people called Arabs. Arabia appears to be the country in which these various tribes originated, and whence they have diffused themselves over various parts of Africa, as well as Asia. Here, in their own native land, they bear the same general characteristics as in countries where we have found them before. They are of a middle stature, brown complexion, and grave aspect. Those that reside near the sea, for the most part, live in cities, towns, and villages, and apply themselves to trade, and cultivate the arts and sciences; but the inland inhabitants have no settled habitations, move about with their flocks and herds, from place to place, in search of water and pasture, and, during their stay in any particular place, they live in tents. They subsist on the milk of their camels and flocks, and on plunder. They consist, for the most part, of different tribes, who divide themselves into petty sovereignties, each forming a kind of political association. They profess Mahometanism, but pay little attention to their religion.

---

Original inhabitants? Mountains? Sinai? Horeb? What of monks? What plain at the foot of Horeb? Describe Arabia Deserta. Where was the land of Uz? What of Arabia Felix? Where did the Arabs originate? Describe the Arabs of Arabia. How do they live? Of what do they consist? What of their religion?



This celebrated people are supposed to be the descendants of Ishmael, and their character in all ages seems to have been a remarkable fulfilment of the prophecy of the angel recorded in Genesis: "He will be a wild man; his hand will be against every man, and every man's hand against him." At an early period, colonies from this country settled in various parts of Africa and Asia. In the time of Mahomet, this people bore the name of Saracens. They embraced the doctrines of that great imposter, and, led by him and his successors, in the seventh century, overturned the religion and government of a great part of Asia, passed into Europe, and became masters of some of its finest portions. Under the name of Saracens, they became formidable to the most powerful kingdoms of Europe. Carrying the sword in one hand, and the Koran in the other, they offered no choice, but death or submission to its doctrines. Propagated in this way, and sustained by the energy of several Saracen sultans, Mahometanism was established throughout a great part of Asia, and a considerable portion of Africa and Europe. At a subsequent period, the Saracens were themselves overpowered, and the sovereignty passing into the hands of the Turks, they have little other territory than the deserts, and no other name than that of Arab.

The Arabs of the present day are described as a brave people, excellent horsemen, very swift of foot, expert with the bow and arrow, and with their fire-arms very superior marksmen. Among themselves, and towards such strangers as they receive as friends, they are honest, civil, and humane, but their general character is that of robbers.

Among the domestic animals of Arabia, the first place must be assigned to the horse, of which it possesses the noblest breed in the world. Those which are held in the highest esteem, are chiefly bred by the Bedouins or wandering Arabs of the deserts. They are brought up in the tents, like the children of the family, fondly caressed and carefully tended, and constitute the most valued property of their owners. They are not large, but possess in a superior degree the qualities of swiftness, perseverance, and docility. On the next page is a picture of an Arab and his horse.

But the most useful animal to the Arabs is the camel, which is peculiarly adapted to the soil and climate. Formed by nature, beyond any other quadruped, to endure the extremities of heat and thirst, and to support life at little expense, it holds its steady course, day after day, over the sandy wilderness, submitting patiently to its burden, and contenting itself with occasionally browsing the prickly, half-withered plants growing by the way side. It is also so constituted that it is able to go without drinking for six or eight

---

From whom are the Arabs descended? What scripture prophecy is fulfilled by them? What was the name of the Arabs in the time of Mahomet? What is the history of the Saracens? How are the Arabs of the present day described? What of the Arabian horses? Describe the picture. What of the camel?



days. This animal will easily carry 800 pounds burden upon its back, which is never taken off during the longest journeys. It kneels down to rest, and in due time rises again with its load.

Mecca, the capital of Arabia, is situated in a dry, barren, and rocky country, in a narrow valley enclosed by mountains. Mahomet was born in the year 571. At the age of 40, he pretended to be a prophet from God, and declared that he was commissioned to reveal a new religion to mankind. At first he had little success, and at one time was obliged to fly for safety. But at length he obtained some followers, and made war upon those who refused to receive him as the prophet of God. Success attended his arms, and a considerable portion of Arabia was soon forced to accept his religion, and bow to his dominion. At the age of 62, he died, and was succeeded by Abubekir, his father-in-law. The sceptre soon came into the hands of the caliphs, and for several successive reigns, the throne was filled by men of superior talents, who, following up what had been so successfully begun, established a religion originated for the mere purposes of ambition, by a designing and unprincipled man, which has at this day more believers than the divine gospel of Jesus Christ.

Mecca, according to the Mahometans, contains the three holiest things in the world—the well Zem-zem, which is believed by them to be the identical spring which gushed forth in the wilderness for the relief of Hagar and Ishmael, and at the present day is supposed to possess marvellous efficacy in giving health to the sick, strength to the memory, and in purifying from the effects of sin; the Caaba, or house of God, commonly called the Temple of Mecca; and the Black stone, which is placed in the centre of the temple. This temple has been often represented as very magnificent; it seems,

---

What of Mecca? Mahomet? Who succeeded him? What of the Caliphs? What does Mecca contain? What of the well Zem-zem? Caaba? Black stone?

however, to possess no claims to the extraordinary praises bestowed upon it. It is an uncovered open square, surrounded with colonnades, and adorned with minarets or pointed spires. The Mahometans pretend that this temple was built by Abraham, and that the stones (of which every mountain in the world furnished some,) came ready fitted for the place they now occupy. The Black stone, the principal wonder of the place, they say, was brought from heaven by the angel Gabriel. By the Koran, every Mahometan is required to visit Mecca, either in person or by proxy, once during his life. This brings to Mecca a great number of pilgrims, from which the city derives its chief importance. The ceremony of the pilgrims at the temple consists in passing seven times around it, kissing each time the sacred stone. Mecca once contained 100,000 inhabitants, and was resorted to by many thousands of pilgrims from the remotest parts of Asia and Africa; but, from the decline of religious zeal, the number who visit the holy city has greatly diminished, and it does not now contain over 20,000 inhabitants.

Medina is regarded by the Mahometans as sacred, from its containing the tomb of Mahomet. It stands on a fertile spot, in a mountainous desert, and is surrounded by a slight wall. Most of the houses are poorly built, and the place is of no importance, except from its containing the sepulchre of the prophet. This sepulchre is held in high veneration by Mahometans, yet its visitation is not considered necessary, or highly meritorious; and Medina is much less visited by pilgrims than Mecca. Neither the tomb, nor the mosque in which it is enclosed, is distinguished by any great magnificence, but is remarkable for an immense treasure of pearls, precious stones, &c., accumulated for ages by the contributions of rich Mahometans.

Mocha, situated at the entrance of the Red sea, is a large, rich, and populous city and seaport. Its chief commerce is with the English, and it is noted for its trade in coffee, aloes, frankincense, and myrrh. This town gives its name to the finest coffee. Muskat and Sucey, are places of considerable commerce.

## 221. TURKEY IN ASIA.

*Maps of Asia and Europe.* Direction of Turkey in Asia from Arabia? Boundaries? What of the Euphrates river? Tigris? Dead sea? Where is Damascus? Jerusalem? Smyrna? Diarbekir? Bagdad? Angora? Trebisond? Where is Lemnos? Scio? Samos? Rhodes? Cyprus?

## 222. TURKEY IN ASIA, CONTINUED.

That part of Turkey in Asia which lies between the Mediterranean and Black seas, formerly called Asia Minor, is now called Anatolia. That part which lies between Arabia and the Medi-

---

What is required by the Koran? What is the ceremony at the temple? Population of Mecca? What of Medina? Mocha? Muskat? Sucey?

222. What of Turkey in Asia?

terranean, is called Syria, and includes Palestine. Armenia is in the northeast, and the ancient Mesopotamia in the southeast. There are various modern names given to these countries, but those by which they are best known are the preceding. Anatolia and Syria are greatly diversified with hills, mountains and plains. Much of the country on the Euphrates and Tigris is level; on the south, bordering on Arabia, are vast sandy deserts.

The climate of this country has always been considered as one of the most delicious on the globe, particularly in Asia Minor and Syria; and the soil in general is rich and fertile; but, from the indolence of the inhabitants, a great portion of it is a mere wilderness. The country is sometimes desolated by locusts, which descend in clouds, and so completely destroy the crops as to produce a fam-



ine. The productions are wheat, barley, cotton, tobacco, olives, wine, and silk. The most noted manufactures are carpets and leather. The population is 11,000,000; the extent of the country is about equal to one-fourth of the whole territory of the United States.

The inhabitants are about half Turks; the other half are an assemblage of various nations, embracing Arabs, Greeks, Jews, Kurds, Armenians, Druses, and Turcomans. The Turks are the governing people. The Kurds are a barbarous and wandering race of bold and daring robbers, who inhabit the eastern parts of Turkey in Asia, and the adjacent districts of Persia. The Armenians are a distinct people, inhabiting the northeast parts of Turkey in Asia, and the adjacent districts in Persia. They form the chief class of traders in the Persian empire, and are found scattered in almost all the principal cities of Asia. They are engaged in the most extensive commercial undertakings, and bear a high character for integrity in

---

Climate? Soil? Locusts? Describe the picture. Productions? Manufactures? Population? Extent? Describe the different inhabitants of Turkey in Asia.

their dealings. They possess a peculiar religion, at the basis of which is Christianity. The Druses are a warlike race of people, inhabiting the mountains in Syria, and pay a small tribute to the sultan.

This country is subject to the dominion of the sultan of Turkey in Europe. It is divided into 17 pachalics, each pachalic being under the supervision of a pacha, or governor, appointed by the Sultan. Some of these pachas have rendered themselves rich and powerful, and only acknowledge a nominal subjection to the sovereign. There are also various parts of the country in which the Turkish dominion is either entirely thrown off, or but partially recognised. The government is feeble, capricious, and cruel. All the blessings of civilisation, all the charms of social life, have disappeared under the desolating influence of despotism. The monuments are in ruins, the villages are abandoned, a great part of the country is given up to robbers, while the towns are filled with a vicious, degraded, and oppressed populace.

Such is the present condition of one of the most renowned portions of the globe; a country that has witnessed some of the most astonishing events recorded in history. Here is the land of Judea, in which David and Solomon reigned; here is Jerusalem, whose streets were often trodden by the footsteps of Jesus Christ; here is Calvary, on which our Saviour was crucified. Here too, at a still earlier date, flourished the mighty empire of Assyria, and the cities of Babylon and Nineveh; and in later times this region has constituted one of the fairest portions of the Roman empire.

Diarbekir, or Diarbeck, is a large city, situated on the Tigris, has extensive manufactures, and 50,000 inhabitants. Aleppo is celebrated for its manufactures of silk and cotton, and, by means of caravans from Bagdat and Bassora, is rendered a mart for the countries of Persia and India. Damascus, in Syria, is estimated to contain 150,000 inhabitants. Its former celebrity for works in steel, particularly sword-blades, is lost, but it flourishes by its excellent manufactures of silk, cotton, and soap. The commerce of this city is carried on by caravans, the most considerable of which are to Bagdat, Aleppo, and Mecca. Smyrna, a large and populous city on the western coast of Natolia, in Asia Minor, is a noted port on the Levant, and the common rendezvous of merchants from all parts of the world. The trade of the United States with Turkey is chiefly carried on through this port. Here the vessels obtain carpets, opium, rags for paper, and various other articles.

Prusa, the ancient Bursa, is one of the most agreeable and well-built cities of Asia Minor, and was formerly a favorite residence of the sultans. It is romantically situated at the foot of Mount Olym-

---

What of pachalics? Pachas? Government? Influence of despotism? What events have taken place in Turkey in Asia? What of Diarbeck? Aleppo? Damascus? Smyrna? Prusa?

pus. Angora, noted for its breed of goats, is rendered populous by its manufacture of stuffs. These goats are a peculiar breed, and are found in no other country. Bassora is a noted city, between the junction of the Euphrates and Tigris, and the Persian gulf. It is greatly celebrated for its commerce, which is very extensive, it being the grand emporium of Indian, Persian, and Arabian productions, which are forwarded by caravans into all parts of the Turkish empire.

Bagdat, on the Tigris, once the celebrated and splendid seat of the Saracen caliphs, is now reduced to a small town, containing about 80,000 inhabitants. Near this place are the obscure relics of a much greater city, the ancient Babylon. The sepulchre of the prophet Ezekiel is said to stand near Bagdat. This city is noted as a continual resort for a great number of passengers, travelling from Asia Minor, Syria, Palestine, and Egypt, into the interior of Asia. Ephesus, anciently one of the most splendid cities of Asia Minor, and celebrated for containing the temple of Diana, and for an epistle of St. Paul to the Ephesians, is now a poor and miserable Turkish village, with few inhabitants.

Jerusalem, the famed capital of the Jewish nation, and so long the object of contention between the Christian and Mahometan powers, is now a mean town, in a sterile district, subsisting only by that veneration in which it is held by Jews, Christians, and Mahometans, and which still procures it the visit of many pious pilgrims. Tyre and Sidon, formerly so distinguished by their grandeur and opulence, are almost entirely decayed; but the latter, having a good harbor, still carries on a trifling trade. Tyre, now called Tur, is only inhabited by a few fishermen, who live in its ruins.

Troy, once a famous city in Asia Minor, anciently called Troja, or Ilium, cannot now be discovered by the smallest vestige, and the place where it stood is only known by its being opposite to the isle of Tenedos. Mosul, on the Tigris, is a place of great trade, and is noted for its manufactures of morocco and cotton. From the cotton fabric made at this place, comes the French word *mousseline*, and the English word *muslin*.

In Asiatic Turkey stood the beautiful city of Palmyra, where queen Zenobia was taken captive by the emperor Aurelian, and led in triumph through Rome. The city was entirely destroyed. The stupendous ruins of this place are justly the subjects of admiration. The city was originally built by Solomon, and was called Tadmor. It was ten miles in circumference, and was situated in Syria. It was at that time the capital of an extensive kingdom; but, from a number of causes, this once fertile country is changed into barren deserts; and Palmyra, then the emporium of the eastern world, is

---

Angora? Bassora? Bagdat? Babylon? Ephesus? Jerusalem? Tyre and Sidon?  
Troy? Mosul? Describe Palmyra.

and elevated deserts, called steppes. All other parts of Asiatic Russia, in which the soil and climate admit of the growth of trees abound in extensive forests. Many of the southern regions are rich and very fertile.

Siberia is chiefly valuable to Russia for its mines and furs. It also serves as a place of banishment for delinquents. Many prisoners of state have been sent thither, who have greatly contributed to civilize and improve some portions of the country. Agriculture has made but little progress; north of lake Baikal, it is almost unknown; and from the 60th parallel toward the north, it entirely disappears. The winter, in all the north part of Siberia, comprises nine months of the year; the summer heats, though short, are sudden and very powerful.

No part of this extensive country belonged to Russia till about the middle of the 15th century; nor was it completely subdued and attached to it till it was conquered by Peter the Great, and Catharine II., in the early part of the eighteenth century. The inhabitants were formerly almost wholly wanderers, but the greater portion now reside in towns, villages, and settled habitations. In no country are there found so many different races of inhabitants as in the Russian empire. The principal tribes or nations of Asiatic Russia, are the Tartars, Ostiaks, Koriaks, Samoiedes, and Kamshadales.

The Tartars people the southern parts, from the Ural mountains to the Irtysh. These are considered the most civilized and industrious of all the natives. They are of a tawny complexion, stout and well made, robust and vigorous. The Mongul and Manchew Tartars are of a copper color, and in general are short and ugly. These extend from the Irtysh to Kamschatka, under the various names of




---

Soil? For what is Siberia valuable? Agriculture? Climate? History? Principal tribes? Describe the Tartars

**Kalmucks, Monguls or Moguls, Manchews, and Tongusians.** The Tongusians always purchase their wives, for each of which they pay from 20 to 100 reindeer. The polar race, called **Samoiedes**, are of small stature, deformed and tawny, with black and coarse hair, and small eyes. They extend along the Arctic ocean, and reckon about 500,000 inhabitants. In their habits of life, they are filthy in the extreme, and are sunk in gross superstition and idolatry. The Laplanders in the north of Europe, and the **Esquimaux** in the northern part of America, are of the same race, and are very similar in their appearance, habits and manners, to the **Samoiedes**.

The **Ostiaks** chiefly inhabit the country near the river **Obi**. They are not much superior to the **Samoiedes**, although living to the south of them. They have no alphabet, nor can they count higher than ten. Their dress is made of skins and furs; they live by hunting and fishing. The **Kamschadales**, like the **Samoiedes** and **Ostiaks**, have their winter and summer cabins, which are generally about 12 feet high. They subsist chiefly on fish. They travel on sledges like the Laplanders, but instead of the reindeer, they use dogs. In the north of **Kamschatka**, the cabins are subterranean. Their country, the most eastern part of the Russian empire, is a large peninsula, running nearly north and south, and is joined to the continent by a narrow isthmus. In shape it resembles that of a shoe. Its mountains are covered with perpetual snow, and includes several volcanoes; one of them is higher than **Mont Blanc**, and, since 1827, has not ceased to vomit forth masses of fire. It rises abruptly from the plains near the sea, and presents a more grand and sublime spectacle than any other mountain on the globe.

The **Siberian** wilds and forests are inhabited by a great variety of animals, whose skins supply the people with their winter clothing, and contribute largely to their commerce. The reindeer wanders over the whole northern waste, and is of the utmost importance to the inhabitants. In many districts, there is a kind of wild sheep. In the mountains in the western part are the bison and the ibex. Large stags are found in the tracts about lake **Baikal**. Wild horses roam in herds over the steppes adjacent to **Tartary**. The bear, wolf, and fox are common in **Siberia**, also hares, squirrels, and beavers. The best sables are found in the neighborhood of **Yakousk** and in **Kamschatka**.

The city of **Tobolsk** is situated on the **Irtish**. It contains three churches, and has a population of about 25,000 inhabitants, consisting of **Swedes, Russians, Kalmucks, and Tartars**. This city is noted for its trade with **China**. All caravans which go from **China** to **Moscow** pass through it. It is about 1,200 miles east of



**St Petersburg.** Irkutsk is a place of considerable trade. It is situated on the river Angara, near lake Baikal, and contains about 20,000 inhabitants. The most northern town in Siberia is Yakootsk, on the Lena. The winters here are excessively severe. Ochotsk is the port through which the trade with Kamschatka is carried on.

## 227. INDEPENDENT TARTARY.

*Map of Asia.* Where is Independent Tartary? Boundaries? Where are the Belur Tag mountains? What of the Gihon river? Sibon? Ural? Taras? What sea or lake in Independent Tartary? What is the capital? Where is Bukhara? Direction from Tobolsk? Mecca? Teflis? Aleppo? Constantinople? Cairo? Boston? Where is Khieva? Samarcand? Shabal? Otrar? Taskent? Fyzabad?

## 228. INDEPENDENT TARTARY, CONTINUED.

Independent Tartary is a country of great extent, in the central regions of Asia, thinly inhabited and but little known. Its surface is in general mountainous, and its soil various, but not very fruitful, except along the borders of the Caspian and in the southwestern part. It is inhabited by a number of different tribes of Tartars,



who are mostly of the Mahometan religion, and lead a wandering and predatory life. The Usbecks, who live in the south, are the most civilized, residing in towns and villages during the winter, though they inhabit tents during the summer.

This was the original country of the Huns, from whom the Turks are descended. It was also the seat of the empire of the celebrated Tamerlane.

Bukhara is situated on the river Sogd. The houses are low, and generally of mud, but the numerous mosques and caravansaries are

---

What of Irkutsk? Yakootsk? Ochotsk?  
228. What of Independent Tartary? Inhabitants? Describe the picture. What of the Usbecks? History? What of Bukhara?

of stone or brick. It has some manufactures of cotton, calicoes, and soap. Its trade, which was formerly considerable, has declined. The inhabitants are somewhat advanced in civilisation, and the city has long been celebrated for its colleges for the study of Mahometan law. The population is estimated at upwards of 70,000. Samarcand, also situated on the Sogd, is celebrated as having been the residence of Tamerlane, in whose day, it is said to have surpassed almost all the cities of the east in wealth and magnificence. It is situated on the borders of a fertile plain, which extends west to Bukhara, and enjoys a delightful climate. It was formerly celebrated as a seat of Mahometan learning, and is known to have been a place of great trade. It has declined however from its ancient splendor, and is now an inferior city.

## 229. PERSIA.

*Map of Asia.* Where is Persia? Boundaries? Where is mount Ararat? What of the Tedzen river? The Tigris? What desert in Persia? What is the capital? Where is Teheran? Direction from Cairo? Teflis? Aleppo? Bukhara? Mecca? Constantinople? Boston? From where you are? Where is Ispahan? Meshed? Kerman? Bushire? Gombroon?

## 230. PERSIA, CONTINUED.

This country, so celebrated in history, is remarkable for the contrasts afforded by its natural features. It abounds in rugged mountains and level plains, in barren deserts and valleys of great fertility; in the north, the winter is severe; in the south, the summer is so extreme as often to destroy life with its heat.

It is in general an elevated country, traversed by numerous mountains in the north, and occupied by immense salt plains in the interior. Two thirds of the whole country are composed of naked mountains, arid deserts, salt lakes, and marshes covered with thickets. On the western, northern, and eastern frontiers, are large rivers, but none of great magnitude traverse the country. The streams which descend from the mountains are usually lost in the sands, or formed into lakes. They produce, however, the greatest part of the fertility which the country can boast, and, where abundant, render the plains through which they flow, beautiful and luxuriant in a high degree. The valley of Shiraz is considered one of the most beautiful in Asia. Although Persia generally has lost its forests, this valley is shadowed by lofty and beautiful trees, among which are lavished a profusion of the most fragrant flowers. Toward the shores of the Caspian, the land being fertilized by the snow, which lies on the ground for several months, the country is covered with acacias, oaks, lindens, and chestnut trees, while the mountains are covered with cedars and firs of various descriptions. Toward the Persian gulf, the face of nature is changed. Here the samiel

What of Samarcand?

230. What of Persia? Face of the country? Rivers? Valley of Shiraz? Country toward the Caspian? Toward the Persian gulf?

Rivers? Valley of Shiraz? Country toward

sweeps over the country, and sometimes destroys the unwary traveller. It is said that the inhabitants of the cities, who are rash enough to expose themselves to its violence, often fall down dead in the streets.

The wild animals of Persia are the boar, the bear, the lion, wild ass, hyæna, jackal, hares, squirrels, &c. The gazelle, the most



beautiful species of antelope, often mentioned in eastern poetry, is a native of this country. The horses of Persia are reckoned among the finest and handsomest in the East. On one of these animals a Persian chief once travelled 332 miles in 33 hours, in one uninterrupted journey. The camel is common in Persia, and the horned cattle are similar to those of Europe. The sheep drag behind them a tail of 30 pounds weight.

The principal manufactures of Persia are silk, woollen, mohair, carpets, and leather. The Persian trade has always been chiefly in the hands of foreigners, particularly Armenians. At present, it is much less considerable than it has been in former times. The Persians are averse to the sea, and have never possessed any maritime power.

Scarcely a twentieth part of the land in Persia is at present under cultivation. The most common grain is wheat, the quality of which is excellent. Rice, barley, millet, and oats are also cultivated. The hopes of the husbandmen are in some seasons disappointed by drought, and famine is produced throughout the land. In 1781, the people were reduced to such a condition, that they greedily devoured dogs, cats, mules and horses. Thousands, in attempting to fly to more favored countries, became exhausted by the way, so that the roads were covered with the dying and the dead.

The Persians have an olive complexion, with black hair. The

---

What of wild animals? Describe the picture. Horses? Camel? Sheep? Manufactures? Trade? Productions? What happened in 1781? Describe the Persians.

men shave their heads, and wear long crimson bonnets. The women in the towns always have their faces covered with veils. The Persians are Mahometans, of the sect of Ali, and are the special objects of Turkish hatred. They are gay, polished, cheerful, deceitful, profuse, and skilful in the use of flattery, fond of show and ornament, eager in acquiring property, and lavish in expending it. They are the most learned people in the East; the love of poetry and the sciences may be even considered their ruling passion. There are among them many persons of rank and wealth who live in a style of great luxury.

The Persians have been called the Frenchmen of Asia. The inhabitants of Shiraz do indeed bear a resemblance to the Parisians in the quickness and lightness of their walk, their volubility, their facility at turning a compliment, the delight they take in saying agreeable things about nothing, and the minute care they bestow upon their dress.

The houses of the Persians are generally built of earth or mud, no windows being presented to the street. They are almost all flat-roofed, and only one story high. The floors are entirely overspread with carpets, which both prince and peasant use for seat, bed, table, and devotional kneeling. From the latter fact the carpets acquire a sacred character, and consequently the people leave their slippers at the door.

Ispahan, the ancient capital, was once considered the finest city in the East, and, before it was depopulated by Kouli Khan, it is said to have contained a vast number of people; but it has now fallen greatly into decay, possessing not more than 200,000 inhabitants. This once superb capital, which the Persians considered as one half the world, is now a mere shadow of its former grandeur. It is the first commercial city in the empire, being the emporium of the foreign trade between India and Persia, Turkey and Caubul. This city was taken by Tamerlane in 1386, when 70,000 persons were put to the sword.

Teheran, the present capital of Persia, and residence of the emperor, is now become of considerable importance, and contains about 100,000 inhabitants.

Shiraz is situated in the delightful valley we have described, and enjoys a delicious climate. This city has a pleasing rather than a grand appearance. It contains the tomb of the celebrated Hafiz, the Anacreon of the East, who was born there; and of Sadi, the great philosopher and poet. About 30 miles from Shiraz, on the road to Ispahan, are the ruins of the most ancient, as well as some of the most magnificent structures, that art has ever raised for the admiration of mankind. These are the remains of the celebrated city of Persepolis. This city is said to have been 25 miles in length, and of great breadth, making in the whole a prodigious extent.

---

Why do they resemble the French? What of houses? What of Ispahan? Teheran? Shiraz? Persepolis?

Persia has, until lately, been for a long period in a state of anarchy. It was governed by a succession of khans, or chiefs, who obtained their elevation by bloodshed and violence. The present sovereign, Futteh-Ali-Shah, seems to have established a better and more stable government, and enjoys the title of shah, or king. He can bring into the field 100,000 men; and the number of his subjects, though greatly reduced by recent wars, is probably from eight to ten millions. He holds his court at Teheran, and has of late been engaged in various struggles with Russia.

### 231. AFGHANISTAN.

*Map of Asia.* Where is Afghanistan? Boundaries? What of the river Helmund? What lake in Afghanistan? What is the capital? Where is Caubul? Direction from Teflis? Mecca? Teheran? Bukhara? Cairo? Boston? Where is Kandahar? Balk? Herat?

### 232. AFGHANISTAN, CONTINUED.

Afghanistan, or the kingdom of Caubul, is about one-sixth as extensive as the United States, and embraces the eastern part of ancient Persia, together with a portion of what was formerly attached to Hindostan. On the north, the mountains are covered with perpetual snow. The face of the country is greatly diversified with mountains, hills and valleys. There are some deserts and some spots of great fertility. The climate is very remarkable for its variety, and it is the more worthy of notice as it is caused, not by its latitude, but by the elevation of different parts of its surface. In some portions, the heat is almost insupportable; while in Ghiznie, there are traditions that that city has been twice destroyed by falls of snow, in which all the inhabitants were buried.

This kingdom derives its name of Afghanistan from a province of that name. The inhabitants are called Afghans, and are descendants of the ancient Medes. The kingdom was founded less than a century since. The population is estimated at 10,000,000, consisting of the following nations, viz: Afghans, Indians, Persians, and Tartars.

The exports from the Afghan country to India are principally horses, furs, shawls, chintz, tobacco, almonds, nuts, and fruits. It abounds in silver, lead, iron, sulphur, horses, camels, sheep with fat tails, and various wild animals similar to those of Persia.

This country is governed by the chief or king of the Afghans. His authority is generally acknowledged and submitted to by the people who inhabit the plains and the towns; but the tribes who have their own separate chiefs, particularly those in remote districts, are not as much subjected to his sway. On the whole, however, the government seems well established, and the people possess considerable national feeling. In religion they are Mahometans.

---

Government of Persia?

232. What of Afghanistan? Climate? Population? Inhabitants? Exports? Government? what are they addicted?

The Afghans purchase their wives; consequently the women, though generally well treated, are considered as property. The women of the upper classes are completely secluded, but have all the comforts and luxuries provided for them that can be afforded. Those of the lower classes perform the work of the house, but do not engage indiscriminately in the labors of the men. The sentiment of love, in all its fervor and fidelity, is often entertained by these people. It is not uncommon for a man to plight his faith to a young woman, and then set off to some remote town to earn a sufficient amount of money to purchase her of her friends.

The officers of religion are the instructors of the youth; there is a teacher in every camp, who is maintained by certain allotments of land. In towns, there are regular schools, in which the teacher is maintained by his scholars alone. The Afghans are fond of snuff, and delight in tales of kings, genii, and fairies. Their favorite amusement is the chase. They are much addicted to plunder.



Caubul, the present capital of the Afghan empire, is handsome, but not extensive. It is situated on the river Caubul, at the foot of the Indian Caucasus. The houses, for the most part, are of wood. Kandahar, one of its former capitals, is large and populous. It has suffered greatly by wars, having been taken and retaken many times. Balk is one of the most famous cities in the East. In ancient times, it was large, populous and magnificent; but, being taken by Genghis Khan, in the year 1221, it was greatly reduced, and nearly the whole of the inhabitants, were put to the sword. Herat, formerly called Heri, is one of the most ancient and renowned cities of the East.

---

What of the women? Education? Schools? Amusements? Describe the picture. What of Caubul? Balk? Herat?

## 233. BELOOCHISTAN.

*Map of Asia.* Where is Beloochistan? Boundaries? What desert in Beloochistan? What of the river Indus? What is the capital? Where is Kelat? Direction from Teñis? Teheran? Aleppo? Mecca? Caubul? Bukhara? Boston? Constantinople? From where you are? Where is Bayla? Tatta?

## 234. BELOOCHISTAN, CONTINUED.

Beloochistan is situated northwest of the peninsula of Hindostan, and formerly belonged to Persia. In the northern part, it is very mountainous. Many of the mountains are elevated, and covered, a great part of the year, with snow. In the plains, the heat is very great. In summer, the water is generally scarce. The desert of Beloochistan is 300 miles long, and about 200 broad, consisting of waves of sand, extremely difficult to be traversed. There are extensive tracts of table land, which are elevated, cold, rugged and barren. The low parts of the country lie on the south and east: these tracts are hot, and generally dry from the want of rain. There are shallow rivers, however, flowing through them in some places; these parts are well cultivated.

The minerals are gold, silver, lead, iron, copper, tin, rock salt, alum, salt-petre, and sulphur. The soil produces grain, cotton, indigo, madder, and asafetida. The country is occupied by various tribes, who generally profess the Mahometan religion, and are, some of them, tributaries to the king of the Afghans, and some of them subject to the khan, who resides at Kelat.

The inhabitants of the table land are principally Belooches. They are a hospitable and honest people, but are deprived of the advantages of civilisation, and have a general resemblance to the Afghans. The plains are inhabited by another race, called Rind,



234. What of Beloochistan? Minerals? Productions? Tribes? Describe the Belooches; Rind. Describe the picture.

who are determined and sanguinary robbers. Plunder on a small scale is held by them in contempt. When they intend to make a foray, they set out on camels, each man having the charge of ten or twelve; ride 80 miles a day, till they approach the destined scene of operations; lurk in some unfrequented jungle in the neighborhood; rush out at midnight; set the devoted village on fire, and kill and carry off men, women, children and flocks. The captives are tied on camels, and blindfolded, that they may never know the road back to their native spot.

This country is inhabited by another tribe, called Loories, of a meaner caste, who are abandoned to every species of depravity; they plunder in every shape, and murder in cold blood on the slightest resentment. They scarcely rear any children, and keep up their community by man-stealing.

The Sindees, who occupy the borders of the Indus toward its mouth, are represented as a handsome race, blacker than most of the people of India; but they have the character of being treacherous, cruel, licentious, and deficient in intelligence.

This country has few considerable towns. Kelat, the capital, is a well built place. It contains a royal palace, and about 4,000 houses, and has a brisk trade. It is the residence of a kahn, or king, to whom some of the tribes are subject.

### 235. HINDOSTAN.

*Map of Asia.* Where is Hindostan? Boundaries? What two ranges of mountains in Hindostan? Where are they? Where is the Malabar coast? Coromandel coast? What of the river Indus? Ganges? Jumna? Kistna? Godavery? Nerhuddah? Burrampooter? Where is cape Comorin? What two gulfs in Hindostan? Where is the island of Ceylon?

What is the capital? Where is Calcutta? Direction from Kelat? Teheran? Mecca? Caubul? Aleppo? Teflis? Bukhara? Cairo? Tobolsk? Constantinople? Boston? From where you are? Where is Nepaul? Delhi? Surat? Seringapatam? Lahore? Benares? Goa? Bombay? Madras? Cochia? Pondicherry? Cambay?

### 236. HINDOSTAN, CONTINUED. CEYLON.

Hindostan, often called India, or India within the Ganges, is in extent three-fourths as large as the United States. A country so extensive must of course possess every variety of surface. The northern portion is for the most part a vast plain, watered by the various branches of the Ganges and the Indus. Between the sources of these two great rivers, is an immense sandy desert, resembling in its aspect the dreary barrens of Arabia and Africa. The central, southwestern, and southern parts of Hindostan, are traversed by the Vindhia mountains, the Eastern and Western Gauts, and several inferior ranges. Between the Eastern and Western Gauts, is an extensive tract of table land, elevated 2 or 3000 feet above the level of the sea.

---

Loories? Sindees? What of Kelat?

236. Face of the country in Hindostan?



Only two seasons are known in India—the dry and the rainy. In the dry season, vegetation universally labors under a deadly languor; but a rain of one night's duration transforms it into a verdant meadow, a plain, which, on the preceding day, was a spectacle of utter dryness, where not one leaf of herbage could be found. In Bengal, during the wet season, it rains incessantly for many days. The rivers overflow their banks, and cover the whole country, except places which are on elevated situations, or protected by dikes. On the Malabar coast, sudden showers, storms and hurricanes, are more violent than on the Coromandel. If the rain does not come on at the ordinary time, or if it is not in sufficient quantity, dismal effects follow for the whole year, often amounting to the most destructive famine. In 1793, so great was the scarcity occasioned by the drought, that parents sold their children for a few pounds of rice.

The climate of India is that of a country situated within the torrid zone, and at the same time adjoining a boundless mass of icy mountains. In the greater part of this extensive region, snow never falls, and ice is unknown. Nowhere do hurricanes rage with greater fury. Nowhere are the lightning and peals of thunder more appalling. Nowhere is the husbandman more liable to the ravages of protracted drought, or drenching floods of rain.

The fertility of the soil and the nature of the productions are as various as the temperature and climate. India is traversed by large chains of rocky mountains and by hills of sand. It has also sandy deserts, where the burning south wind carries before it clouds of dust, in which it sometimes buries houses and cultivated fields. At the mouths of the great rivers, the soil is usually marshy. In some instances, the marshy land extends along a great part of the banks of rivers in the interior. But with the exception of these uncultivated parts, India presents on all hands beautiful meadows, rich pastures, fields loaded with abundant harvests, which are gathered twice in the year, and valleys filled with every useful and every beautiful product of vegetation.

Rice, the chief food of the frugal Indians, abounds in most of the provinces; wheat, barley, maize, and millet are common; melons, pine-apples and other fruits are abundant. No part of the world offers a more luxuriant display of beautiful and fragrant flowers than this. In Cashmere and the vales of Delhi and Seringa, the air is perfumed with roses from which the ottar is obtained. Beside these, there are multitudes of other plants, as well of the useful as of the beautiful kind. A great part of the soil is covered with forests of bamboo, which sometimes attain the height of sixty feet. The country produces every variety of palm-trees, and the bread fruit-tree, beside the various fruit-trees of Europe, as apples, pears

plums, &c., oaks, pines, cypresses, poplars, myrtles, tamarinds, the teak for ship building, and ebony.

In mineral wealth, India is one of the richest countries in the world. Many of the rivers are known to bring down particles of gold from the mountains. Rich mines of gold and silver occur in Golconda. There are many copper mines, and iron is found in almost every province. In no part of the world are diamonds so numerous or so beautiful as in India, especially in Bengal and some other provinces.

The animal kingdom is equally varied. Monkeys of various forms make their appearance every where in troops. Bears, wolves, hyænas, lynxes, tiger-cats, caracals, leopards, ounces, tigers, elephants, and rhinoceroses are common. The country swarms with serpents; they are found in the forests, in the plains, in the gardens, and sometimes in the interior of the houses; even the sea, which washes the Indian shores, is filled with serpents, the bite of which is dangerous. The crocodile, lizard, and other reptiles abound. The birds are innumerable; there are more than 50 kinds of parrots; this is the original country of the peacock; the forests, in every part of it, are inhabited by enormous flocks of peacocks in a wild state.

The population of Hindostan, amounting to 134,000,000, consists of two distinct classes, the descendants of the ancient inhabitants, and the tribes of foreign extraction. The most conspicuous of these tribes are the Tartars, Monguls, Afghans, Belooches, Malays, Persians, Arabs, and Jews. These mixed inhabitants form a small part of the population; they are estimated at 10,000,000 only. The Hindoos are the original people of the country, and still possess the finest portions of it. Their nation is of great antiquity, and its history may be traced back to the age of Moses. In the times of Alexander the Great, more than 2,000 years ago, they were the same people as now, possessing the same manners, religion, and customs. The description given of them in his time, would accurately describe them now.

The Hindoos are in complexion nearly black, with long hair, straight limbs, and a pleasing countenance. They are naturally indolent, and desire nothing but ease. They make no figure in any except a few mechanic arts. Moderate and sober in their habits, a single piece of linen or cotton stuff suffices them for clothing: their dwellings are the slightest and simplest that can be imagined; their sustenance consists of rice and water: little trouble is required to satisfy their few wants. Such is the general character and condition of the people; there are, however, some rich individuals, habituated to the conveniences of life, who display in their houses all the luxury of the East. We find the persons of the rajahs and the nabobs surrounded by numerous slaves, their garments glitter-

ing with gold, silver, gems, and embroidery, their apartments adorned with painting and gilding, and perfumed with various valuable essences.

Their sacred books, which contain a body of religion as well as a system of civil law, are written in a language called Sanscrit, which is a very rich and perfect language; it is not now spoken, but there are as many as ten different dialects of it in use.

One of the most remarkable circumstances in Hindoo manners, is the division of the people into castes; a division which has existed for thousands of years. The leading castes are four: first, Bramins, who are men of letters, and have the care of religion and



laws; second, the soldiers, called Rajah-poots, or descendants of the rajahs, (this class includes princes and sovereigns;) third, merchants, farmers, and shepherds, called Vaisyas; and fourth, Sudras, or laborers. The Bramin is required to abstain from animal food, and fermented liquors, and to perform innumerable religious rites and ceremonies. Some of them, however, engage in employments of a secular nature. Many of them are agents, or ministers, of the native princes; some of them embark in commerce; and others are employed in carrying messages between distant places. They are an artful set of impostors, expert in disguising the truth, and practising without scruple every artifice to gull the people, and accomplish their own selfish purposes. The number of persons of this caste, who are respectable for their knowledge and virtue, is extremely small. The great body of these hereditary priests and sages are devoted to ambition, intrigue, and voluptuousness, and are disgraced by meanness, avarice, and cruelty. The charity which they profess is never practised. Toward the other castes they cherish no feeling of humanity, but claim every thing from them, while they give them nothing in return.

The rajah-poots seem not to possess the general character of the Hindoos. They have a ferocious courage, a savage ambition, and an insatiable avarice, not often compensated by any real virtues. Many of these are employed in the English service under the name of sepoys.—The duties of the third caste consist in the labors of the field and garden, the rearing of cattle, and the sale of landed produce. When they travel to other countries, they engage in mercantile pursuits.—The business of the fourth and most numerous caste is servile labor. They are compelled to work for the Bramins, being considered as created solely for their use. To them the vedas, or holy books, must never be read, and whoever instructs them in religion is doomed to one of the hells with which the world of spirits is provided.—Such is this singular institution of castes. Each individual remains invariably in the rank in which he is born, and cannot aspire to a higher, whatever be his merits. The castes never intermarry, and so complete is the separation, that they will not even eat at the same table.

The religion of the Hindoos, derived from their sacred books, inculcates a belief in the existence of one supreme God, who holds himself aloof from the world, in a state of perfect indolence and bliss, having committed the government of the universe to three divinities. They believe that those who withdraw from the world, and devote themselves to abstinence and self torture, will arrive at supreme happiness, by being united to the spirit of the great deity, as a drop of water is absorbed by the ocean. The souls of the less holy they imagine, will pass into the bodies of other men and brutes. The duties, ceremonies, and observances of religion are interwoven with all the common offices of life. The people worship images, and, under the blind influence of superstition, drown their children in the rivers, inflict upon themselves the most painful tortures and penances, and seek death by drowning, by fire, by being crushed beneath wheels, and by throwing themselves on large iron hooks. There is not perhaps, in the whole history of the human race, a picture more truly horrible and disgusting, than is presented by the idolatries of this infatuated people.

The greater part of this vast country has been brought under the government of the British East India company, almost entirely since the middle of the last century. More than half of the country is directly tributary, while the other portions, under the dominion of various independent sovereigns, are, in a greater or less degree, subject to the influence of the British power in India. The government of British India is committed to a governor appointed by the king. Some of the principal English possessions in India, are Bengal, Bahar, and Benares, on the banks of the Ganges, of which Calcutta is the capital; the Carnatic on the coast of Coromandel, of which Madras is the capital; the island of Bombay, the town of

Surat, and several districts on the Malabar coast, of which Bombay is the capital. At each of these capitals is a president, who is charged with the local government. The whole number of Europeans residing in India, does not probably exceed 40,000; yet such is the superior intelligence of the Europeans to the inhabitants of India, that they are able to sustain a dominion over more than a hundred millions of people!

The English who reside in India, have carried their native manners to this distant land; they generally live, however, in a style of great luxury and magnificence. In addition to the amusements of England, they have tiger hunts, which are attended with great danger. The animals are pursued by people mounted on elephants, and on horseback, accompanied by dogs.

The celebrated city of Calcutta is the metropolis of the British power in India. It is situated on a branch of the Ganges called the Hoogly river. It is rendered somewhat unhealthy by being in the vicinity of extensive muddy lakes, and an immense forest. On approaching the city from the sea, a stranger is much struck with its magnificent appearance: the spires of the churches, temples, and mosques, the strong and regular citadel of Fort William, the extent of the buildings, the splendor of adjoining villas and gardens, present an interesting and varied picture. That part of the town which is occupied by the natives, and called the Black Town, extends to the north of the other, to which it exhibits a wretched contrast. The English houses are all detached, each possessing a piece of ground surrounded by a high wall. Population, 600,000.

One of the most memorable objects in Calcutta is the Black Hole, the prison in which Soubah Saribeh, on taking the fort, in 1757, shut up the garrison, consisting of 146 persons; 123 of whom perished miserably before morning by suffocation.

The city of Delhi is situated on the river Jumna, and was anciently the capital of Hindostan. It is said to have contained, at one time, 2,000,000 of inhabitants. The present remains of its former magnificence are truly astonishing. The imperial palace, built of reddish granite, is 3,000 feet in length, and its breadth 1800. The rooms glitter with gilding and every species of ornament. The stables are capable of holding 10,000 horses. Three other palaces are still to be seen in the suburbs. In one of these, the walls of the great saloon are so profusely ornamented with crystals, that, when lighted up, it seems like a conflagration. In this palace is a throne, over which a palm-tree of gold stretches its branches, upon which a peacock with expanded wings, also of gold, is supported. The tail and wings of the peacock glitter with emeralds, and the fruit of the palm-tree is partly executed with diamonds. The workmanship is so exquisite, that the tree and peacock, which are

admirable imitations of nature, seem actually to wave to and fro in the breeze. This famous city, of which the accounts are so marvellous, was plundered, about a century ago, by Nadir Shah, and robbed of treasures to the value of 50,000,000 dollars. It has since greatly declined, and the modern town is an inferior city, containing about 150,000 inhabitants.

Lahore has lost much of its ancient splendor, but still possesses many fine buildings and elegant gardens. It contains the beautiful fortified palace of the Mogul sovereigns, one of the finest and most sumptuous in the world. When beheld from the opposite side of the river Ravey, with its varied terraced gardens, it looks like a scene of enchantment. The roofs are adorned with a thousand species of the finest flowers. The interior of this magnificent building is ornamented with gold, lapis lazuli, porphyry, and fine-grained red granite. Pop. 150,000.

Surat is a conspicuous trading city. The most remarkable institution is the Banyan hospital for sick, wounded, and maimed animals, dictated by the religious tenderness entertained by the Banyan sect for the animal creation. In 1772, it contained a variety of quadrupeds and birds; also an aged tortoise, which was known to have been there 75 years. There was even a ward for rats, mice, bugs, and other noxious animals. In sickness they are attended with assiduity, and provided with an asylum in old age. Pop. 450,000.

Another city of distinguished interest in India, is Benares, being a place of great sanctity, and the focus of Braminical erudition. The streets of Benares are so extremely narrow, that it is difficult to get along, even on horseback. Some of the brick houses are six stories high, with terraces and small windows. Those on the opposite sides of streets are often connected by crossing galleries. Benares contains many inhabitants of great opulence, and many active merchants and bankers. It is the Athens of the Hindoos. The Bramins are seen teaching literature and science in the streets, and under the trees. Since it came into the hands of the English, in 1781, it has increased rapidly. The population exceeds 600,000.

Golconda, though renowned for diamond mines, contains none at present, and it is doubtful if it ever did; but it is a considerable depot for diamonds brought from other parts to be polished and fashioned for sale by the diamond merchants of Golconda. The city of Bejapoor exhibits scarcely any thing but shapeless heaps of ruins attesting its ancient magnitude. Here are some magnificent relics of the tombs of Mahometan saints.

Madras is a highly interesting place. On approaching this city from the sea, the flat, sandy shores, and low hills, present an appearance of barrenness, which wears off when we come nearer, and find

crowds of human beings covering the beach. The public buildings have an elegant appearance, and exhibit beautiful colonnades supported on arched bases. The fortifications of Fort George, and the pagodas and minarets at a distance, mixed with trees and gardens, give an air of magnificence to the scene. Pop. 300,000.

Pondicherry was once the most splendid European settlement in India. It stands on a sandy plain, near the sea, producing only palm-trees, millet and a few herbs. It has no commanding advantages for commerce, and derives all its importance from being the capital of the French possessions in India.

Bombay, the seat of government for the southwestern part of the British possessions in India, is situated on an island of the same name. It has extensive fortifications. At the commencement of the hot season, those Europeans who are obliged to have their residence within the fort, erect temporary houses, some of which are elegant, but so slight as to be unable to resist the monsoons. As soon as the rains begin, they are taken down, and preserved for another year. It is a place of growing importance: Pop. 200,000.

Ceylon, a large island south east of Hindostan, belonging to Great Britain, may properly be described here. The inhabitants consist chiefly of various tribes, in a nearly savage state; of these the Cingalese are the principal. The maritime parts are inhabited by Moors, and some Europeans are settled in the island. The population is probably about 1,500,000. The climate is delightful, and the country abounds in the rich productions of India. It affords the best of cinnamon, and is famous for pepper, gold, precious stones, ivory and pearls. European missionaries have lately undertaken to introduce Christianity among the natives, and signal success has attended their labors. Candy is the capital.

## 237. CHIN INDIA, or FARTHER INDIA.

*Map of Asia.* Where is Chin India? Boundaries? In what part is the Birman empire? Tonquin? Cochin China? Cambodia? Laos? Siam? What of the Cambodia river? Irrawaddy? What two gulfs in India? What is the capital? Where is Ava? Direction from Tefis? Kelat? Teheran? Calcutta? Caizo? Bukhara? Tobolsk? Mecca? ~~Adelppo?~~ Constantinople? London? Boston? From where you are? Where is Ummerapoora? Rangoon? Pegu? Siam? Saigon? Aracan?

## 238. CHIN INDIA, CONTINUED.

This country, generally called Farther India, or India beyond the Ganges, comprehends the Birman empire, the kingdoms of Tonquin, Cochin China, Cambodia, Laos, and Siam. This vast country is scarcely known except along its shores. The interior is occupied by three principal ranges of mountains, with table lands, between which are three extensive valleys, beside many smaller ones. The coasts are liable to intense heats, and the low valleys are subject to periodical inundations of the rivers.

---

What of Pondicherry? Bombay? Island of Ceylon?

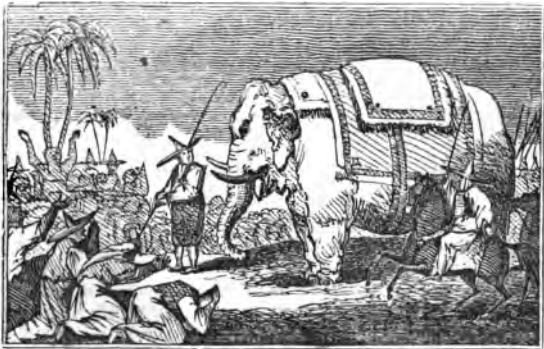
238. What does Farther India comprehend?

The contrasts of barrenness and fertility are in this country very surprising. When there is little or no rain, the country is parched to a desert; but along the margin of rivers, and on the sides of mountains, a perpetual verdure is spread over the face of nature. Owing to the united influence of great heat and great moisture, vegetation assumes the most luxuriant character. The loftiest trees known perhaps in the world, are here; while on every hand, are rare and curious plants, and a profusion of dazzling flowers, which impart to the atmosphere the most delicious odors. The general description of the climate, soil, animals, and vegetables, given of Hindostan, will apply with little variation to this fruitful portion of the earth. The inhabitants of these countries resemble the Monguls and Chinese, and are supposed to be derived from the same original stock.

The Birman empire is of recent origin, and includes the kingdom of Ava, and various conquered provinces. The ancient capital, Ava, was until recently in ruins; the materials of the houses, which were principally of wood, having been removed to the new city of Ummerapoor. This was the capital until a late date, when the emperor removed his court to Ava.

Ummerapoor stands on the banks of a deep and extensive lake. It is said to exhibit a splendid appearance, and to resemble Venice in its situation. The royal library consists of many volumes of history, romance, medicine, music, painting and divinity. The city once contained about 175,000 inhabitants, but has greatly declined. Ava, the present capital, has been partially restored. The palace of the king is a splendid edifice.

The Birmans are represented as lively, impatient, active, and irascible. Both men and women color the teeth black. The bodies



Face of the country? Soil? Vegetation? Inhabitants? What of the Birman empire?  
What of the Birmans? Describe the picture.



of the dead are burned. They excel in some arts, and maintain considerable commerce with several of the adjacent countries. Their religion bears a resemblance to that of the Hindoos, though divested of some of its offensive characteristics. The emperor is completely despotic. A white elephant is kept near the royal palace, superbly dressed, and sumptuously fed, and receives homage from the people, as a sort of second sovereign, next in rank to the king. This elephant is made to receive presents from foreign ambassadors. The population is estimated at 30,000,000.

Until the year 1826, this kingdom was much more powerful than at the present time. At that date, a war was terminated between the Birman empire and the British East India Company, by a treaty, in which the king of the white elephant ceded all the western coast of his empire to the latter power. Assam, which had been subjugated by the Birmans, became once more independent, and the city of Rangoon was declared a free port.

It was during the above-mentioned war that Mr. Judson, an American missionary, was imprisoned at Ava, where he suffered the greatest distress. This was alleviated by the affectionate courage of his wife, whose devotion to the cause of piety and humanity, amid the greatest dangers and trials, affords one of the most interesting narratives ever published.

Laos is separated from the surrounding country by high mountains and thick forests. It affords musk, gold, and precious stones, and especially rubies, topazes, and pearls, also the best kind of gum-lac. Elephants are said to be so abundant, as to give name to the country. The trade is principally in the hands of the Tonquinese and Chinese. Hunting and fishing are almost the only occupations of the inhabitants, who are described as gentle, sincere, and superstitious. The country is divided into several small kingdoms, under an absolute sovereign, who is the tool of his priests and ministers.

To the east of Laos is Tonquin, of which the city of Tonquin is the capital. The climate is agreeable; the productions various and abundant; the forests are filled with tigers, deer, antelopes, and monkeys; and the fields are covered with cattle, buffaloes, hogs, and winged game. The government is despotic. The people have lighter complexions than the other Indian nations, and black, long and thick hair. Their whole dress consists of a robe, which reaches to their heels. They are described as hospitable, faithful in friendship, and entertaining great respect for civil justice. They manufacture silk, cotton goods, and other articles, and keep up a great commercial correspondence with China.

To the south of Tonquin is Cochin China, of which the geography is very obscure. The country is divided into plains and mountains. During the autumn, the plains are inundated, and boats are

navigated over the fields and hedges; so that the children go out in small barks to fish for the mice which cling to the branches of the trees. This country produces many interesting articles of commerce, which attract many European traders. The people are regarded as one of the most lively and active nations of Asia. The costume of both sexes consists of wide robes with flowing sleeves; their houses are built of bamboo, and roofed with reeds and rice straw, and are generally surrounded with groves of orange and lemon-trees, bananas and cocoas. The people are of Chinese origin, follow the religion of Budha, and submit to a sovereign who is styled King of Heaven.

Of the kingdom of Cambodia we have few authentic accounts. It appears to be thinly peopled. The capital, called Cambodia, consists of a single street, with one large temple. The lands produce rice and other vegetable food. Many Japanese, Chinese, and Malays are settled in the country; they are scarcely to be distinguished from the natives, who have dark, yellow complexions, and long, black hair.

At the bottom of the gulf which divides Chin India into two peninsulas, is the kingdom of Siam. This kingdom was considered as the leading power in this part of India, till it was curtailed by the Birman invasions. The country is fertile, and cultivated in parts with skill and success. The productions and animals are similar to those of the adjacent countries. It is celebrated for the beauty and docility of its elephants. White elephants are venerated, because the people believe that the souls of their sovereigns pass into them at death. It is said that the crocodiles which infest the principal river, Meinam, are sometimes 50 feet in length; this is doubtless an exaggeration. The trees along this river are covered with phosphoric flies, which emit and retain light, apparently like our lightning-bugs. Siam has mines of gold, silver, and copper. The capital, called Odia, is said to contain monasteries, colonnades and temples, of some magnificence. The Siamese are of an olive color, mixed with red: they blacken their teeth, and have uncommonly wide mouths. Each man has several wives, who are not allowed to eat with their husbands. The people are fond of boat fights, combats of elephants, processions, and illuminations. Their commerce is considerable with Japan, China, and Hindostan. They follow the religion of Budha, and are governed by a king, who, if he pleases, marries his own sisters, and receives almost divine honors.

## 239. MALACCA.

*Map of Asia.* Where is the peninsula of Malacca? In what direction is it from Japan? Ceylon? Persia? How is it separated from Sumatra? What sea on the east? What great bay to the west?

---

Cambodia? Siam? What of elephants in Siam? Crocodiles? What of the Siamese?

## 240. MALACCA, CONTINUED.

The peninsula of Malacca is 550 miles long, and 110 broad. The interior is occupied with immense forests. In these forests, the musquitoes are so thick as to appear like clouds; at every step there is danger of treading on serpents. Leopards, tigers, and rhinoceroses, are ready to devour the undefended traveller. The Malays, far more treacherous than the wild beasts, unwillingly bestow protection which a stranger needs, in a country so beset with dangers.

Pepper and other aromatic plants grow here. The forests, arrayed in perpetual verdure, contain aloe-wood, sandal-wood, and a species of cinnamon. Tigers; pursuing the antelopes across the



rivers, sometimes fall a prey to the crocodiles. The wild elephants afford a plenty of ivory. Gold is found in some of the rivers, and tin is an article of export. Malacca, the chief city, once contained 20,000 people, but is now reduced to 5 or 6,000. The government is in the hands of several chiefs. Pera, a country rich in tin, is governed by Mahometan princes, who are prevented from working the mines, from an apprehension that it will offend the genii of the mountains. The Malays, are a peculiar race, which we shall frequently meet with in the Asiatic isles.

## 241. CHINA PROPER.

*Map of Asia.* Where is China? Boundaries? What of the Hoang Ho? Yangtse Kiang? Hoang Kiang? What lakes in China? Where is the island of Hainan? What is the capital? Where is Pekin? Direction from Teflis? Cairo? Caubul? Teheran? Mecca? Aleppo? Tobolsk? Calcutta? London? Paris? From where you are? Where is Canton? Nankin? Yunnanfou? Yengan? Singanfou?

240. What of Malacca? Malays? Productions? Animals? Describe the picture. What of Ivory? Gold? Tin? City of Malacca? Government? What of Pera?

## 242. CHINA PROPER, CONTINUED.

China Proper embraces a space about three-fourths as large as the United States. The country is diversified with hills, valleys, plains, and mountains. The climate varies in different places. In the southern parts, the heat is excessive; while in Pekin, snow lies on the ground for three months in the year, and the temperature is colder than in the same latitude in Europe. Such is the variety of the climate, that China produces the fruits both of the torrid and temperate zones. Rice, which is the general food of the people, is the chief article of culture. In the north, wheat, barley, and other grains take its place. Next is the tea plant, of which there are vast plantations in the southern and middle parts, and it is the great article of Chinese commerce. The country also produces silk, camphor, &c.

Agriculture is pursued with diligence, but with a degree of skill and science far inferior to what is exercised in Europe. On the road from Pekin to Canton, there are extensive tracts in a state of nature, dry mountains, which are not susceptible of cultivation, and gloomy heaths, which are destitute of almost every species of vegetation. Yet nearly the whole arable land is constantly employed in the production of human food. There are very few pastures, and few fields of oats or turnips for feeding cattle. Even some of the steepest mountains are brought under cultivation; they are cut into terraces, resembling, at a distance, immense pyramids divided into numerous steps or stories; and, what is worthy of our admiration, the water which runs at the foot of the mountain is raised from terrace to terrace to the very top, by means of a chain pump, which may be carried about and worked by two men.

The monuments of the Chinese have been much extolled. We cannot help admiring some of their great roads, their one-arched bridges, their pyramidal towers, and their strange but sumptuous triumphal arches. The great wall, in particular, cannot be beheld without astonishment. This celebrated rampart passes over high mountains, crosses deep valleys, and extends from the province Shensi to Wang-hay, or the Yellow sea, in a line of 1240 miles. In many places, it is only a simple wall; in others, it has foundations of granite, and is built of brick and mortar. It was constructed long since, as a defence against the Tartars on the north.

The Chinese have displayed their remarkable industry in uniting by numerous canals all the waters, with which nature has so largely endowed their empire. Travellers are astonished at the length and commodiousness of these canals. The rivers and canals are covered with so great a number of vessels, loaded with all sorts of provisions, that the waters seem to have on their surface as large a

242. Extent of China Proper? Face of the country? Climate? Productions? Agriculture? Describe the country from Pekin to Canton. What of monuments? The great wall? Canals?

population as the land. The canals have a stone quay all along their margin; but the navigation is slow, because the vessels are generally dragged by men. The numerous rills, the rocks, the woods, the fields, and quick succession of villages, render China a country highly pleasing to the eye; the wonders of nature are often beautifully combined with those of human industry. The most celebrated of the canals is that called the Imperial canal, forming a communication between Peking and Canton, about 1666 miles long. It was built in the end of the 13th century, under the grandson of Genghis Khan. The only interruption to this long navigation is a distance of one day's journey in crossing a mountain.

Mechanical talent alone has met with encouragement among the Chinese. Their industry in the manufacture of stuffs, of porcelain, of lacerated work, and other articles, is astonishing, and can be compared to nothing in the world but their labors in the field, in the construction of canals, the levelling of mountains, and the formation of gardens.

In features and the shape of the head, the Chinese resemble the race of Monguls. The head is almost quadrangular, the nose short without being flattened, the complexion yellow, and the beard thin. A Chinese female becomes vain of her beauty in proportion to the smallness of her eyes, the protuberance of her lips, the lankness and blackness of her hair, and the extreme smallness of her feet. This last qualification completes the idea of beauty. In order to confer on them this high perfection, their feet are carefully swathed as tight as possible in youth, so that, when grown up, they seem to totter rather than walk. Among the men, corpulence, as the sign of an easy life, commands a certain degree of respect; men of thin forms pass as persons void of talent. People of quality allow



Imperial canal? What of mechanical talent? Personal appearance of the Chinese? Chinese ladies?

**the** nails of their fingers to grow long. \* The hair of the head and of the beard is stained black. The preceding picture represents a Chinese tradesman, lady, soldier, and mandarin.

The Chinese are a set of subjugated and disciplined barbarians. Seldom do they lay aside the humble and insinuating air of slaves anxious to please. They rarely betray the slightest degree of rudeness or passion. This character partly arises from the total abstinence which they observe from heating diet and inebriating liquors. The use of tea is very common among them. A large vessel of it is prepared in the morning for the use of the family through the day. Polygamy is allowed to the grandes and mandarins. Marriages depend upon the pleasure of the parents. In order to obtain a wife, presents must be made to her family. The husband cannot see her till the marriage ceremony is over. The women are kept in a sort of slavery; the Chinese peasant yokes his wife and his ass together to his plough.

The houses are of brick and hardened clay, and very often of wood. In general, they have only one story. Those of the merchants have an upper story, which is used as a store-house. The exteriors of the buildings are adorned with columns and galleries. Their appearance is improved by small flower-pots, in which the Chinese take great delight, presenting an agreeable mixture of verdure with the varied colors of their numerous blossoms. Each house stands by itself, surrounded with gardens, and spacious court-yards. The rooms are kept clean, with very little decoration. Even glass is not very liberally used, though it might seem so likely to please the taste of a vain and childish people. The Chinese dress themselves in long robes, with wide sleeves and flowing silk girdles. Furs are every where seen in winter, differing in quality from sheep-skin to ermine. The people wear a small funnel-shaped hat, which is mounted with a large button of coral, crystal, or gold.

The great and learned in China pay a species of adoration to Confucius, an ancient philosopher of their country, but the common people are attached to the religion of Fo. It abounds in superstitions, self-accusations, apprehensions, and mortifications, suited to the timid, pusillanimous character of the eastern nations. The priests are called Bonzes. Their number is prodigious; it is said that there is at least a million of them in the empire. All of them live by alms. These holy mendicants conceal under a sober garb, a sufficient quantity of pride and avarice.

In so vast an empire, the trade between the different provinces must be of large amount, but we are unacquainted with its nature. The trade which they carry on with foreign nations is not proportioned to the size and opulence of the empire. In 1806, China ex-

ported about 45 millions of pounds weight of tea; 13 millions of which were sold to the Americans, 1 million to the Danes, and the rest to the British; 10 millions of pounds of sugar, 21,000 pieces of nankin, 3 millions of pounds of tutenag, besides copper, borax, alum, quick-silver, porcelain, lackered ware, tin, vermilion, 300,000 pounds of cinnamon, rhubarb, musk, and various other drugs.

The pretended wisdom of Chinese laws may be characterized in few words. It consists in strict regulations of police, and fine discourses on morality. The emperor never alters the laws, because they place the absolute power in his hands. The despotism of the sovereign keeps the grandees in order, and obliges them to remain united. There is no resistance on the part of the people; they have no courage, though much cunning; they find it safer to retain a part of their property, by grovelling at the feet of their masters, than to risk the loss of the whole in order to obtain their liberty. Besides, they have scarcely a motive to rebel; though robbed by their superiors, they are suffered to rob in their turn by using false weights, and disguising their goods. Justice is ill administered; it may, however, be purchased of the judges at a reasonable price.

The emperor is styled the Sacred Son of heaven, Sole Ruler of the earth, and the Great Father of his people. Offerings are made to his image and to his throne; his person is adored, his people prostrate themselves in his presence; the noblemen of his court, when addressed by him and receiving his orders, must bend the knee; every thing around him participates in the idolatry which is lavished on his person. When this demi-god goes abroad, all the Chinese take care to shut themselves up in their houses. Whoever is found in his way is exposed to instant death, unless he turn his back, or lie flat on the ground. All the shops by which the emperor is to pass, must be shut, and this prince never goes out without being preceded by 2000 men, carrying chains, axes, and various other instruments, characteristic of eastern despotism.

Pekin is the capital of the whole Chinese empire, and the ordinary residence of its sovereigns. It is situated in a fertile plain, at a distance of 26 miles from the great wall. The walls of Peking are 70 feet in height, and conceal the buildings from the view. The gates are not embellished with statues or with sculpture, but their prodigious height gives them, at a certain distance, an air of grandeur. The greater part of the streets are in straight lines; the largest are 120 feet wide, and nearly three miles in length, well aired, clean and cheerful. The whole street is generally occupied with shops, in which the silks and wares of China are sold. The magnificence of the imperial palace does not consist so much in the imposing elegance of its architecture, as in the number of its buildings, its

---

Exports in 1806? Chinese laws? Despotism? Emperor? What is required when he goes abroad? Situation of Peking? What of its walls? Gates? Streets? Describe the imperial palace and gardens.

courts, and its gardens. The walls of the palace comprehend a little town, inhabited by the great officers of the court and a multitude of mechanics, all in the emperor's service. The gardens of the palace form a vast park; in which, at proper distances, artificial hills rise 20 to 60 feet in height, separated from one another by little valleys, watered with canals, which unite to form lakes and broad ponds: these are navigated by magnificent pleasure-boats, and their banks are adorned by a series of houses of which no two are alike. Pekin contains about 1,500,000 inhabitants.

Nankin is situated on the Kiang. Without reckoning its suburbs, it is said to be 33 miles in circumference. The only public edifices at Nankin are its gates, which are extraordinary for beauty, and some temples, such as that to which the famous porcelain tower belongs. This has eight stories, is ascended by 884 steps, and, according to the Chinese, is adorned at the top by a pine-apple of solid gold. In the corners of all the galleries are hung bells without number, which send forth clear and delightful sounds from the impulse of the wind. Nankin passes for the seat of Chinese learning: its libraries are more numerous than those of any other place in the empire. Pop. 800,000.

Canton is one of the most populous and wealthy cities of China. Its harbor is the only one in the whole empire frequented by Europeans. It is delightfully watered by lakes, canals, and branches of the river Ta, all of which are covered with boats and junks. The city contains a great number of triumphal arches and temples, richly ornamented with statues. The throng of passengers in the streets is so great, that it is difficult to get along. Canton has about 800,000 inhabitants.

Vau-tchang-fou, in the centre of the empire, is almost equal to Paris in extent. The strongly fortified city of Kin-tcheou-fou, in the northeast, is considered as one of the keys of the empire. Singan-fou is one of the finest cities in the empire. Its walls are eleven miles in extent.

## 243. THIBET.

*Map of Asia.* Where is Thibet? Boundaries? What mountains separate it from Hindostan? What of the Burrampooter river? Irrawaddy? What lake in Thibet? What is the capital? Where is Lassa? Direction from Pekin? Teflis? Cairo? Teheran? Bukhara? Kelat? Tobolsk? Caubul? Constantinople? Mecca? Boston? From where you are? Where is Bootan?

## 244. THIBET, CONTINUED.

Thibet is in extent about one-fifth as large as the United States. The interior is little known. It is a very elevated and mountainous country, and has been called the Switzerland of Asia. The

---

Population of Pekin? Extent of Nankin? What of its gates? Temples? Porcelain tower? Libraries? What of Canton? What of the other cities of China?

244. Extent of Thibet? What has it been called?



Himmaleh mountains, on the southwestern boundary, are nearly five miles in height, and are the loftiest elevations on the globe. The soil presents a general aspect of sterility, and the climate, even as far south as the 27th degree of latitude, is intensely cold. The air is dry, but healthful; vegetation is scanty. Wheat, pease, and barley are the chief productions of agriculture. Sheep and goats are numerous; the latter are celebrated for their fine hair, which is chiefly exported to Cashmere in a raw state, and there manufactured into shawls. The inhabitants appear to be a mild race, of Tartar descent. They have large flocks of cattle; wild animals and wild fowl are abundant.

Thibet is remarkable as the chief seat of Lamaism, a religion which prevails over a large portion of Central Asia, the spiritual head of which is the Dalai Lama, or Grand Lama. This is the visible divinity of a great part of Asia. The divine spirit is supposed, after quitting one body, to enter a new one, and thus, under a succession of forms, the head of the church keeps up the miracle of his perpetual existence. It is pretended that a heavenly odor is exhaled from his whole body; that flowers grow beneath his footsteps; and that, in the most parched desert, springs flow at his command. Such is the belief of this superstitious people. The simple truth is, the Grand Lama is some person selected by designing priests to sit cross-legged, and receive the homage of innumerable pilgrims, who flock to his temple from all parts of Central Asia.

Lassa, the capital, is situated in a large plain. It is a small city, but the houses, built of stone, are spacious and lofty. It is the seat of the Thibetian government, and of the Chinese mandarins, who are appointed as overseers. The famous mountain, on which




---

What of the Himmaleh mountains? Soil of Thibet? Productions? Animals? Inhabitants? What is Thibet remarkable for? Describe the Dalai Lama. What of Lassa? Describe the picture.

as the palace of the Grand Lama, is seven miles from this city. This palace, or temple, is decorated with numberless pyramids of gold and silver, and the ten thousand rooms of the interior contain an immense number of idols of the same precious metals. Near this temple is a monastery, which has three or four hundred apartments inhabited by monks, besides temples and mausoleums.

Latak, in the west, is said to be a large town. Most of the towns are mere villages surrounding some temple.

## 245. CHINESE TARTARY.

*Map of Asia.* Where is Chinese Tartary? Boundaries? Where is Mantchooria? Mongolia? Soongaria? Little Bucharia? What three ranges of mountains in the western part of Chinese Tartary? What desert in Mongolia? Where is Saizan Nor? Lake Palcati? What of the river Amoor? Hoang Ho? Usuri? Kerton? Where is Cashgar? Direction from Teheran? Teflis? Cairo? Cabul? Tobolsk? Mecca? Where is Harcash? Karakorum? Ooalin? Ningoota? Seghalien?

## 246. CHINESE TARTARY, CONTINUED.

Chinese Tartary is divided according to the different tribes by which it is inhabited. The eastern part is occupied by the Mantchoos; the middle by the Monguls; and the west by the Kalmucks or Soongars. Little Bucharia, lying south of Soongaria, is also included in the Chinese possessions in this quarter. Of these vast countries we have little information from recent travellers. The greater part of this region seems to be an immense elevated plain, or table land, and is usually known by the name of the great plain or plateau of Central Asia. It is intersected with barren rocks, and vast sandy deserts, and is supported on all sides by tremendous ranges of mountains.

These mountains are inexhaustible store-houses of snow and ice, which have a material influence in forming the climate of various parts of Asia. From these mountains, too, innumerable rivers flow, some of them emptying into the northern, and some into the southern seas, and others losing themselves in the deserts, enclosed by the mountains. The whole country is so cold and dry as to be ill suited to agriculture. The great sandy desert of Cobi, or Shamo, on account of its elevation, and the vicinity of snow-capped mountains, is not subject to the scorching heat of other deserts, but it is equally barren and destitute of water, and can only be traversed by camels.

Mantchooria comprises the eastern part of Chinese Tartary, and appears not to be a populous country. The Mantchoos are of Mongul origin. The king of the Mantchoos in a former age conquered China, and the emperors since have been his descendants. Mantchooria, now a dependency of China, has kept up con-

---

Palace of the Grand Lama? Latak? Other towns?

246. How is Chinese Tartary occupied? What of Little Bucharia? What of the greater part of Chinese Tartary? What of mountains? Rivers? Desert of Cobi or Shamo? Where is Mantchooria?

siderable intercourse with that country, which has had an influence to soften the barbarous character of the people. Though, for the most part, a nation of wanderers, and living in tents, yet many of them have fixed habitations, and have made greater advances towards civilisation than the other inhabitants of these remote regions. Their language is said to be the most perfect of the Tartar dialects. Their general dress is like that of the Chinese, and the women decorate their heads with a fanciful array of flowers. That part of the Mantchoo territory which lies between the great wall of China and the river Amoor, appears to be well inhabited, and contains a great number of towns and villages. The capital is Seghalien.

The Monguls are a wandering people, subsisting almost entirely on their flocks and herds, which they lead to pasture in different parts of their wide territory, according to the season and state of forage. Their domestic animals are horses, camels, oxen, sheep and goats. They dwell in tents of felt, and use covered wagons for the conveyance of their families from place to place. They remove usually fifteen times a year. At the time of removal, the flocks, men, women and children, form a regular procession, followed by the young women singing cheerful songs. The amusements of these wandering and happy tribes are horseraces, in which even the young women excel; archery, wrestling, pantomime and singing, performed by the girls, and accompanied by the violin and flute.

The complexion of the Monguls is yellow; they have flat noses, small oblique eyes, thick lips, large ears, and black hair. They possess a very cheerful temper, and their general character is kind, frank, and hospitable. They are subject to China, but in some parts the Chinese dominion is little more than nominal. The khans of southern Mongolia are entirely under the government of China, to which they pay an annual tribute, and present themselves at the emperor's court in the posture of the humblest vassals.

Among the Kalmucks, or Soongars, hunting, the care of flocks, and the building of tents, are considered as the only occupations suited to the dignity of a freeborn son of the desert. Their tents are made of poles, and covered with felt. They prefer the freedom of their wandering habits and portable dwellings, to all the conveniences of a settled life. They live almost wholly on flesh, and the products of their dairies. The Kalmucks are a cheerful, robust people, never dejected by sorrow, never subdued by despair. The marriages of this people are celebrated on horseback. On the day appointed for the nuptials, the bride, mounted on a fleet horse, rides

---

Inhabitants? What of the Monguls? Describe their removals from one place to another. Personal appearance of the Monguls? Character? Government? What of the Kalmucks? Describe a marriage among them.



off at full speed, her lover pursuing, and if he overtake her, she becomes his wife without further ceremony. But if the woman be disinclined towards her pursuer, she will not suffer him to overtake her. The preceding picture illustrates a Kalmuck wedding. The Monguls, Kalmucks, and most of the other tribes of Chinese Tartary, are devoted to the superstitious worship of the Grand Lama.

Little Bucharía lies to the west of Thibet, and is divided from Independent Tartary by the celebrated mountains called Belur Tag; it appears, notwithstanding its appellation, to be an extensive country. It is inhabited by a people considerably advanced in civilisation, and entirely different from the Tartars in features and manners. They are chiefly occupied in trade and commerce. Their religion is Mahometan. They were subdued and made tributary to the Kalmucks, but are now under the dominion and protection of China. Little is known of the origin of this people. They appear to be the original inhabitants mixed with Kalmucks. The country, though cold, is very fertile. Its chief commodities are gold, and precious stones, raw silk, and rhubarb. Cashgar, the capital, formerly gave name to a kingdom, and was well known in the East by its commerce, part of which it still retains, though greatly declined from its ancient splendor.

## 247. COREA.

*Map of Asia.* Where is Corea? Boundaries? In what direction is Kingkitao from Cashgar? Constantineple? Tefis? Cairo? Teheran? Caubul? Tobolsk? Boston? From where you are?

## 248. COREA, CONTINUED.

Between Mantchooria and the islands of Japan, is the great pen-

---

Describe the picture. Religion of the Monguls and Kalmucks? What of Little Bucharía? Inhabitants? Their origin? What of Cashgar?

248. Where is Corea?

insula of Corea. It is said that this country, though in the latitude of Italy, has a very cold climate on account of the mountains it contains. In the northern part, snow falls in winter in such large quantities, as to render it necessary to dig passages under it to go from one house to another. Yet the soil is fertile and well cultivated. Among its minerals are gold, silver, lead, iron, topazes, and rock salt. The most common animals are wild boars, crocodiles of great size, bears, sables, martens, beavers, and deer.

The Corean towns have the same general appearance as those of China. But the houses are built of mud, without art, and destitute of convenience; in some places, they are raised on stakes. The houses of the nobility have more external show, and are surrounded with extensive gardens.

The Coreans are a well made people, of an agreeable physiognomy, and very polished in their manners. In a state of subjection for ages to a foreign yoke, they have contracted the vices of servitude. They are much addicted to pleasure, and so habituated to cheating, that even the Chinese are taken in by them. Any seamen, who are so unfortunate as to suffer shipwreck on their shore,



are reduced to slavery. The Chinese have introduced their arts, sciences, and language into Corea. Here, as in China, the philosophy of Confucius is the prevailing doctrine among the great and learned. But the idolatrous religion of Fo has many followers. The Coreans manufacture a very white and strong paper from cotton; they also make fans and painted paper for ornamenting rooms, and very fine linens. The other branches of their industry are unknown.

The king of Corea is subject to China. He resides at King-ki-

---

Why is it so cold in this country? What of the soil? Minerals? Animals? Towns? Houses? What of the Coreans? Describe the picture. What have the Chinese done? What of religion? What do the Coreans manufacture? What of the King of Corea?

tao, which is the capital. In his own country he is absolute. Every inhabitant is bound to labor for him three months, besides which he receives a tenth part of all the productions of the country.

## 249. CHINESE EMPIRE.

*Map of Asia.* Where is the Chinese empire? Boundaries? What three ranges of mountains in the western part of this empire? What lakes in this empire? What countries are embraced in the Chinese empire?

*Map of the World.* Begin and count the degrees of longitude east from Washington to Pekin. How many degrees between the two places? Begin at Washington and count the degrees of longitude west to Pekin. How many are there? Which is the nearest way to Pekin, east or west? How many degrees nearer to Washington is Pekin if you go west, than if you go east?

## 250. CHINESE EMPIRE, CONTINUED.

The Chinese empire embraces China Proper, Thibet, Corea, and Chinese Tartary. These various countries, all united under one sovereign, occupy a space more than twice as extensive as the United States, and constitute the most populous empire in the world, and the most extensive, except that of Russia. The number of the inhabitants is very uncertain, but may be estimated as follows:—China Proper, 200 to 250 millions; Thibet, 12 millions; Corea, 15 millions; Chinese Tartary, 6,500,000. It is probable the whole population of the Chinese empire does not exceed 250,000,000.

## 251. JAPAN.

*Map of Asia.* Where are the Japan isles? Boundaries? How many islands are there? Which is the largest? What strait between Nippon and Jesso?

*Map of Pacific Ocean.* In which direction are the Japan isles from New England across the Pacific? About how many degrees of longitude is Nippon west of Boston? Which is most northerly, the centre of Nippon, or Washington?

## 252. JAPAN, CONTINUED.

The three islands of Nippon, Kiusiu and Sikoke, surrounded with a multitude of smaller islands, form the empire of Japan, a country not more than three times as extensive as New England, yet containing nearly twice as many inhabitants as the whole of the United States. This flourishing state, at the farther extremity of Asia, is withdrawn from the researches of travellers, by the cautiousness of its policy, which excludes foreigners from its dominions.

The whole country is full of mountains and hills, and its coasts are beset with steep rocks, which are opposed to the waves of a stormy ocean. But the hills, the mountains, and the plains, enriched with many singular plants, present an interesting picture of human industry and skill. The most celebrated mountain of Japan is that of Foosi, which is covered with snow through the year. The

---

250. What does the Chinese empire embrace? Extent? Population?

252. What islands form the empire of Japan? Extent? Population? What is said of the policy of Japan? What picture does the country present? What of Foosi?

greater part of the mountains are covered with evergreen trees, and abound in limpid springs.

These islands experience great extremes of heat and cold. The summer heat, however, is frequently alleviated by the sea breezes. In winter, the northwest winds are exceedingly sharp, and bring along with them an intense frost. Thunder is heard almost every night in summer; storms, hurricanes, and earthquakes are very frequent. Every part of Japan is under cultivation, with the exception of the most rugged mountains. On the sides of steep hills, stone walls are raised which sustain plots of ground sowed with rice or with pulse. Rice is the principal grain. The tea-plant grows without culture in the hedges; ginger, black pepper, sugar, cotton, and indigo, are cultivated with success. The Japanese have no apples, but they have oranges of a large size, pears, figs, and date plums. They have a great variety of useful and beautiful trees and shrubs.

There are few cattle in Japan; a variety of the buffalo, and some very small oxen, are employed in agriculture. Dogs are fed at the expense of the towns, and are treated with much kindness and respect. Bears, wolves, and foxes are the only wild animals, and there are very few birds. Gold and silver abound. Copper forms the chief wealth of some of the provinces, and the most valuable of their exports.

The houses have only two stories on account of the earthquakes. The interior is divided into apartments by movable partitions, and is ornamented with paintings. The furniture glitters with a bright, unchangeable varnish. The Japanese are well formed, free and easy in their manners, of a hardy constitution and of middle stature. Their complexion is generally yellow, but the women, from wearing veils, preserve their skin as white as Europeans. Their eyes are oblong, small, and sunken, as if constantly winking. Their hair is black, and their noses broad and snubby. A Japanese is certainly rather a ludicrous object: his head half-shaved, the hair which is left accumulated on the top of his head, the enormous covering of oiled paper in which he is wrapped up when he travels, his salutations, which consist in bending his body repeatedly to the ground, and the fan which he constantly holds in his hand, present an extraordinary figure. The Japanese, proud of the minute cleanliness of their habits, despise the Europeans as a dirty race. They have a high sense of honor; their courtesies and ceremonies are infinite; they have books teaching them how to take a draught of water; how to give and receive presents, and all the other minutiae of behavior. The following picture represents a Japanese priest or bonze, lady, soldier, lady and servant.

In Japan there are no taxes to interrupt the progress of trade. The harbors are filled with large and small craft. The shops and

---

Other mountains? Climate? Soil? Productions? Animals? Minerals? What of Houses? Personal appearance of the Japanese? Describe a Japanese. What of the character of the people? Describe the picture. Trade?



markets teem with all sorts of wares. The Japanese import raw silk, sugar, turpentine and drugs from China. Their exports are copper, varnish, and gum-lac.

The government is an absolute and hereditary monarchy, supported by a great number of subordinate princes, who arrange the revenue of their own fiefs or governments. The laws of the country are few, but executed with the utmost rigor, and with no respect to persons. The police is vigilant. There is reason to believe that, at the present time, there is a gradual, but slow improvement in the moral and political condition of the people. The population is about 25,000,000.

The towns on the northern and western coast of the island of Nippon and of all the island of Sikoke are only known to us by name. In Kiusiu is the harbor and town of Nangasacki. When approached by sea, this city presents views so beautiful, that any thing like them would be sought for in vain in the most celebrated picturesque gardens of Europe. A rock, 288 paces long, is the only place in which the Dutch are allowed to reside, where they live in a state of seclusion and solitude, ignorant of all the world beside. These are the only foreigners permitted in the Japanese dominions. Sanga is celebrated for the beauty of its women, and a manufacture of almost transparent porcelain; and Cangoxima is the place where the Portuguese landed when they first discovered the country. They obtained access, and for a time were freely admitted. The Catholic missionaries propagated Christianity to a great extent, but, owing to their imprudence, the Portuguese, as well as all other Christian nations, were banished, and have since been excluded from the kingdom. Forty thousand Japanese, who had embraced Christianity, suffered a miserable death from persecution. The

Governments? Laws? Population? Towns? Harbor and town of Nangasacki? Where do the Dutch reside? What of Sanga? Cangoxima? What of the Portuguese? Effect of their imprudence?



most common torment inflicted upon them was roasting alive. Some faint traces of the Christian religion remain, mingled with their ancient superstitions; but in general the people are attached to the religion of Budha, resembling that of Fo. They are very superstitious, and have a multitude of objects of worship. On the high road, every mountain, hill, and cliff is consecrated to some divinity, to whom travellers are required to address a multitude of long prayers. As this would occupy too much time for those who are in haste, a machine is used, consisting of an upright post, with an iron plate set into the top. The turning round of this plate, upon which the prayer is engraved, is deemed equivalent to repeating the prayer.

### 253. ASIA. GENERAL VIEW.

*Map of Asia, Map of Pacific Ocean, and Map of the World.* How is Asia bounded? What division between Asia and Europe? How is Africa connected with Asia? How separated? What is the most northern point of Asia? The most southern? The most eastern? The most western? What separates Asia from America? What seas around Asia? What gulfs? What bays? What great salt lake or sea in Asia? What other lakes? What country in North America is in the same latitude as the Caspian sea? What large rivers in Asia flow into the southern seas? What into the northern? Describe the Indus; Ganges; Kiang Ku; Amoor; Lena; Yenisei; Obi; Gihon; Euphrates; Tigris.

Boundaries and capital of Arabia? Turkey in Asia? Caucasian countries? Persia? Independent Tartary? Afghanistan? Beloochistan? Hindostan? Chinese Tartary? China India? Malacca? Thibet? China? Russia in Asia? Corea? Japan? Chinese empire? What large town in the United States is in nearly the same latitude as Pekin? Which of the Southern States is directly west of Japan? What desert in Asia is on the opposite side of the globe to Philadelphia? What part of America is in the same latitude as Hindostan? Arabia and China India? What, in the same as Persia? Independent Tartary? Russia in Asia?

Where is the Belur Tag range of mountains? The Altaian? The Himmaleh? The Gauts? The Ural? Caucasus? Where is mount Ararat?

### 254. ASIA. GENERAL VIEW, CONTINUED.

According to the most authentic records, it was in Asia that civilisation and the arts had their rise. It is certain that within its limits the first human pair had their residence, and that from them the world was peopled. Here the great events recorded in the Old Testament chiefly happened. Here some of the great monarchies of antiquity had their rise and fall; here lived the prophets; here dwelt David and Solomon; here ministered the Saviour of mankind; here the apostles received, and here began to preach, the gospel.

It is ascertained that Asia is completely separated from the American continent by Behring's straits. Taking its boundaries as usually laid down, the whole extent may be estimated at 16,000,000 square miles; its greatest length being about 6,000 miles, and its greatest width 4230 miles. Its extent is somewhat more than that of the whole continent of America. Its population is variously esti-

---

What is the present religion of Japan? Describe the praying machine.

254. Where did the arts have their rise? In what country did the first human pair live? What great events have happened in Asia? How is Asia separated from America? Extent of Asia? Length? Width?

mated at from 340,000,000 to 580,000,000. It probably amounts at least to 400,000,000, and nearly equals the population of the rest of the globe.

In the centre of Asia is an immense plateau, or plain, which rises between the 30th and 50th parallels of latitude. It is an assemblage of naked mountains, enormous rocks, and very elevated plains. Near these high regions, three immense ranges of mountains shoot up, forming a rampart round the plateau, and the centre from which the principal ridges branch out and traverse various parts of Asia. These ranges are the Altaian on the north, Belur Tag on the west, and Himmaleh on the south. Here the principal rivers of Asia have their source. The Himmaleh range is considered the highest in the world. Its loftiest peaks have been estimated at 25 or 26,000 feet, an elevation of about 5 miles above the level of the sea. The highest peaks of the Altaian chain are 10,000 feet above the level of the sea, and are covered with perpetual snow. The highest peaks of the Belur Tag are very lofty, but their precise elevation is not known.

Beside these ranges, there is the Ural chain, which commences near Nova Zembla, forms a part of the division between Europe and Asia, and, proceeding in a southerly direction, terminates between the sea of Aral and the Caspian sea; the Caucasian chain, between the Black sea and the Caspian, whose tops are covered with perpetual snow; the mount Taurus chain, commencing in the northeastern part of Turkey, where the Ararat rises into the region of perpetual snow, one branch terminating in Asia Minor, the other passing through Syria along the Mediterranean sea; and the Vindhya and Gauts, in the middle and southern parts of Hindostan.

To the north of the Himmaleh mountains, is the elevated plain or plateau called the Desert of Cobi, or Shamo. This is perhaps the highest plain on the globe. Here we find only salt lakes and small rivers, which are lost in the mass of sand and gravel; some few tracts of pasture, or stunted shrubs, are the only signs of vegetation. The length of this plateau is about 900 miles, by 500 in width, and is equal in extent to one-fourth the territory of the United States.

The principal rivers of Asia that flow into the southern seas are the following: The Yangtse Kiang, which rises in Thibet, has a course of 2281 miles, and empties into the Blue sea; the Hoang Ho, which rises in Thibet, and has a course of 1984 miles to the Yellow sea; the Irrawaddy, which rises in Thibet, and has a course of 1798 miles to the bay of Bengal; the Ganges, which rises in the Himmaleh mountains, and has a course of 1550 miles into the bay of Bengal; the Burrampooter, which rises in the Himmaleh moun-

---

Describe the central part of Asia. What three great ranges of mountains around Central Asia? Where have the principal rivers of Asia their source? What of the Himmaleh mountains? Altaian chain? Belur Tag? Ural mountains? Caucasian? Mount Taurus? Vindhya? Gauts? What of the Desert of Cobi? What principal rivers flow into the southern seas of Asia? What of the Yangtse Kiang? Hoang Ho? Irrawaddy? Ganges? Burrampooter?

tains, and has a course of 1240 miles to its union with the Ganges; the Indus, which rises in Thibet, and has a course of 1200 miles to the sea of Arabia; and the Euphrates, which rises in the north-eastern part of Turkey in Asia, and has a course of 1147 miles to the Persian gulf. The principal tributary of the Euphrates is the Tigris.

Of those rivers of Asia that empty into the northern seas, the principal are the Lena, which rises in the mountains near lake Baikal, and has a course of 2071 miles to the Arctic ocean; the Obi, which rises in Chinese Tartary, and has a course of 2151 miles to the sea of Obi; the Yenisei, which rises in the Altai mountains, and has a course of 2108 miles to the Arctic ocean; the Amoor, or Saghalien, which rises in Chinese Tartary, and has a course of 1823 miles to the sea of Okotsk; and the Irtysh, which rises in Chinese Tartary, and has a course of 1302 miles to its union with the Obi.

Asia is remarkable for its lakes, which are generally salt, brackish, or sulphurous, and many of them with no outlets. The Caspian sea is an immense salt lake, being 646 miles long, from north to south, and 265 in its greatest breadth, and is in fact the largest lake in the world. Though it receives the Volga, the longest river in Europe, with many others, yet it is destitute of an outlet. The sea of Aral, beside many other smaller lakes in Asia, is salt, and possesses no outlet. The lake Asphaltites, or Dead sea, a bituminous lake, beneath which it is supposed are the ruined cities of Sodom and Gomorrah, is situated in Turkey in Asia.

### 255. ASIA. GENERAL VIEW CONTINUED.

The climate of Asia presents many curious phenomena. Owing to the immense masses of snow and ice, which accumulate in the great mountain ranges, the climate of many parts is rendered much colder than it would otherwise be. The great elevation of Central Asia, united with the preceding cause, renders those regions much colder than other countries in similar latitudes. In those parts of Tartary which are situated in the same latitudes as France, the winter commences in the month of September, two months earlier than in the latter country; yet Arabia and Turkey are among the hottest countries on the globe, owing to the hot winds which come from the parched surface of Africa. Another remarkable circumstance is that Asia has no temperate zone. All its countries are either cold or hot, either presenting the stern climate and scanty vegetation of cold regions, or the enervating warmth and luxuriant fertility of torrid regions.

---

Indus? Euphrates? Tigris? What principal rivers empty into the northern seas of Asia? What of the Lena? Obi? Yenisei? Amoor? Irtysh?

*Here let the pupil answer questions on Table No. 21, in the Atlas.*

What of lakes in Asia? Caspian sea? Aral? Asphaltites?

255. What two causes render the climate of Asia colder than it would otherwise be? What of the climate of Tartary? Of Arabia and Turkey? Has Asia any temperate zone?

It is owing to this remarkable circumstance, that Asia presents such a marked contrast in its inhabitants. They may be divided into two great classes—the feeble and effeminate nations of the south, and the bolder and more warlike inhabitants of the north. These latter nations, occasionally bursting down from their sterile mountains and plains, have subjugated the less warlike inhabitants of the milder climates. Thus the history of Asia has for ages presented a succession of revolutions, following each other with such rapidity as to render it difficult to keep pace with the march of events.

The food of the southern inhabitants is rice and maize; that of the northern, millet and barley. On the borders of each we find countries of wheat. Nature produces in the southern regions delicious fruits, and in some parts the strongest and most pungent aromatics; but the north is deprived even of the orchard fruits of Europe and America, and a large space bordering upon the Arctic ocean, inhabited by the rein-deer, must ever remain inaccessible to cultivation.

The Tartars, the Monguls, and a part of the Persians, led by the nature of their country to the keeping of great numbers of animals, imbibe a strong taste for horsemanship, and consequently become devoted to robbery and war. In the west, the camel is used for the transportation of goods from one country to another. China, deprived in a great measure of beasts of burden, has connected all the different parts of the country by means of canals. The want of wood obliges the inhabitants of the central plateau and Arabia to live in tents. On the contrary, in India, and other countries abounding in wood, particularly in the palm, the indolent inhabitants construct their buildings in the slightest manner, often with branches covered only with leaves. Thus the towns of Asia appear and disappear like the empires of which they are the momentary centres.

A wandering and patriarchal life is clearly pointed out by nature to many Asiatic nations. While its immense plains are incapable of cultivation, they are yet well adapted to pasturage. The unlimited authority of a father of a family among these people, necessarily becomes the pattern for government, and despotic systems are consequently adopted. In some other parts of Asia, the uniform fertility of the soil, and constant mildness of the climate, in recompensing too rapidly the most trifling labor, have stifled almost in its birth the energy of the human mind, which requires to be stimulat-

---

Into what two classes may the inhabitants of Asia be divided? What of the bolder inhabitants of the north? What has the history of Asia presented for ages? What of food in the north of Asia? In the south? Productions of the south of Asia? Fruits of the north of Asia? What Asiatic nations are devoted to robbery and war? What of the camel? What of China? Why do the Tartars and Arabs live in tents? What of the inhabitants of India? What of the towns in Asia? What kind of government have the wandering tribes of Asia? What leads them to form despotic governments? What effect has the fertility of the soil and the mildness of the climate in some parts of Asia produced?

ed by want and obstacles. Both these modes of living are productive of a mental and bodily inactivity, which becomes hereditary, and appears to stamp the races of Asia with a general inferiority in energy and courage.

The most remarkable feature in the moral condition of Asia is presented by its superstitions. In the Russian possessions, the Greek religion makes a slow and feeble progress; while Mahome-



tanism and Paganism, in various forms, flourish in all other parts of this grand division of the globe. Christianity, which here had its origin, is exiled to other climes, and a lying prophet and juggling priests stretch their dark dominion over the millions that inhabit it. The engraving represents the Asiatics as rejecting Christianity.

## 256. NORTHWESTERN OCEANICA. ASIATIC ISLANDS.

*Maps of Pacific Ocean, Asia, and the World.* Where is the island of Sumatra? Direction of the following islands from Sumatra? Java? Borneo? Celebes? Gilolo? Ceram? Amboyna? Banda? Luzon? Mindanao? Which of these islands lie under the equator? What straits separate Sumatra from Asia? What straits between Celebes and Borneo? Between Sumatra and Java? What sea between the Philippine isles and China? What sea between Celebes and the Philippine isles?

In which direction is Java from Nippon? From Turkey in Asia? From England? From Egypt? From Boston? How many degrees of longitude is Java west of Boston? How many degrees east of Greenwich? What countries in America are in the same latitude as Java? What countries in Africa and America in the same latitude as the Philippine isles? In what direction is Borneo from the cape of Good Hope? From cape Horn?

Which is the most northern of the Asiatic islands? Which the most southern? Which the most western? Where is Bencoolen? Batavia? The town of Borneo? Macassar? Manilla?

Are the inhabitants of Asia generally inferior in energy and courage? What are the causes of this inferiority? What of religion in the Russian possessions? What of Mahometanism? Paganism? Christianity? Describe the picture.

## 257. NORTHWESTERN OCEANICA, CONTINUED.

On the eastern border of Asia are a number of extensive and populous islands, scattered in the Pacific ocean, which pass under the general title of Asiatic islands, or Northwestern Oceanica. The most important of these islands are Sumatra, Java, and Borneo, called Sunda isles, the Philippine islands, and the Moluccas or Spice islands.

The Sunda isles are Sumatra, Java, and Borneo. Sumatra is in extent about equal to New England and the Middle States; it has a population of 4,000,000, one-third of that of the United States. A range of mountains runs through the island near the western coast. The highest peak, mount Ophir, lies directly under the equator. The climate is cool, notwithstanding its situation; the western coast is low and sickly. The principal productions are rice, pepper, cotton, camphor, and ratan. The wild animals are



the elephant, rhinoceros, black bear, otter, and wild boar. Birds of beautiful plumage are abundant. The country is divided into several petty kingdoms; the interior is inhabited by a race of cannibals; the coast is possessed by Malays. The governments are generally hereditary despotisms; the religion is pagan. Bencoolen belongs to the English, and is the only European settlement. The picture represents a scene in Sumatra.

Java is in extent somewhat larger than the state of New York, and has a population about equal to Sumatra. A range of mountains runs through the island from east to west. Many of the summits are volcanic. The climate in many parts is extremely sickly; the soil is fertile, and produces rice, sugar, pepper, and coffee,

257. Where are the Asiatic islands situated? Name the most important of them. Which are called the Sunda isles? What of Sumatra? Mountains? Climate? Productions? Animals? Inhabitants? What of Bencoolen? Describe the picture. What of Java?

which are extensively exported to various parts of the world. The inhabitants are the original Javanese, and Malays, who are of the Mahometan religion. The Javanese are indolent, superstitious, and dull of understanding, but remarkable for candor and veracity. Batavia, founded by the Dutch, is the chief town, and has many edifices in the European fashion.

Borneo is the largest island on the globe, with the exception of New Holland, and is three times as extensive as the four Middle States. Its population is reckoned at 3,000,000. The face of the country on the coast, and for some distance inland, is low and marshy; the interior is partly mountainous. The climate is unhealthy. Earthquakes are frequent. The island has several considerable rivers. The productions are rice, pepper, camphor, and the fruit trees of India. Diamonds of great value are found here. The bird of paradise is common, also monkeys of the largest kind, and the ourang outang, which so strongly resembles the human species. The inhabitants of the coast are Malays, Javanese, and Bugis, or natives of Celebes, all of the Mahometan religion. The interior of the country is divided among independent tribes; the government is despotic. Borneo, on the west part of the island, is the chief town and capital.

The Philippine isles are said to be 1200 in number, and more than 500 of them are of some importance. These islands abound in marshes, mossy ground, and lakes. Mountains rise to some height, and several of them are volcanic. Earthquakes are frequent. The productions are rice, cotton, tobacco, coffee, and tropical fruits. The mountains are rich in gold and other minerals. These islands belong to Spain. The population is 3,000,000. The principal islands are occupied by independent tribes. Luzon is as extensive as New England. Manilla, a Spanish settlement in Luzon, is the largest town.

The principal of the Moluccas, or Spice islands, are Celebes, Gilolo, Ceram, Amboyna, and Banda. They contain several volcanoes. Enormous peaks, projecting abruptly from the surface of the deep, and rocks, piled up to immense elevations, show that these islands have been formed by some convulsion of nature. Earthquakes, which are here frequent and dreadful, render the navigation dangerous; not a year passes without the formation of new sandbanks, and the disappearance of old ones.

Celebes, the largest of these islands, is somewhat less in extent than the four Middle States. The shores are described as presenting charming landscapes. The productions are rice, cotton, pepper, cloves, and nutmegs. This island also, as well as Java, produces the celebrated upas tree, which affords the most deadly vegetable poison that is known. The natives dip their arrows in its juice,

---

Inhabitants? Chief town? What of Borneo? Inhabitants? Chief town? What of the Philippine isles? Moluccas? What of Celebes?

which renders them very fatal. The inhabitants of Celebes are active, industrious, and robust, by an austere education. The people are madly devoted to games of chance. The women mingle freely in all the affairs of life, and they are sometimes elevated to high political stations. The population is 3,000,000; the religion is Mahometan; the government is monarchical, but the sovereign is not despotic. He is elected by a number of hereditary chiefs, who are his counsellors, and in their name he administers the government. The chief town is Macassar.

Gilolo is a large island, and produces sago, formed from the pith of trees, one tree sometimes producing 600 pounds. It also produces the bread-fruit-tree which yields a substance, of which the inhabitants make bread, resembling that made of the finest wheat. It is much esteemed in these climates, and constitutes an important article of food. Ceram is the most distinguished for yielding sago. Amboyna is particularly celebrated for its cloves, which grow on trees 40 or 50 feet high, and are gathered twice a year. Amboyna, a Dutch settlement, is the chief town and capital. The Banda isles, ten in number, celebrated for producing great quantities of nutmegs, are of volcanic origin, and considered very unhealthy.

The Moluccas are valuable for the abundance of their rich productions. The amount of cloves, nutmegs, and other articles, furnished by them, is prodigious; and there has been much contention among the European powers respecting the possession of them. They belong at present to the Dutch.

## 258. CENTRAL OCEANICA. AUSTRALASIA.

*Map of Pacific Ocean, Map of the World.* Where is New Holland? In which direction is New Guinea from New Holland? Van Diemen's land from New Holland? New Britain from New Holland? New Ireland from New Holland? Solomon's isles from New Holland? Louisiade from New Holland? New Caledonia from New Holland? New Hebrides from New Holland? New Zealand from New Holland?

In which direction is New Zealand from New England? From cape Horn? Cape of Good Hope? From England? What countries in Africa and America are in the same latitude as New Holland? What capes in New Holland? What straits between New Holland and New Guinea? Between New Holland and Van Diemen's land? What gulf in New Holland? Where is Botany bay? New South Wales? Sydney? Edel's land? De Witt's land? Napoleon's land? What river in New Holland?

## 259. CENTRAL OCEANICA, CONTINUED.

New Holland, and numerous islands around it, are grouped under the general division of Central Oceanica, or Australasia. The most important of these islands, after New Holland, are Van Diemen's land, New Guinea, New Britain, New Ireland, Solomon's isles, Louisiade, New Caledonia, New Hebrides, and New Zealand.

---

Inhabitants? Government? What of Gilolo? What two useful trees does it produce? What of Ceram? Amboyna? The Banda isles? For what are the Moluccas valuable? To whom do they belong?

259. What are the most important islands of Central Oceanica?



New Holland is by far the largest island in the world; its extent is nearly equal to the whole of Europe, and is one half larger than the United States. The face of the country, on the coast, is extremely diversified. A chain of mountains runs parallel with the eastern coast. None of the rivers have the appearance of a long course. Hawkesbury river, which is navigable for 140 miles, is the principal. It falls into the sea at Broken bay, near port Jackson. It is subject to inundations, which occasion immense destruction of crops.

The seasons of New Holland correspond with those of the south of Africa and America. The native productions which furnish food for man, are very few, but the various kinds of grain, fruit, and vegetables, which grow in England, have been introduced, and yield abundantly. Among the animals peculiar to the island is the kangaroo, which is said to leap 30 yards at a single bound. Among the birds is the emeu, whose body is as large as that of the



ostrich, and it is of the same species. In the Hawkesbury river, swans are found of a glossy black, possessing all the graceful elegance of figure, which belongs to the white swan.

An English colony was established on the eastern part of Botany Bay in 1788, but soon after, the settlement was removed to Port Jackson, 12 miles north. To this colony, great numbers of criminals have been banished from Great Britain. It is flourishing, and many of the exiles have become virtuous and respectable citizens. Sidney is the chief town and capital.

The original inhabitants have been represented as nearly black, with woolly hair, of low stature, and ill shaped. They have been described as the most brutal, dull, and degraded of the human

---

What is the largest island in the world? Extent of New Holland? What of Hawkesbury river? Seasons in New Holland? Productions? Animals? Describe the picture. What of the English colony in New Holland? How have the inhabitants been represented?

family. It has been said that they have no religious notions of any kind, nor scarcely any idea of a future state.

There is reason to believe, however, that these representations are to a great extent untrue. Mr. Dawson, a British agent, who had ample opportunities of studying their character, gives a very different account of them. He says that they are a naturally mild and harmless race of savages, and the best natured people in the world.

They live, according to his account, in small tribes, and though they have no settled habitations, yet one tribe generally remains in a particular district. They have no king nor chief, but have certain customs and ceremonies, which appear to be common to all the tribes. They occasionally meet in large bodies to inflict punishments. This is done by making the culprit stand on his defence with a target in his hand, while such of the multitude as please, hurl spears at him.

The women perform all the drudgery of the family. They are remarkably fond of their children. If the parents die, the children are adopted by the unmarried men and women, and are taken the greatest care of. They are kind and generous to each other; if one of them receives a gift, he shares it with the first person he meets. A man never eats any thing given him, till he has first presented a part to his wife, and the other women around him. They go entirely naked, and have woolly beards which they rub off with sticks. Their hair is not woolly, but long and lank. They build temporary huts, in a neat manner, of poles and twigs.

Van Diemen's land is a large and fertile island, whose inhabitants resemble those of New Holland. The British have a flourishing settlement at Hobart town. Of New Guinea little is known. It is very extensive, and in the possession of a people described by travellers as in the lowest rank of intellectual and moral character. Their description cannot be read without disgust. They appear to be of the same race as the New Hollanders, and probably injustice has been done to these islanders, as to the natives of New Holland. New Britain and New Ireland have a fertile soil, with inhabitants resembling those of the adjacent islands. The inhabitants of New Ireland are said to be warlike, and to possess canoes 80 feet in length, each of which is made of a single tree.

The archipelago of Louisiade, formerly supposed to be a single island, consists of a number of islands of different sizes, inhabited by a rude and warlike people. The Solomon's isles are supposed to be 18 in number. They are populous, fertile, and healthy. New Caledonia is barren and little known. New Hebrides consists of numerous clusters of islands, which are mountainous, but fruitful,

---

What does Mr. Dawson say of them? What of Van Diemen's land? New Guinea? New Britain? New Ireland? Inhabitants of New Ireland? What of Louisiade? Solomon's isles? New Caledonia?

and inhabited by a civil and hospitable people. New Zealand consists of two islands separated by Cook's straits, which are 12 or 15 miles wide. Almost the whole of the northern island is well fitted for cultivation. The climate is mild and salubrious. The inhabitants are said to be tall, sagacious, and intelligent, but warlike and ferocious. The government of the aborigines is despotic. Several missionary stations have been established, and the success of the missionaries, notwithstanding the discouragements, has been considerable.

## 260. EASTERN OCEANICA. POLYNESIA.

*Map of Pacific Ocean, Map of the World.* In which direction are the following islands from Boston? Sandwich islands? Ladrões? Carolinas? Navigators? Friendly? Society? Marquesas? Easter island? Which is the most northern of these groups? The most eastern? The most southern? The most western? What islands in the Atlantic are in the same latitude as the Sandwich islands? What island in the Indian ocean in the same latitude as Otaheite?

## 261. EASTERN OCEANICA, CONTINUED.

Eastern Oceanica, or Polynesia, a term signifying many islands, embraces various groups occupying the central parts of the Pacific ocean. The principal are the Sandwich, Ladrões, Pelew, Caroline, Navigators', Society, Friendly, and Marquesas islands, and Easter island.

The Sandwich islands are ten in number, and are the most northern of the islands of Oceanica. Owhyhee, now called Hawaii, is the largest of this group, and indeed the largest in Eastern Oceanica, being in extent about equal to Connecticut and Rhode Island. On this island Capt. Cook, a celebrated navigator, was killed by the natives. It has several mountains of great elevation. Kirauea is a frightful volcano, whose upper crater is estimated at seven and a half miles in circumference, and 1,000 feet deep. The American missionaries lately counted 51 craters of different sizes, 21 of which were in a state of activity.

The climate of these islands is similar to that of the West Indies, being in the same latitude; they are however somewhat more temperate. The productions are bread-fruit, sugar-cane, cocoa-nuts, and sweet potatoes. The population is estimated at 130,000. The inhabitants, though marked with the vices of the savage state, are naturally mild, affectionate, and docile. Their government is monarchical and despotic. In 1819, they renounced their idolatry, and burned their idols. Several of the natives, having been educated in the United States, have returned to these islands in company with American missionaries. The labors of these missionaries have been attended with signal success, and the hope may be indulged that the inhabitants may, at no remote period, be ranked

---

New Zealand? Inhabitants? Missionary stations?

261. Principal islands of Eastern Oceanica? What of the Sandwich islands? Owhyhee? What of Kirauea? Climate of the southern isles? Productions? Inhabitants? Missionaries?



among civilized and Christian nations. The picture exhibits some of the youth listening to a missionary.

The Ladrões are 16 in number, and are sometimes called the Isles of Robbers, being inhabited by a people given to piracy. The climate is mild and healthful, though subject to hurricanes. The people are said to possess boats constructed with such skill, that, with a side wind, they will sail 20 miles an hour.

Of the Caroline isles little is known. Their number is supposed to be from 30 to 80. Their climate is agreeable, and the soil in general fertile. They are very populous, and the inhabitants are said to resemble those of the Philippine islands. They have neither temples, nor idols, nor the least appearance of religious worship. The government is monarchical.

The Pelew islands are 18 in number. They are frequently visited by ships for refreshment. The inhabitants are represented as an amiable, gay, and hospitable people, living principally upon fish, though bread-fruit and cocoa seem to be produced in abundance.

The Navigators' islands are ten in number, and are so-called from the skill of the inhabitants in managing their canoes. They consist of high lands, which are fertile, and in a high degree productive. The people are ingenious and industrious, but very ferocious.

Of the Friendly islands there are 150. They are in general fertile and productive. The population is supposed to be 200,000. From the apparent hospitality and kindness of the natives, Capt. Cook gave to these islands the name they bear, but subsequent visitors represent them as cruel and ferocious. Of these islands, Tongataboo is the largest, being 60 miles in circumference. The

inhabitants of this island sacrifice human victims in their idolatrous worship, and, it is said, practise cannibalism.

The Marquesas are five in number; their climate and products are the same as those of the Society islands. The population is conjectured to be about 50,000. The inhabitants are said to surpass all others in this sea, in symmetry of form and regularity of features.

The Society islands are 60 or 70 in number. Otaheite, the largest, is about the size of Rhode Island. All the vegetable species peculiar to Oceanica grow in Otaheite in abundance, and are of the best quality. The inhabitants are of a pale mahogany color, with fine black hair and black eyes. They are mild, affable and polite. In 1815, the inhabitants of several of these islands renounced idolatry, and embraced Christianity. Since the settlement of the British missionaries among them, their mode of building has been much improved. The government is an hereditary monarchy, which, in 1819, was modelled after the English constitution, and a code of laws was then for the first time established.

Southeast of this cluster is Pitcairn's island, a small island settled by the mutineers of the English ship *Bounty*. Their descendants are an amiable and interesting people, but it is said that a part of them have abandoned the island, and have gone to Otaheite.

Easter island is the most eastern island in Oceanica. It is small, and has perhaps 1500 inhabitants, who are represented as a thievish race. The surface of the island is mountainous, and some of the peaks may be seen at the distance of 45 miles.

## 262. OCEANICA. GENERAL VIEW.

*Map of Pacific Ocean.* How many degrees of longitude between the most eastern and most western islands of Oceanica? How many degrees between the most northern and most southern? Which is the largest of these islands? Which the next largest? Which the third in size? Which resembles the figure of a boot? Which is about the size of Europe?

## 263. OCEANICA. GENERAL VIEW, CONTINUED.

Having taken a brief view of the several islands which are scattered throughout the Pacific ocean, let us now take a general survey of the whole. The islands to which Malte-Brun gives the appropriate title of Oceanica, extend over a space of 8,000 miles, from the eastern to the western extremity.

Twenty of these islands are extensive countries, and one of them is about equal in extent to Europe. The whole surface of the islands may be estimated at from 4 to 5,000,000 of square miles, an extent perhaps nearly equal to one-tenth part of all the land on the globe. The population may be estimated at 20,000,000. No portion of the globe has more numerous inequalities of surface, and it

---

Marquesas? Society? What of Otaheite? Inhabitants? Government? What of Pitcairn's island? Easter island?

263. Extent of Oceanica? Population?

is remarkable that the mountain ranges have all a general direction from north to south. Many of these mountains are volcanic, and are described by navigators as often seeming to the mariner to rise like giants from the bosom of the deep. In no part of the world are there so many volcanoes. In Schouten's islands, near New Guinea, the flames and smoke rise calmly over a fruitful and smiling country; in other islands, dreadful torrents of black lava darken the shores. The volcano of Gilolo broke out in 1673 with a violence which made the whole of the Moluccas shake. The ashes were carried as far as Magindanao, and the scoria and the pumice stones, floating on the sea, seemed to retard the progress of vessels.

The formation of many of these islands is attributed to the operation of minute insects. All the low islands seem to have for their base a reef of coral rocks, generally disposed in a circular form. In the interior, the sand is mixed with pieces of broken coral, and other marine substances, proving that such islands have been originally formed by these coral rocks, which are inhabited, and, according to some, created, by zoophites, and afterwards augmented and elevated by the slow accumulation of light bodies drifted to them by the sea. It is very remarkable that, in some of these islands, there are elevations of several hundred feet in height, on whose summits these coral rocks are found; this seems to prove that they have been formed by these coral insects at the level of the sea, which has gradually retired and left them exposed.

The climate throughout Oceanica is, for the most part, delightful. Perpetual spring, combined with perpetual summer, displays the opening blossom, mingled with the ripened fruits. A perfume of exquisite sweetness embalms the atmosphere, which is continually refreshed by the wholesome breezes from the sea. Here might



What is remarkable concerning the mountains in Oceanica? Volcanoes? Describe the supposed formation of the islands of Oceanica? Climate of Oceanica? Describe the picture.

mankind, if they could throw off their vices, lead lives exempt from trouble and from want. Their bread grows on the trees which shade their lawns, and the light barks glide on the tranquil seas, protected from the swelling surge by the coral reefs which enclose them.

In many of these islands, rice takes the place of wheat. In Polynesia, there are several very useful esculent plants, which grow either spontaneously or under the influence of culture—the potato, yam, and two species of arum, from which, by boiling, a sweet, farinaceous substance is obtained. Two orders of trees are spread over many of the islands of Oceanica, which delight both the eye and the taste. The first is the palm. This is one of the most beautiful and majestic of trees, yet its beauty is its least merit. The external layers of the trunk furnish a hard and heavy wood, which may be formed into planks and stakes. The shell of the fruit is made into small culinary vessels. The large leaves are employed in roofing wigwams and cottages. The leaves of some palms are used for fans, others for writing on, and others for parasols so large as to cover ten people. Various uses are made of the cocoa-nut, which is a species of palm. The sweet and pulpy substance enclosed in the shell is dressed in a variety of forms. Wine, vinegar, and alcohol are made of the milky liquid. From the same fruit a good oil is procured.

Another family of nutritious trees enjoyed by the Oceanians is that of the bread-fruit-tree. This tree rises to the height of forty feet, and its trunk acquires the thickness of a man's body. The fruit is as large as a child's head. Gathered before it is fully ripe, and baked among ashes, it becomes a wholesome bread, resembling fresh wheat bread in taste. Three of these trees will support a man for a year. The inner bark of the same tree is manufactured into a kind of cloth, its leaves are used for napkins, its glutinous and milky juice furnishes a good cement and glue, and its wood is employed in building cottages and canoes. Besides these useful productions, Oceanica furnishes the rarest and richest fruits and plants. Among the fruits, we may enumerate oranges, pomegranates, tamarinds, and various kinds of almonds; among the aromatic productions are pepper, cinnamon, cloves and nutmegs. From the inner bark of the nutmeg-tree, mace is procured. Among the flowering shrubs are a profusion of those which are distinguished for the brilliancy of their colors, and the grace of their forms.

The animal kingdom of Oceanica affords no specimen of the great quadrupeds common to Africa and Asia. It however possesses several species which are not found in other parts of the world. The kangaroo, cassowary, emeu, and black swan, are inhabitants of these islands alone. Of the feathered race, remarkable for the brilliancy and beauty of their plumage, the number is prodigious;

---

What of plants? Trees? Describe the uses of the palm. Of the bread-fruit-tree? What of fruits and plants? Animal kingdom?

and, sporting amid the spicy groves of these favored regions, flocks of parrots, macaws, birds of paradise, and others, which yet are without names, give an aspect of enchantment to the scene.

It is painful to turn from these beautiful exhibitions of nature to the degraded people, on whom so many rich gifts have been lavished. For the most part, they are savages, displaying all the mean, degrading characteristics, with few of the nobler qualities, which belong to savage life. Their history we cannot penetrate, but there is reason to believe that they have remained for ages in their present state. They are evidently possessed of no art, no knowledge, nor religion, which can raise them above their debased condition. The only hope that is offered, is, that Christianity may yet be diffused among them, and scatter the brooding darkness, which now hangs over their moral condition.

The inhabitants of Oceanica are referred to two stocks—the Malays, or yellow Oceanians, and the Oceanian negroes. The Malays are of a tawny complexion, have scanty beards, and always long, lank, black hair. Their persons are short, squat, and robust. The inhabitants of Northwestern and Eastern Oceanica are of this race. The Oceanian negroes are not black like the African negroes. They have spare, puny frames, and thin hair which grows in small tufts. Their height is about four feet nine inches, and never more than five feet and a half. This is called the Papuan race, from New Guinea, which has also the name of Papua. They occupy the principal islands in Central Oceanica. They have been represented as an inferior race, and, both in intellectual and moral character, seeming to be below all others. When encountered by the fairer races, they have always retreated, and shown themselves incapable of maintaining their ground.

---

Describe the inhabitants. To what two stocks are they referred? What of the Malays? Negroes? Why are the negroes called the Papuan race? How do they contrast with the fairer races?



# GENERAL VIEW OF THE WORLD.

## 264. DIVISIONS OF LAND AND WATER.

When we cast our eyes over a map of the world, we perceive that the surface of the globe is divided into large masses of land, which we call Continents, and great cavities filled with water, which we term Seas. In the parts covered with water, we observe small masses of land, whose surfaces rise above it, which we name Islands. On the continents we observe small detached spots covered with water, which we call Lakes. An island differs from a continent only in dimensions.

Many portions of land and sea extend reciprocally the one into the other. If the sea penetrate into the interior of a continent, it forms an inland sea, as the Mediterranean. If the extent of such seas be less, and the opening larger, they are called Gulfs or Bays. The still smaller portions of the sea, nearly surrounded by land, and which affords shelter for ships, are called Ports, Creeks, or Roads.

If parts of the continent shoot into the seas, and are connected with the main land by only a small portion of their circumference, they are called Peninsulas. If the projections of the land reach but a little way into the sea, they are called Capes, Promontories, or Points. A natural canal, communicating with the sea at both ends, and confined by two opposite shores, is called a Strait. An Isthmus is a tongue of land running between two seas, by which two great masses of land are united.

## 265. CONTINENTS. FIVE GRAND DIVISIONS.

There are but two continents on the globe, the eastern and western. The eastern is called the old world; the western, the new world, in reference to its late discovery by the Europeans. The various parts of the land on the earth we have considered under five grand divisions, America, Europe, Africa, Asia, and Oceania. The extent of these various portions of the earth will be found in the atlas.

## 266. ISLANDS.

A comparative view of the principal islands will be found in the atlas.

## 267. PENINSULAS.

The following are the principal peninsulas:—Greenland, Labrador, Nova Scotia, Cape Cod, Michigan, Florida, Yucatan, Alaska, California, New Jersey, South America, Norway and Sweden, Spain and Portugal, Italy, Denmark, Turkey, Morea, Crimea, Kamtschatka, Corea, Malacca, Hindoostan, Arabia, Turkey in Asia.

## 268. ISTHMUSES.

Darien, Suez, and Corinth, are the most remarkable isthmuses.

## 269. CAPES.

The most remarkable capes in the world are the following:—Cape Horn, St. Roque, Blanco, Cod, Verd, Good Hope, Gardafui, North, Comorin, Taymour.

## 270. OCEANS.

There is, properly speaking, but one sea, one continuous fluid, spread around our globe. This probably extends from one pole to the other, and covers two-thirds of the surface of the earth. All the gulfs, seas, and bays, form portions detached, but not separated from that universal sea, which we call the ocean. But for the sake of greater convenience, we designate the different parts of the ocean by different names. The five oceans are the Pacific, Atlantic, Indian, Northern, and Southern. The dimensions of these oceans will be found in the atlas.

## 271. SEAS.

The principal seas are the following:—Chinese, Caribbean, Mediterranean, Okhotsk, Celebes and Corea, Black, North, Red, Baltic, White, Azof, Marmora, and Irish.

## 272. LAKES.

A view of the principal lakes will be found on the comparative chart in the atlas.

## 273. BAYS.

The following are the principal bays:—Baffin's, Hudson's, James's, Fundy, Passamaquoddy, Machias, Penobscot, Casco, Massachusetts, Buzzard's, Narragansett, Delaware, Chesapeake, Campeachy, Honduras, Bristol, All Saints, Cardigan, Donegal, Galway, Biscay, Bengal, Walwich, Fable, False, Angola, Natal, Saldanha, and Botany.

## 274. GULFS.

The following are the principal gulfs:—St. Lawrence, Mexico, Anatique, Darien, California, Panama, Guayaquil, St. George, Bothnia, Finland, Riga, Genoa, Naples, Taranto, Venice, Salonica, Persian, Ormus, Siam, Tonquin, Corea, Ohi, Guinea.

## 275. STRAITS.

The principal straits are the following:—Davis's, Hudson's, Belle Isle, Michilimackinac, Behring's, Magellan, Skagger Rack, Cattegat, Dover, Gibraltar, Bonifacio, Messina, Dardanelles, Constantinople, English, St. George, North, Bahelmandel, Ormus, Mozambique, Sunda, Malacca, Endeavour, Bass's, Dampier, and Cook's.

## 276. SOUNDS.

The following are the principal sounds :  
—Long Island, Albermarle, Pamlico, Prince William's, Queen Charlotte's, and Nootka.

## 277. MOUNTAINS.

Mountains, in their exterior forms, exhibit some varieties, which strike the most inattentive observer. The highest mountains most frequently present a surface of naked rock. In some places they shoot up in the form of enormous crystals with sharp angles. Sometimes there appears an immense, steep, and abrupt surface, which seems to lay open to view the bowels of the mountain itself. These appearances are described under the names of needles, peaks, &c. There are other mountains, the tops of which present circular outlines, which give them an air of tranquillity. The mountains of New England and the Appalachian chain, generally are of this character. Some mountains rise in majestic and regular gradations, like a vast amphitheatre; others present a large mass cut perpendicularly in the form of an altar, like the Table Mountain at the Cape of Good Hope. There are mountains in China, which resemble the heads of dragons, tigers and bears. In other places, there are labyrinths of rocks, which rise in the form of pillars. In the south-eastern part of France, there is a mountain in a single mass in the form of a large nine pin. In another part of France, there are mountains, which are described as resembling the old fashioned frizzled wigs. In short, the varieties in the forms of mountains, as described by travellers, seem to be almost infinite. Some of them are highly picturesque and beautiful, and fill the mind of the beholder only with pleasing emotions. Others are lofty, rugged, and sublime, and awaken feelings of awe and astonishment.

The utility of mountains is very great. They attract the clouds and vapors, which become condensed by cold, and fall in the shape of snow and rain, thus giving birth to innumerable streams, which descend and spread fertility and beauty over the surface of the earth.

The longest range of mountains in the world is the American range, 11,000 miles. The longest range in Asia is the Altaian range, 5,000 miles. The longest ranges in Africa are the mountains of the Moon, 2,000, and the Atlas range, 1,500 miles. The longest range in Europe is the Ural range, 1,500. The Doffrafield range is 1,000 miles; the Carpathian, 500; the Alleghany, 900; the Green Mountains, 350; the Alps and Appennines, 700; the Pyrenees, 900.

## 278. VOLCANOES AND EARTHQUAKES.

Volcanoes are those mountains which vomit forth flames, smoke, and torrents of melted matter. The chimney, through

which the smoke and lava issue, terminates in a vast cavity called the crater. The number of volcanoes that have been discovered amounts to several hundred; some of these are extinguished, others are in constant activity, and others still are periodically inflamed. The most celebrated volcanoes in the world are Mount Etna, Heckla, Cotopaxi, and Vesuvius.

Earthquakes are supposed to be intimately connected with volcanoes, and usually take place in volcanic countries. There have been frequent earthquakes near the borders of the Mediterranean Sea, and around the Gulf of Mexico. These dreadful phenomena often change the surface of a country, so that it is difficult to recognise it. During the convulsion, enormous gaps in the earth appear to disclose to the living the empire of the dead; these fissures emit blue flames and deadly vapors. Vineyards descend from their heights, and settle in the midst of fields of corn; farms and gardens quit their places and become attached to distant villages; towns are shaken down, villages are swallowed up, mountains sink into valleys, lakes disappear, and rocks and islands rear their wet summits from the bosom of the foaming sea.

## 279. VALLEYS.

Valleys are formed by the separation of chains of mountains or hills. Those which lie between ranges of high mountains are generally narrow. Valleys collect the waters which descend from the mountains, and pour them into the rivers. There are some valleys situated in elevated regions, having rivers and lakes with no outlets. Such is the valley which surrounds Lake Titicaca, in South America. Central Asia abounds in these valleys.

## 280. PLAINS.

Plains are of two kinds, high and low. Those of Mexico, Peru, and Central Asia, are of the former kind, and are generally surrounded by a bulwark of mountains, which supports them. The plains of Mexico are from 6 to 8,000 feet high; those of Quito are 12,000. Some of those in Chinese Tartary are probably as elevated. The low plains consist generally of sand, gravel, and shells: such is that along the eastern part of the southern states, those on the north of the Caspian Sea, and on the south of the Baltic, the Delta of Egypt, and the valley of the Amazon.

## 281. DESERTS.

The most remarkable deserts are Sahara, Cobi, and Atacama. There are extensive deserts also in Beloochistan, Persia, Siberia, and Arabia.

## 282. CAVERNS.

There are numerous caverns or fissures in the earth, particularly in calcareous regions. Most of these seem to owe their formation either to the retiring or sinking of the earth. Some of these caverns

of prodigious extent. The depth of that near Castleton, in England, has not been ascertained, though sounded by a line of nine thousand six hundred feet. Near Frederickshall, in Norway, there is a hole into which, if stones are thrown, they appear to be two minutes before they reach the bottom, from which it is concluded that the depth is upwards of 11,000 feet. The most curious caverns are those which present crystals suspended from the roof or lying on the ground, assuming various fantastic forms, and often presenting the images of animals and vegetables. The Grotto of Antiparos, one of the Greek islands, is the most celebrated cave of this kind. When lighted up by torches, it presents a scene of inconceivable splendor. Some caves contain petrified bones; these are the remains of animals, which have been buried by the convulsions of nature. There are caverns which contain deep pits of water, or wells; some of these are the sources of rivers, others are known to receive very considerable streams, which lose themselves in the abyss. There are caverns in Norway, where you can hear the roar of invisible waters beneath your feet. The most magnificent of all the known caverns, is that called Fingal's Cave, in the isle of Staffa, on the western coast of Scotland. Thousands of majestic columns of basalt support a lofty roof, under which the sea rolls its waves, while the vastness of the entrance allows the light of day to penetrate the various recesses of the cave.

### 283. GEOLOGY.

To whatever depth excavations have been made in different countries, they have uniformly shown that the solid parts of the earth are composed of strata, or layers of earth, and rock of different kinds. These strata are thrown one upon another, in almost every possible position. Some of them are horizontal; others vertical, and others inclined at various angles.

Those beds or strata, which are found at the greatest depths to which man has been able to penetrate, are called primary, and are supposed to have been formed first. Those strata which are found lying upon primary rocks, and contain the remains of animals and vegetables, are supposed to have been formed at a subsequent period, and are called secondary. Those beds usually found reposing upon secondary strata, composed of fragments of both primary and secondary rocks, are called tertiary or alluvial formations, and are supposed to be of more recent origin than the two latter classes.

### 284. SPRINGS.

Springs are small reservoirs, which receive their waters from the neighboring ground through small channels, and which are usually discharged by overflowing. The origin of springs must be referred to

various causes; among these the most common are the falling of rain and dew, and the melting of ice and snow. Mountains attract the fogs and clouds which float around them; consequently more rain and snow fall upon them than upon the plains. The waters descend forming innumerable streams, some in the shape of rivers, and others in the form of springs.

Spouting springs are formed by having their source considerably elevated above the aperture at which they issue. They are constructed on the same principle as artificial fountains—the columns of water being thrown upwards by the pressure from above. Hot spouting springs doubtless obey the same laws, the water being heated by volcanic masses in the earth. Boiling springs are found in various countries. Periodical or intermitting springs are very curious works of nature. At Como, in Italy, there is one which rises and falls every hour. There is a spring in Provence, in France, which rises eight times in an hour, and another in Languedoc, the period of whose elevation each day, is fifty minutes later than the preceding day. England furnishes examples of several springs which rise and fall with the ebb and flow of the sea.

### 285. GLACIERS.

Glaciers, which crown the tops of the highest mountains, have a close connexion with the origin of springs. The snows which have accumulated for whole centuries, sink down and are consolidated by alternate thaws and frosts. Thus the tops of the mountains are covered with ice: these masses gradually extend, and the high valleys become filled. The masses continuing to increase sometimes for a series of years, even extend to the lower parts of the mountains. They have in Switzerland filled up whole valleys, buried villages, and shut up the pass between Le Valais and the Canton of Berne. The scenes which these bodies of ice present to the traveller, are various and striking; sometimes they resemble the waves of the sea; again they appear like mirrors of brilliant glass. Here a thousand spires glitter in the sunshine; sometimes they assume the appearance of ruins fallen and crushed; and again vast pyramids and obelisks are presented to the astonished beholder.

These glaciers are of essential service in furnishing to the adjacent regions, slowly and in almost a regular manner, waters which without this congelation would be precipitated with impetuosity from the heights of the mountains, so as to overflow and devastate the countries which they now fertilize.

### 286. STREAMS, RIVERS, TORRENTS, RIVULETS.

The effusions of springs and the flowings of melted ice form little currents

more or less gentle, which are termed rivulets. The water of great rains falls with more rapidity, and furrows the sides of the mountains by impetuous irregular torrents. The union of these currents form streams, which, following the declivity of the ground, unite most frequently in a great canal, which takes the name of river, and conveys to the ocean the collected tribute of the earth. The declivities, whence flow the streams and rivulets which discharge themselves into one particular river, are called the basin of that river.

Many great rivers flow with very little descent. The Amazon has only ten and a half feet declivity in 600 miles. A sublime phenomenon is exhibited at the mouth of this river when its waters meet the flowing tide coming in from the ocean; a liquid mountain is raised to the height of 180 feet. The shock of the two bodies of water is so great as to make all the neighboring islands tremble; the fishermen and navigators fly from it in the utmost terror. At the time when the tides are highest, the river also seems to redouble its power and energy. The contending waters rush against each other like the onset of two armies. The banks are inundated with their foaming waves. The rocks, drawn along like light vessels, dash against each other almost on the surface of the water which bears them on. This scene is attended with loud roarings which echo from island to island.

#### 287. CATARACTS AND CASCADES.

Rivers which descend from primitive mountains into the secondary lands, often form cascades and cataracts. Such are the cataracts of the Nile, the Ganges, and other great rivers. Cataracts are sometimes formed by lakes. Of this description are the celebrated falls of Niagara, the most stupendous cataract in the world. The elevation of cataracts has generally been exaggerated. That of Tequendama, which used to be considered 1,500 feet in height, was found by Humboldt, not quite 600. That of Staubbach, in Switzerland, usually rated at 1,400, is found to be only 900.

#### 288. THE SEA.

The ocean, by its exhalations, supplies the air with moisture, which is collected into clouds, and then descends upon the mountains, valleys, and plains. By this means it feeds the rivers, and sustains vegetation. Without the kindly influence of these vapors, which every moment escape from the surface of the sea, all the earth would languish like a desert. The drying up of the ocean, whether slow or rapid, would probably be sufficient to reduce all organized nature to a state of annihilation.

The ocean, by affording increased facilities for commerce, secures the advantages

of neighborhood to nations which from their locality appear to be separated forever. The bottom of the sea seems to have inequalities like the land; so that if it were dried up, it would exhibit mountains, valleys, and plains. There are some places in the sea where no bottom has yet been found. The greatest depth which has been measured is 4,680 feet. It is probable that the utmost depths of the ocean do not exceed the height of the loftiest mountains.

It is easier to perceive the great advantages arising from the saltiness of seawater than to discover its origin. Without this saltiness, and without the agitation in which its waves are constantly kept, the ocean would become tainted. It is remarkable that the saltiness of the sea is less toward the poles, than under the equator.

The green and yellow shades of the ocean arise from marine plants. The sparkling of the sea at night presents an imposing spectacle. A vessel, while plunging her way through the billows, often appears to mark out a furrow of fire, sometimes every stroke of the oar of a boat emits a light either brilliant and dazzling, or tranquil and pearly. This wonderful phenomenon is supposed to be produced, at least in part, by multitudes of small phosphorescent animals that live in the water.

#### 289. TIDES.

Every person who has been upon the seacoast, has observed that the water rises and sinks at regular intervals. This fluctuation of the sea is called the tide. It is a phenomenon which is observed in every part of the world where the ocean extends. Every twelve hours the water is high, and is then called high tide. Every twelve hours it is low, and is then called low tide. Thus the tide ebbs and flows throughout nearly all the coasts and shores washed by the sea, twice in twenty-four hours. This astonishing movement of the waters of the ocean is of the greatest importance. It keeps that element in constant motion, without which it would stagnate and become putrid, and render the world uninhabitable.

The cause of these periodical fluctuations is no less astonishing than the fact itself. It is well known that all masses of matter mutually attract each other. The moon revolves around the earth once in twenty-four hours. As it passes over the surface of the ocean it attracts the water, which is slightly elevated towards it, the moon proceeds on its way, and the waters drawn along by it are formed into a current; they break upon the shores, and are heaped up so as to form a tide usually of several feet in height.

While the water is thus attracted and heaped up on one side of the earth, it is at

the same time elevated on the opposite side of the earth, causing a tide there also. This latter circumstance is occasioned by two causes, which cannot be satisfactorily explained without a further investigation of astronomy, than can be made here. It may be added, however, that the attraction of the sun exerts considerable influence on the tide.

The tides vary in different parts of the earth; they are generally highest toward the equator, and are scarcely perceptible toward the poles. In the British channel they sometimes rise to the elevation of 30 or 40 feet. In the bay of Fundy they are said sometimes to rise more than fifty feet, and to flow in with such rapidity as to overtake and drown the cattle which chance to be along the shores. The ordinary tides at New-York and Boston rise 6 or 8 feet.

#### 290. CURRENTS IN THE OCEAN.

Besides tides, the ocean is subject to currents. Between the tropics and as far as 30 degrees north and south of the equator, there is a continual movement of the waters of the Atlantic and Pacific oceans from east to west. Navigators frequently take advantage of this current. A second movement of the waters is observed from the poles toward the equator. This is explained by supposing that the heat of the sun causes great evaporation at the equator; this exhaustion is supplied by the constant melting of ice at the poles. It is the flowing of this supply, which gives a general tendency of the mass of water toward the equator.

The motion of the waters from east to west is accounted for in various ways, none of which seem to be very satisfactory. The gulf stream, which we have before noticed, is occasioned by this western current. There are also various other currents in the ocean, some of which are very useful to navigators.

#### 291. WINDS.

Wind is the air in motion. Various causes operate to produce wind, the principal of which is heat. This, by expanding that portion of the atmosphere which is subjected to its influence, renders it lighter. Accordingly it ascends, and the colder or heavier air rushes in to fill up the vacuum. This sets in motion a column of air, and produces wind. The influence of the sun, the reflection of heat from the earth, and various other causes, produce those agitations of the air, some of them gentle, and some violent, which pass under the various names of breeze, gale, hurricane, &c. A gentle wind or breeze traverses 10 feet in a second; a fresh breeze 16 feet in a second; a strong wind, or stiff breeze, 24 feet in a second; a gale 35 feet in a second; a storm, 43; a violent storm, 54; a hurricane of the temperate zone, 60; of the torrid zone, 120 to 200

#### 292. CLIMATE AND SEASONS.

Climate comprehends the degrees of heat and cold, the drought, moisture, and salubrity, that occur in any given region of the earth. The principal causes which affect climate are the following:—1st, the action of the sun upon the atmosphere; 2d, elevation above the level of the ocean; 3d, sloping of the land, and exposure to the sun and wind; 4th, neighborhood of seas; 5th, nature of the soil; 6th, state of cultivation; 7th, prevalent winds.

#### 293. VEGETABLES.

The empire of vegetation embraces the whole globe from pole to pole, and from the summit of the Andes, where the lichen creeps over the hardest rocks, to the bottom of the ocean, where floating fields of plants rise unseen. Cold and heat, light and shade, fertile lands and pathless deserts, every place, every temperature, has its own kind of vegetation, which thrives and prospers there. There are plants, which even rainily upon the dark vaults of mines, and upon the walls of the deepest caverns.

#### 294. ANIMALS.

The animal kingdom presents a vast and varied field, at which we can only cast a glance. Every department of nature, the earth, air, and sea, is full of animated beings; some of them seem nearly allied to vegetables and minerals. From these we may ascend in the scale, through an almost infinite series of existences, up to man, who constitutes the highest in the animal kingdom. Among the most remarkable animals, we may mention the coral insects, which are chiefly found in equatorial regions. These creatures, so minute as scarcely to be perceived by the naked eye, exist in the sea, in such inconceivable numbers, and labor with such activity, as to construct vast beds of coral, which at length raise their tops above the water: thus immense islands are gradually built in the bosom of the ocean, by insignificant insects.

#### 295. MAN.

The various nations of mankind may be reduced to five original races or types. The first is called the European race and occupies Western Asia, Eastern and Northern Africa, Hindoostan, and Europe, and embraces the white inhabitants of America. This race is sometimes called the Caucasian, it being imagined that it originated near the mountains of Caucasus. The principal nations embraced in this class are the Europeans and their American descendants, the Arabs, Moors, Turks, Hindoos, and Abyssinians. They are distinguished by the following peculiarities. The skin more or less white or brown, the cheeks tinged with red, long hair, either light or brown, the head round, the face oval and narrow, the forehead

smooth, the nose slightly arched, and the mouth small.)

The second variety is the Tartar or Mongul, and includes all the nations in Asia, east of the Ganges, excepting Malacca. It embraces also the Laplanders and Finns, in Europe, and the Esquimaux, from Behring's Straits to Greenland, in America. The characteristics are a yellow skin, black straight hair, the head square, the face large and flat, the nose small and flat, the cheeks round and prominent, and the chin pointed.)

The third, or American variety, consisting of the aborigines of the western continent, are of a copper color, have hair black and straight, forehead low, eyes sunk, nose almost flat, the cheek bones very prominent, and the face large. There is considerable resemblance between this and the preceding variety.)

The fourth race is that of the Malay, comprehending the inhabitants of the peninsula of Malacca, and the islands of the Pacific Ocean, with the exception of New-Holland, New-Guinea, New-Caledonia, and Van Diemen's Land. The following are its characteristics: a tawny color, the hair black, soft, thick, abundant, and curled, the forehead bulging out, the nose thick, wide, and flattened, the mouth large, and the upper jaws a little projecting.

The fifth race is that of the negro, which is spread over all Western and Southern Africa. It is found also upon the coasts of Madagascar, and occupies New-Holland, Van Diemen's Land, New-Caledonia, and New-Guinea. The characteristics are, color black, hair black and woolly, head narrow and compressed on each side, the forehead very convex and arched, the cheek bones projecting, the nose large and flat, lips thick, the chin drawn in, and the legs crooked.)

Of these five races the Caucasian deserves to be considered the first. Not only is the countenance more beautiful, but the intellectual and moral endowments of this race are of a higher character. Whenever they have met with the other races, they have ultimately prevailed. They have excelled all others in literature and the arts, and seem to have given birth to most of the valuable institutions of human society.

#### 296. LANGUAGE.

Man is the only animal that has a rational and articulate language. The various languages on the globe, including the dialects, are very numerous. In America, among the natives, no less than 1,300 have been found. In Africa, 276; in Europe, 545; in Asia and the South Sea Islands, 691. The whole number is 3,026.

All these may be reduced to about 80 original languages, of which the others are only branches. Some of these, par-

ticularly those used by enlightened nations, are very copious, and have forms of expression for every shade of thought and feeling.

#### 297. RELIGION.

All nations, even the most savage, appear to believe in the existence of some invisible beings, possessed of power superior to man. The various methods in which nations manifest this belief, constitute so many different religions; the external acts, which are the results of such religious belief, form modes of worship. The several religions of mankind may be reduced to two classes:—Polytheism, the belief in many gods, and Monotheism, the belief in one God. Of the latter, there are three branches—Judaism, or the religion of the Jews, Mahometanism, and Christianity.

Of Polytheism there are many branches the believers in which are generally called Pagans, or Heathens. Under this name may be classed all those religious schemes of belief, in which the attributes of the Deity are personified as separate divine beings.

The religion of some savage nations consists only of certain absurd superstitious notions, some of them derived from the preceding systems, and others apparently the invention of their priests. In general, it may be remarked, that all these various schemes are characterized by the grossest absurdity in their doctrines and ceremonies. The practical morality of them all is of the lowest and coarsest kind, and their effect is uniformly to debase the mind and corrupt the heart. No elevating and purifying principle pervades them, and their only use seems to be that of furnishing knavish and designing priests with the means of deceiving and ruling their deluded followers. The whole number of Pagans in the world is probably about 500,000,000, including the greatest part of the human race.

Judaism is the religion of the Jews, and is divided into two sects, the Karaites, who acknowledge, as divine only the books of the Old Testament, and the Rabbins, who attribute an authority almost divine to the collection known under the name of the Talmud. The Jews are scattered throughout Europe, and many parts of Asia, Africa, and America. Their whole number is supposed to be about 3,000,000.

Christianity is divided into three portions—the Greek or Christian church, which is established by law in Russia, prevails in Greece, Hungary, and part of Turkey, and embraces 70,000,000 of people. The Roman Catholic, Latin or Western church, maintains the supremacy of the Pope, prevails in many parts of Europe, and has a considerable number of followers in North America. In some of the West India Islands, in Mexico, &c

timala, and South America, it is the established religion. The whole number of Catholics may be estimated at 116,000,000.

The protestants are those who protest against the Pope, and take the bible of the Old and New Testament as their guide. They are divided into many sects, of which the principal are Lutherans, Methodists, Presbyterians, Episcopalians, Baptists, Quakers, Unitarians, and Universalists. The protestant religion, in its various forms, prevails in the United States, England, Scotland, Wales, Holland, and some other European countries. The whole number is estimated at 54,000,000.

### 298. CHRISTIAN MISSIONS.

It is one of the characteristics of the present day, that exertions are making in christian countries to disseminate christianity in heathen lands, and through its influence to civilize savage and barbarous nations. Every benevolent mind must look with favor upon all judicious attempts to substitute the purifying worship of the "One Living and True God," for the debasing idolatries which man has invented, and to exchange the cruel and comfortless habits of savage life, for the happier condition that attends the civilized state.

The efforts of the missionaries in various countries, have not yet been, on the whole, attended with full success; but enough has been done to justify the conclusion, that the christian nations have it in their power to diffuse their religious and their civil institutions over the whole earth. The time is probably not very distant, when the true method of conducting missions in heathen lands will be discovered, and when the people of christendom will become convinced of the practicability and the importance of their effecting a moral renovation of the globe. When this is done, the accomplishment of the anticipated event cannot be far remote.

In the atlas will be found a list of some of the principal missionary stations in various parts of the globe.

### 299. POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

In looking on the map, we observe two kinds of divisions pointed out on its surface. One kind are those formed by the Creator, and separated on the face of the globe into land and water; the other consists of the boundaries between nations, and are formed by man. The former, called natural divisions, we have already considered in our view of physical geography. The latter, denominated civil or political divisions, are the subject of our present attention. A comparative view of the principal political divisions on the globe will be found in the atlas.

### 300. POPULATION OF THE GLOBE.

A table of the population of the globe will be found in the atlas.

### 301. HABITATIONS.

The ordinary habitations of a people are an almost infallible index of the degree of civilisation at which they have arrived. The human race may be divided into four classes, according to the four kinds of habitations which follow. 1st. Caverns in the rocks or under ground. There are only a few scattered tribes who live in this manner. 2d. Huts formed of earth, branches of trees, stones, or some other substances, either in a natural state, or coarsely wrought. A large portion of the human race live in this manner. 3d. Tents; these moveable dwellings, in the opinion of wandering pastoral tribes, are preferable to palaces. This species of habitation is common in Central and Northern Asia, Arabia, and parts of Africa. 4th. Well built houses. The materials of which these are built, are different in different countries. In the country towns of North America, they are generally constructed of wood. In the cities, of wood and brick. In the cities of South America, of brick and stone. In the south of Europe, of brick, of stone, both rough and hewn, and of marble. In the north of Europe, of brick, stone, and wood.

### 302. FOOD—DRINK.

The food of different nations varies as much as any other circumstance belonging to their manners. All civilized nations are alike in dressing meat and vegetables by fire. Savage and barbarous nations have also some rude methods of preparing their food by cookery. The food of most nations consists of flesh, fish, and vegetables. There are some tribes, however, who subsist exclusively on one of these. The taste for horse-flesh seems peculiar to the Tartars and Finns. In Africa, there are some tribes who eat locusts. Some of the South American tribes devour a species of clay. The horrible custom of eating human flesh does not belong exclusively to any nation. Most savage tribes are addicted to it, either from the impulses of a ferocious hatred to their enemies, an atrocious superstition, or in consequence of extreme want. The practice obtains in the greater part of the nations of Africa, Australasia, and in some of the tribes of America.

The desire of procuring a momentary elevation of spirits, has caused the invention, amongst all nations, of intoxicating liquors, or drugs. In civilized countries, distilled spirits of various kinds, such as brandy, rum, gin, whisky, procured either from the grape, sugar-cane, grain, or apples, are the most common. In other countries they have various kinds of intoxicating drinks. In the temperate parts of North America, cider is a common beverage. In England, malt liquors, such as beer, ale, and porter, are drank to a

great extent.) In the southern countries of Europe, wine is used as freely as we use cider. It is remarkable, that in wine countries the people are generally temperate. (The Mahometans are forbidden, by their religion, to drink wine; the Turks substitute sherbet, a drink resembling lemonade. They indulge freely in the use of opium, and intoxicate themselves with it.) In general, it may be observed, that the excessive use of ardent spirits prevails most in northern countries.)

### 303. DRESS.

The first object of dress is to secure the body against the weather; it afterwards becomes also a matter of ornament and display. The custom of painting the body, by imprinting or marking figures on the skin, indicates the infancy of civilisation, and the first workings of vanity. In the rude stages of society, the undressed skins of beasts are a sufficient covering. As the age of refinement advances, more delicate and costly materials are required. Fashion comes, at length, to establish its dominion, and a multitude of arts spring up to satisfy its demands. Manufactories are founded, and thousands obtain a living by administering to the new wants, created by the artificial taste of society. There is one general fact worthy of notice in respect to the dress of nations on the eastern continent. In Europe, the clothes are fitted closely to the body; in Asia, the dress is almost universally loose and flowing.)

### 304. CLASSES OF NATIONS.

Nations may be distributed into three general classes: savage, barbarous, or half civilized, and civilized. Savages are those nations who are destitute of the art of writing, and whose vague and unsteady ideas are attached only to objects which strike their senses. They delight to adorn their persons in a manner which to us appears ridiculous; they are passionately fond of bodily exercise, and in this respect greatly surpass us. Their industry is generally confined to a little gardening, fishing, and the chase. Some few of them, however, produce beautiful specimens of workmanship, in a few simple manufactures; and the rich among them have even elegant and commodious habitations.

The class of barbarians comprehends those nations that have emerged from the savage state, and have not yet reached a civilized condition. These nations possess the art of writing, have usually some written laws, and a religion expressed in ceremonial observances. They have generally established forms of government, and possess some arts. They have, however, little regard for the rights of humanity—possess many cruel customs—are destitute of virtue and moral principle, and

have little other guide for their conduct than their passions.

Civilized nations are those which have arranged their knowledge in the form of sciences, which practice the arts of sculpture and painting; which possess books in various departments of literature; and which have a fixed system of legislation, policy, and war; nations in which Christianity displays its proper influence, in the purification and elevation of public morals; nations which recognise the great principles of national law, and respect, in time of war, the property of defenceless citizens.

### 305. THE EARTH CONSIDERED AS A CELESTIAL BODY.

We have hitherto been engaged in considering the various objects which occupy the surface of the earth. Let us direct our attention a few moments, to another subject of contemplation. If we look upward, we observe a blue vault stretched over our heads, which at night is illuminated by a multitude of stars. If we go to Europe, we observe the same wonderful display above us. If we travel to Arabia, or China, or the islands of the Pacific, or to the Polar regions, wherever we may go, still the sky is over us, and the sun, moon, and stars, shine down upon us. The earth is evidently swung in the air like a ball, supported by no foundation, and only kept in its place by the power of an Almighty Being.

If we keep our attention fixed upon our earth and the heavenly bodies, we shall soon discover that several of them are in motion. The moon revolves around the globe. Some of the stars change their places. The sun itself is observed to turn round. If we investigate still further, we shall discover that these brilliant orbs, which occupy the heavens, are all of them worlds, some of them larger and some smaller, all moving in their appointed courses, and all fulfilling the will of the Almighty Architect, who made them.

The study of the heavenly bodies is called astronomy: geography, strictly speaking, is a description of the earth. However interesting and wonderful the subject of astronomy may be, we can only attend to it here, so far as may be necessary to complete our view of the globe we inhabit.

The sun is an immense body of matter, 883,000 miles in diameter, and more than a million times larger than our earth. It turns round on its axis once in 25 days. It revolves also in a small circular orbit in the same time.

There are seven planets or worlds, all at great distances from the sun, and revolve around it. Our earth is one of these. It passes in an immense circle round the sun once a year, thus causing by its different situations, at different times, with respect to the sun, the power of light &



heat, the various seasons of spring, summer, autumn, and winter. [The earth also revolves upon its own axis once in 24 hours, thus causing day and night.]

The six other planets are Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, and Herschel. Most of these can be seen at night with the naked eye, and are the large stars, which shine with a steady light. Three of these are larger, and three smaller than our earth. They revolve round the sun at different distances, and complete their revolutions in different periods of time. Each of these turns around upon its own axis.

The following table exhibits the various dimensions and motions of these seven planets, with the distances of each from the sun.

<i>Distances from Sun.</i>	<i>Diameters.</i>	<i>Period.</i>
Mercury 37 millions.	3180 miles.	88 days.
Venus 69	7500	224
Earth 85	7928	365
Mars 144	5400	687
Jupiter 490	89,400	4332
Saturn 900	78,000	10,000
Herschel 1800	35,109	30,737

Besides these seven primary planets, there are 18 others called secondary, and revolve around the other planets. The moon is one of these, and being attached to our earth, attends it in all its motions, and revolves around it once in about a month. Jupiter has four moons, which attend it, and revolve around it, in a similar manner. Herschel has six, and Saturn seven. Saturn has also a vast luminous ring around it, besides its seven moons.

Besides these primary planets and their eighteen satellites, there are four small orbs revolving around the sun, called Asteroids. Their names are Ceres, Pallas, Juno and Vesta. They have recently been discovered, and but little is known concerning them. Pallas is about as large as the moon, which is 50 times less than our earth.

To these various luminaries attendant upon the sun, we must add Comets, which are occasionally seen in the heavens, with luminous trains or tails. Four or five hundred of them have been discovered at different times. They revolve around the sun, approach very near to it, and then fly off into the boundless regions of space, and do not return until after an interval of many years. One of them is supposed to be 575 years in performing its course in

its orbit. In 1811 a comet appeared calculated to be about as large as the earth; its tail was computed to be eleven millions of miles in length.

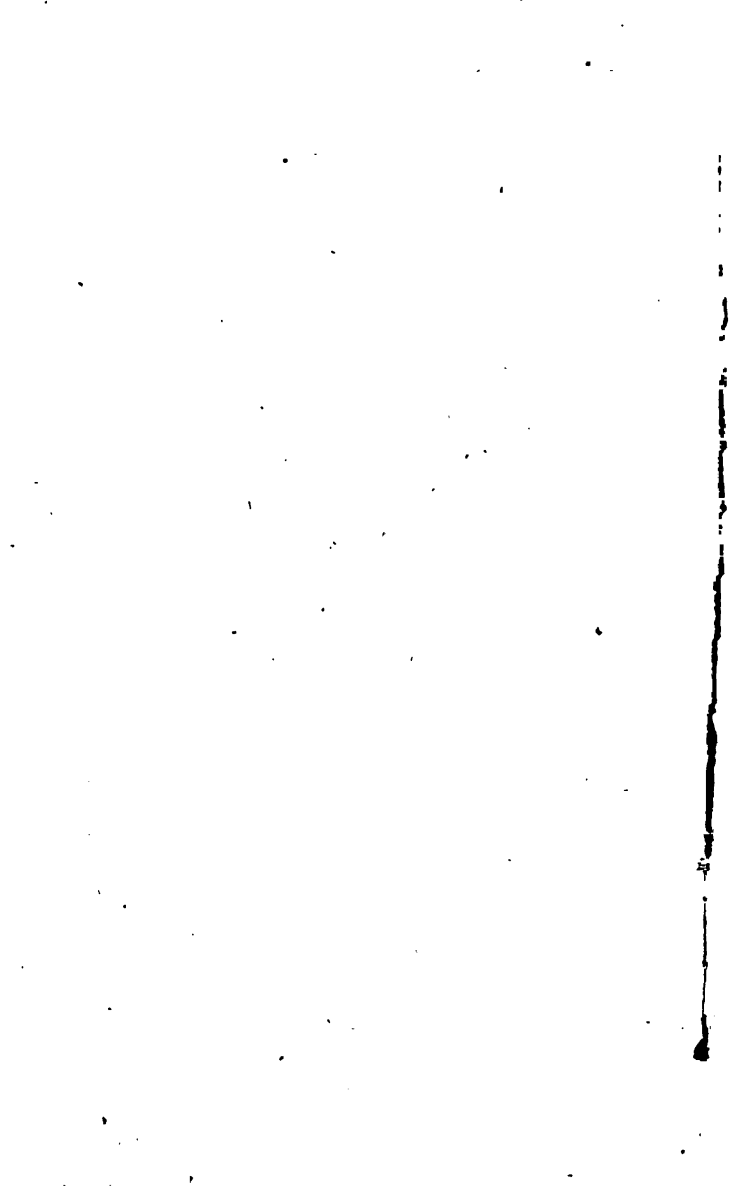
Thus it appears that seven primary planets, attended by 18 moons or satellites, besides the ring of Saturn, and the asteroids and comets, revolve around the sun, which is the centre of their motions. These constitute the Solar System, and afford an inexhaustible subject of study to the astronomer. All these worlds derive from the sun their light and heat, and appear to be kept in their places by the sun's attraction.

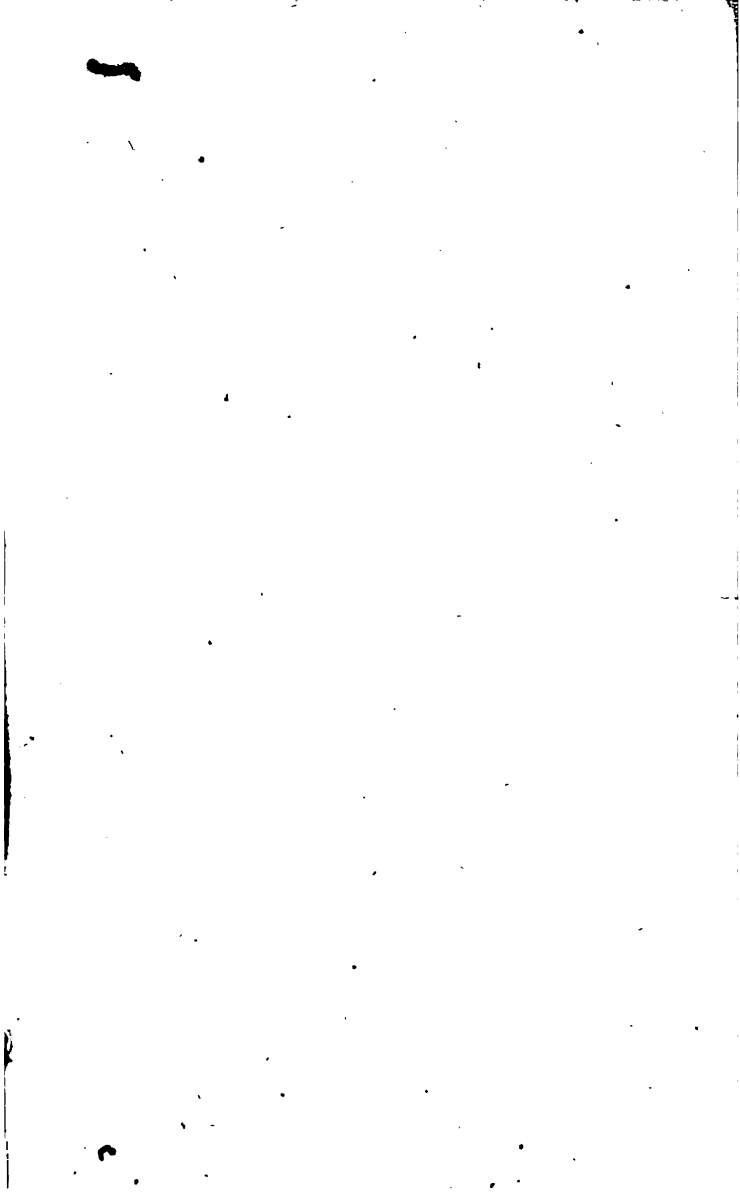
Of the other luminaries, which are seen in the heavens, we know but little. They are called fixed stars, because they never seem to change their places. They may be distinguished from the planets by their glimmering light. They are undoubtedly all of them vast worlds, shining like the sun by their own light, and attended each by its own system of planets, satellites, and comets. Yet such is the inconceivable distance, that a telescope, that magnifies several hundred times, does not enable the astronomer to penetrate the mystery of their existence. No more than a thousand can be seen at any one time by the naked eye, on a clear night. The brightest are supposed to be those that are nearest, but Sirius, the most conspicuous of the fixed stars, is at least 32 millions of millions of miles distant.

The fixed stars are so wonderfully numerous, that the famous astronomer Herschel calculated that in a small portion of the milky way he saw 116,000. The position of 60,000 have been exactly recorded. There are 20 of the largest size called stars of the first magnitude, 65 of the second magnitude, 205 of the third, 483 of the fourth, 648 of the fifth, and about 1500 of the sixth magnitude, being all that can be seen by the naked eye, from all sides of the earth. The others can be seen by a telescope only.

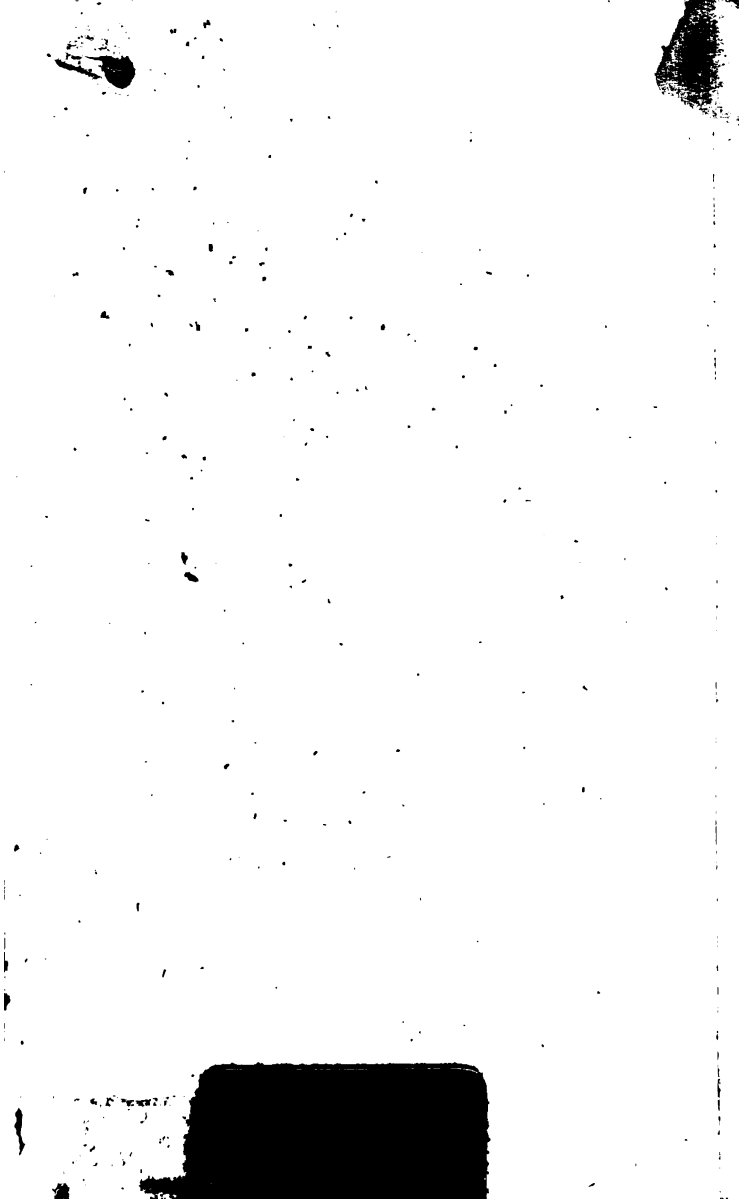
We must now close our view of the earth. We began at the place where we live, and have pursued our investigations from the minute sands that are scattered over the hills and plains, to the worlds which perform their mighty evolutions in the sky. We have learned enough to satisfy us that the field of human knowledge is rich, varied, and extensive, but that grand and sublime truths yet lie beyond the reach of human penetration.











# PETER PARLEY'S GEOGRAPHY, AND HISTORY OF THE WORLD.

F. J. HUNTINGTON, HARTFORD,

B. & S. COLLINS; N. & J. WHITE, and LEAVITT, LORD & CO. New York;  
DEBNEY, THOMAS & CO. Philadelphia;

Publish and keep constantly for sale, the above popular little Manual of Geography, containing Nine Maps and Seventy-five Engravings. Also,

## PETER PARLEY'S METHOD OF TELLING ABOUT THE HISTORY OF THE WORLD TO CHILDREN.

Illustrated by Seventy-four Engravings, and designed as a Companion to Parley's Geography.

From the multitude of exceedingly favourable notices which have been given to, from all quarters of the country, the publishers select the following. Some names were omitted, either by the author or themselves, and came to them unexpressed.

From the *Missionary Herald*.

### PARLEY'S GEOGRAPHY IN MODERN GREEK.

By the following extract of a letter from a gentleman now in Greece, the Rev. Mr. Temple, the Missionary, it appears that the popular Geography of Mr. Parley is about to be introduced into that country.

"We have Peter Parley's Geography translated; but I have not put it to press, because we want the cuts for it. There could scarcely be a better book on this subject for Greece, if we had all the cuts for the costumes of the different nations. I perceive that this little book has passed through seven editions in one year, in the United States of America, and it well deserves its good reputation. Will not the board, or some friend, procure for us all these cuts? If Mr. Peter Parley, (I know not who he is,) would make a donation of them, I should feel peculiarly happy in introducing him to more than 20,000 youths in the Greek nation, who would not fail to express for him more than ordinary reverence and gratitude."

We are happy to learn that the author has generously offered to make a donation of the cuts and plates, and that they will shortly be transmitted to Malta.

Recently Published, and for sale as above,

THE THIRD EDITION OF

### THE GEOGRAPHY OF THE HEAVENS,

And CLASS BOOK OF ASTRONOMY, accompanied by a Celestial Atlas, by Eliph H. Burritt, A. M.; with an Introduction by Thomas Dick, LL. D., author of the *Christian Philosopher*, &c.

CONTENTS OF THE ATLAS.

Plan, exhibiting the relative Magnitudes, Distances and Positions of the most recent bodies which comprise the Solar System.

The visible heavens in October, November, and December.

The visible heavens in January, February, and March.

The visible heavens in April, May, and June.

The visible heavens in July, August, and September.

The visible heavens in the most peculiar regions for each month of the year.

The visible heavens in the most peculiar regions for each month of the year.

Planisphere of the whole heavens as Mercator's Projection.